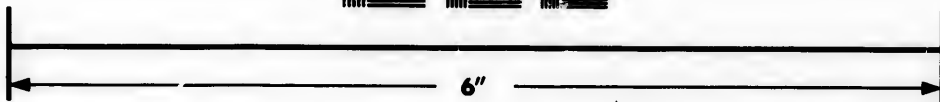
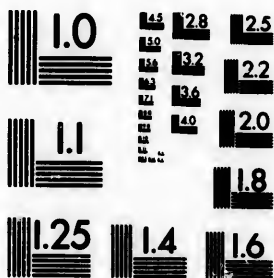


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

128
132
136
140
144
148

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

101

© 1983

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

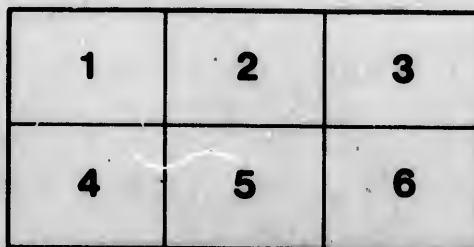
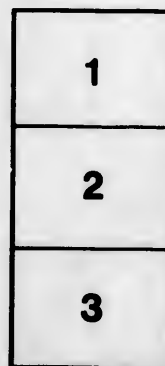
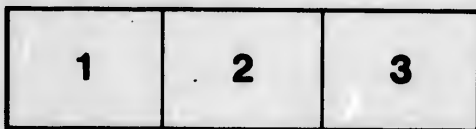
Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

ails
du
difiler
une
nage

rate
o

elure,
à

FRONTISPIECE *to*
GG's Cheap & Elegant OCTAVO Edition of COOK's VOYAGES, &c. Complete.



The most Striking Likeness of the late
CAPTAIN JAMES COOK, F.R.S.

HIS FIRST VOYAGE performed in the Years, 1768, 1769, 1770, 1771.

SECOND VOYAGE _____ 1772, 1773, 1774, 1775.

THIRD VOYAGE _____ 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, 1780.

*He was Born at Norton in the North Riding of Yorkshire Nov. 3, 1728, and
unfortunately Killed by the Savages of the Island O'Wharoe, Feb. 14, 1779.*

*Engraved by W. Thomson from the Original picture on the possession of G. M. Anderson Esq.
Published by Alex. Hogg at the King's Arms, No. 24, Paternoster Row, London, in 1795.*

A COLLECTION OF
Voyages round the World:
PERFORMED

By ROYAL AUTHORITY.

Containing a complete HISTORICAL ACCOUNT of

Captain COOK'S

First, Second, Third and Last

V O Y A G E S,

UNDERTAKEN

For making New Discoveries, &c. viz.

His FIRST—in the *Endeavour*, in the Years 1768, 1769, 1770, and 1771, in the Sourthen Hemisphere, &c.

His SECOND—in the *Resolution* and *Adventure*, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775, for making further Discoveries towards the South Pole, and round the World.

His THIRD and LAST—in the *Resolution* and *Discovery*, to the Pacific Ocean, in the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780, in the Northern Hemisphere, &c. Comprehending the Life and Death of Capt. Cook, &c. Together with Capt. Furneaux's Narrative of his Proceedings in the *Adventure* during the Separation of the Ships in the Second Voyage, in which Period several of his People were destroyed by the Natives of *Queen Charlotte's Sound*.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

Genuine Narratives of other Voyages of Discovery round the World, &c. viz. those of Lord BYRON, Capt. WALLIS, Capt. CARTERET, Lord MULGRAVE, Lord ANSON, Mr. PARKINSON, Capt. LUTWIDGE, Mess. IVES, MIDDLETON, SMITH, &c. &c. Including the Substance of all the most remarkable and important Travels and Journeys, which have been undertaken at various Times to the different Quarters of the World.

THE WHOLE COMPREHENDING

A full Account of whatever is curious, entertaining, and useful, both by Sea and Land, in the various Countries of the known World.

Being the most elegant and perfect Work of the Kind.

Illustrated with a vast Number of Copperplates finely engraved by the most eminent Masters.

This EDITION is compiled from the AUTHENTIC JOURNALS of several Principal Officers and other Gentlemen of the most distinguished naval and philosophical Abilities, who sailed in the various Ships.

V O L. I.

L O N D O N :

Printed for A. MILLAR, W. LAW, and R. CATER. 1790.

[Price 2s. unbound in Eighty Numbers.]

GG's Cl

NW

A COLLECTION OF

1770

1771

1772

1773

1774

1775

Voyages round the World

THE FORMER

BY ROYAL AUTHORITY

Containing a complete History of the Voyages

Captain Cook

and Captain King

TO WHICH IS ADDED

A Description of the Countries

visited by the said Captains

and a History of the Discoveries

made in the South Sea

and the Pacific Oceans

by the said Captains

and a Description of the

Islands and Countries

visited by the said Captains

and a History of the Discoveries

made in the South Sea

and the Pacific Oceans

by the said Captains

and a Description of the

Islands and Countries

visited by the said Captains

and a History of the Discoveries

made in the South Sea

and the Pacific Oceans

by the said Captains

and a Description of the

Printed by W. Law

The P R E F A C E.

THE great Utility and very interesting Nature of the important FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD VOYAGES and DISCOVERIES of the late Capt. Cook, are acknowledged by all Ranks of People; consequently it might be deemed impertinent here to attempt any Encomiums on the arduous but exact Researches of this eminent and valuable Navigator, in which Discoveries have been made far greater than those of all the other Navigators in the World, from the Expedition of Columbus to the present Time. Capt. Cook is unquestionably allowed to have been the ablest and most renowned Circumnavigator this or any other Country has produced; and every enlightened Nation must deplore his being unfortunately killed by the Savages of the Island Owhyhee on the 14th of February 1779, when prosecuting his THIRD VOYAGE round the Globe.

This great Man possessed, in an eminent Degree, all the Qualifications requisite for his Profession and great Undertakings. He was cool and deliberate in judging; sagacious in determining; active in executing; steady and persevering in Enterprizes; vigilant, with unremitting Caution; unsubdued by Labour, Difficulties, and Disappointments; fertile in Expedients; never wanting Presence of Mind; always possessing himself of the full Use of a sound Understanding; mild, just, but exact in Discipline. His Knowledge, his Experience, his Sagacity, rendered him so intirely Master of his Subject, that the greatest Obstacles were surmounted, and the most dangerous Navigations became easy, and almost safe under his Direction. He explored the Southern Hemisphere, &c. to a much higher Latitude than had ever been reached, and with fewer Accidents than frequently befall those who navigate the Coasts of Great Britain. By his Attention to the Welfare of his Ship's Company, he discovered and introduced

roduced a System for the Preservation of the Health of Seamen in long Voyages, which has proved wonderfully efficacious: for in his SECOND VOYAGE round the World, which continued upwards of Three Years, he lost only one Man by Distemper, of One Hundred and Eighteen Persons, of whom his Company consisted.

The Death of this valuable Man was a Loss to Mankind in general; and particularly to be deplored by every Nation that respects useful Accomplishments, and honours Science. It is still more to be deplored by this Country, which may justly boast of having produced a Man hitherto unequalled for nautical Talents; and that Sorrow is farther aggravated by the Reflection, that his Country was deprived of this Ornament by the Enmity of a People, from whom, indeed, it might have been dreaded; but from whom it was not deserved: for, Capt. Cook frequently interposed, at the Hazard of his Life, to protect these very People from the sudden Resentment of his own injured Ship's Crew. Let us contemplate, admire, revere, and emulate this great Navigator; whose Skill and Labours have enlarged natural Philosophy; have extended nautical Science; and have disclosed the long concealed and admirable Arrangements of the Almighty in the Formation of this Globe, and at the same Time the Arrogance of Mortals, in presuming to account, by their Speculations, for the Laws by which he was pleased to create it. It is now discovered, beyond all doubt, that the same Great Being who created the Universe by his Fiat, by the same ordained our Earth to keep a just Poise, without a corresponding Southern Continent. The arduous and accurate Researches of this extraordinary Man, have discovered Seas un-navigated and unknown before. They have made us acquainted with Islands, People, and Productions, of which we had no Conception: and he will be revered, while there remains this authentic Account of his Three respective Voyages, and as long as Mariners and Geographers shall trace the various Courses and Discoveries he has made.

LONDON:

During

P R E F A C E.

During the *Three* long and tedious *Voyages* in which he was engaged, his Eagerness and Activity were never in the least abated. No incidental Temptation could detain him for a Moment; even those Intervals of Recreation, which sometimes unavoidably occurred, and were looked for with a longing, that Persons who have experienced the Fatigues of Service, will readily excuse, were submitted to by him with a certain Impatience, whenever they could not be employed in making further Provision for the more effectual Prosecution of his Designs.

It is not necessary here to enumerate the particular Instances in which these Qualities were displayed, during the great and important Enterprizes in which he was engaged. We shall content ourselves now with stating the Result of those Services, under the two principal Heads to which they may be referred, those of Geography and Navigation, placing each in a separate and distinct Point of View.

Perhaps no Science ever received greater Additions from the Labours of a single Man, than Geography has done from those of Captain Cook. In his *first Voyage to the South Seas*, he discovered the *Society Islands*; determined the Insularity of *New Zealand*; discovered the *Straits* which separate the *two Islands*, and are called *after his Name*, and made a *complete Survey of both*. He afterwards explored the *Eastern Coast of New Holland*, hitherto unknown, an Extent of *Twenty-seven Degrees of Latitude*, or upwards of *Two Thousand Miles*.

In his *second Voyage* round the World, he resolved the great Problem of a *Southern Continent*; having traversed that Hemisphere between the Latitudes of *Forty and Seventy Degrees*, in such a Manner, as not to leave a Possibility of its Existence, unless near the Pole, and out of the Reach of Navigation. During this Voyage, he discovered *New Calidonia*, the largest Island in the *Southern Pacific*, except *New Zealand*; the *Island of Georgia*, and an *unknown Coast*, which he named *Sandwich Land*, the *Thule of the Southern Hemisphere*; and having twice visited the *Tropical Seas*, he

he settled the Situations of the *old*, and made several *new Discoveries*, all of which (as well as *those* in the *First Voyage*) shall be particularized in the following Sheets.

But his *third Voyage* (a full Account of which we shall also give in this Work) is distinguished by the Extent and Importance of its Discoveries. Besides several *smaller Islands* in the *Southern Pacific*, he discovered to the *North* of the Equinoctial Line, the *Groupe* called the *Sandwich Islands*; which, from their Situations and Productions, bid fairer for becoming an Object of Consequence, in the System of *European Navigation*, than any other *Discovery* in the *South Sea*. He afterwards explored, what had hitherto remained unknown, of the *Western Coast* of *America*, from the Latitude of forty-three to seventy Degrees North, containing an Extent of *three Thousand five Hundred Miles*; ascertained the *Proximity* of the *Two great Continents* of *Asia* and *America*; passed the *Streights* between them, and surveyed the *Coast* on *each Side*, to such a Height of *Northern Latitude*, as to demonstrate the *Impracticability* of a *Passage* in *that Hemisphere*, from the *Atlantic* into the *Pacific Ocean*, either by an *Eastern* or a *Western Course*. In short, if we except the *Sea of Amur*, and the *Japanese Archipelago*, which still remain but imperfectly known to Europeans, he has completed the *Hydrography* of the habitable *Globe*.

The Public Curiosity being excited to the highest Degree respecting Capt. Cook's Voyages (particularly his *Third* and *Last Expedition* to the *PACIFIC OCEAN*) it is necessary to caution the Public against the Imposition of all mutilated, imperfect, and spurious Editions, Abridgements, and Compendiums of these Works; such Publications not being calculated to convey to the Reader that Satisfaction so naturally expected. The Work now respectfully offered to the Public, will contain a *FULL ACCOUNT* of Capt. Cook's Voyages Complete, with all the fine splendid Copper-plates. It is unnecessary to point out the obvious Imperfections of all Publications which include only a *single Voyage* of the very celebrated Capt. Cook; his *Three different Voyages* are so immediately connected together,

together, that owing to frequent References from one to another, no Person can form a satisfactory Idea of his valuable Discoveries, who does not read his *First*, *Second*, and *Third Voyages*; in the order in which they were performed and written: In the present very *complete, improved, and genuine Edition* (for which numerous Readers have been waiting with Impatience) we therefore consider it as our indispensable Duty to begin with a full Account of his *First Voyage* round the World; after which we shall record an authentic History of his *Second Voyage*; and then proceed to a full, faithful and accurate Relation of his much admired *Third* and last *Voyage* round the Globe, being that principally undertaken for new Discoveries in the Pacific Ocean, &c. &c. and in the Prosecution of which he unfortunately lost his Life, all the Particulars of which we shall hereafter relate.

This Work will be illustrated with (besides the curious and interesting Cuts for his **FIRST** and **SECOND VOYAGES**, &c. all the elegant, splendid, and fine **COPPER-PLATES**, belonging to his **THIRD** and **LAST VOYAGE**, being Views of Places, Portraits of Persons, and historical Representations of remarkable Incidents, during this celebrated Navigator's **VOYAGE** to the **PACIFIC OCEAN**; together with the necessary Maps, Charts, Plans, Draughts, &c. shewing the Tracks of the Ships, and relating to Countries now first discovered, or hitherto but imperfectly known; the Whole (amounting to between **ONE** and **TWO HUNDRED** most **ELEGANT** and **SUPERB ENGRAVINGS**) finely engraved and accurately copied from the Originals by the most eminent Masters. Therefore, by the Publication of this Genuine and **COMPLETE COLLECTION** of the Whole of Captain **COOK's VOYAGES**, &c. in **OCTAVO**, all Ranks of Persons whatever may be accommodated, and the Public Curiosity, so naturally excited by the Report of such **EXTRAORDINARY VOYAGES** and **DISCOVERIES**, will be immediately and cheaply gratified.—The Poor as well as the Rich will thus become familiarly acquainted with these extraordinary and important Voyages

ages and Discoveries, in the Performance and Prosecution of which such vast Sums of the Public Money have been expended.

To the Whole Discoveries and Voyages of Capt. Cook, we shall add (to make our Collection complete) Narratives of other Voyages of Discovery round the World, &c. undertaken, performed, and written by English Circumnavigators, &c. under the Sanction of Government, viz. those of Lord Byron, Capt. Wallis, Capt. Carteret, Lord Mulgrave, Lord Anson, Mr. Parkinson, Capt. Lutwidge, Mess. Ives, Middleton, Smith, &c. &c. &c. Including also the Substance of all the most remarkable and important Travels and Journeys, which have been undertaken at various Times to the different Quarters of the World, particularly those of Hanway, Hamilton, Herbert, Drummond, Pocock, Shaw, Stuart, Kalm, Carver, Dalrymple, Burnet, Addison, Barrett, Keyser, Thicknes, Twiss, Brydone, Chandler, Johnson, Smollet, Moore, Wrexall, &c.

~~and the~~

To the **K I N G,**

To the **LORDS COMMISSIONERS of the ADMIRALTY**

To the **CAPTAINS and OFFICERS of the Royal Navy,**

and to the **Public at Large**

The **Author**, in Obedience to the Command of His Majesty's Most Excellent Majesty

The WHOLE of Capt. COOK'S VOYAGES, &c.

is large Octavo, embellish'd with elegant and useful Copper-Plates

Is most humbly Dedicated,

By his **MAJESTY'S**

And the PUBLIC'S

Most obedient and devoted Servants,

The EDITOR and PUBLISHER.

A New

A GENERAL CHART:

made by Capt. JAMES COOK in his FIRST, SECOND and THIRD VOYAGES; with the TRACKS of the

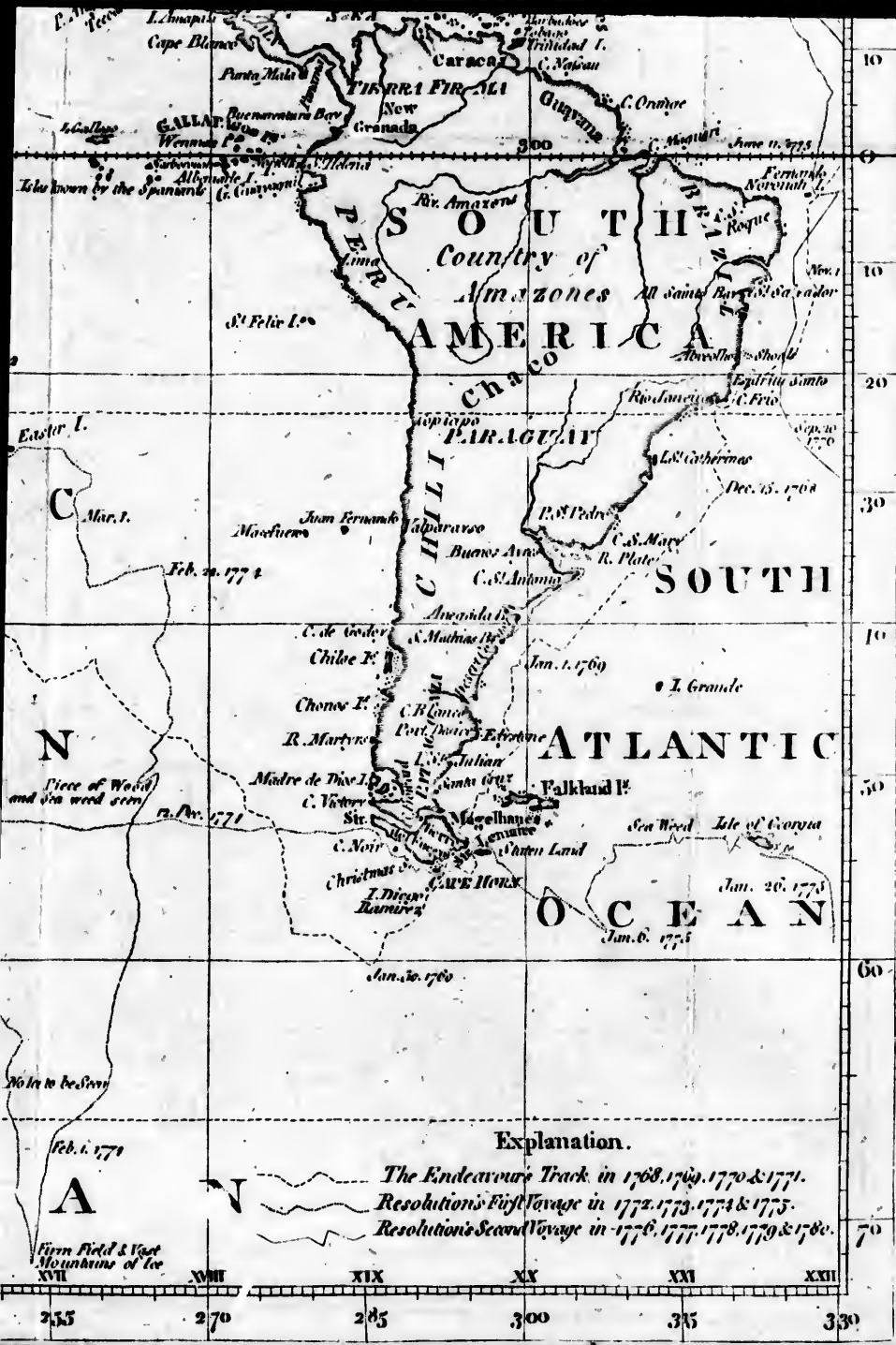


T:
ND VOYAGES; with the TRACKS of the SHIPS under his Command.





London, Published by Alex. Hogg at the Kings Arms, N^o 16, Paternoster Row.



T. Cooper Sculp.



JOHN HAWKESWORTH, L.L.D.
one of the Editors of COOK'S First Voyage

C
B
T
C
B
V
ha
ag

A New, Genuine, and Complete
H I S T O R Y of
THE WHOLE OF
Capt. Cook's Voyages,

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED
By **ROYAL AUTHORITY.**

Being the most Accurate, Elegant, and Perfect
Edition of the whole **WORKS** and **DISCOVERIES** of
that celebrated Circumnavigator, ever published.

The whole Written in a more pleasing and elegant
Stile than any other Work of the Kind and Size.

A Full and Satisfactory **HISTORY** of
Capt. Cook's FIRST VOYAGE round the **WORLD**,
undertaken and performed by Order of his pre-
sent **MAJESTY**, in his **MAJESTY'S Ship**, the
ENDEAVOUR, principally for making Discoveries in
the **SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE**, &c. &c.

Began the latter End of August 1768, and con-
cluded the 12th of June 1771; containing a Period
of nearly **THREE YEARS**, in which was completed
the Circumnavigation of the Globe.

I N T R O D U C T I O N .

V OYAGES being considered as the grand re-
pository of useful and interesting knowledge,
have justly engaged the attention of mankind in all
ages. In this ample field the attention of curiosity
No. 1. B 19

is gratified by a vast variety of interesting scenes; and works of this kind are of national consequence, while, at the same time, they afford a rich fund of pleasure to all those who delight to spend a leisure hour in rational amusement. With respect to Captain Cook's *first** *Voyage* round the world, which was in the ENDEAVOUR, it has so much attracted the notice of the world, that it cannot be too particularly related, nor too nicely examined; and a principal advantage accruing from the following narrative is, that the same stories set in different lights as they strike the observer, cannot fail of being a source of fresh intelligence; of shewing former accounts through a new medium, and of placing them in a more striking point of accuracy, b; judicious corrections; and additional improvements.

The first voyage, which is the subject of our present narrative, was undertaken by order of his present majesty, for making discoveries in the southern hemisphere, &c. *Captain Cook* was appointed commander of the Endeavour; and with him embarked Mr. (now Sir *Joseph*) *Banks* and Dr. *Solander*, whose principal objects in this expedition were, to observe the transit of Venus, and to attempt afterwards farther discoveries. Mr. *Joseph Banks* and Dr. *Solander* were men of distinguished abilities. The first of these gentlemen was possessed of considerable landed property in Lincolnshire; and, upon his leaving the University of Oxford, A. D. 1763, he made a voyage to the

* It is unnecessary to point out the obvious imperfections of all publications which include only a *single* voyage of the very celebrated Capt. Cook; his *three* different voyages are so immediately connected together, that owing to frequent references from one to another, no person can form a satisfactory idea of his valuable discoveries, who does not read his *first*, *second*, and *third* voyages in the order in which they were performed and written: in the present very complete, improved and genuine Edition (for which numerous readers have been waiting with impatience) we therefore consider it as our indispensable duty to begin with a full account of his *First Voyage*; after which we shall record an authentic history of his *Second Voyage*; and then proceed to a faithful and accurate relation of his much admired *Third* and last Voyage round the world, being that principally undertaken for new discoveries in the Pacific ocean, &c. &c. and in the prosecution of which he unfortunately lost his life.

coasts of Newfoundland and Labradore. Notwithstanding the dangers and difficulties that attended his first expedition, Mr. Banks returned undiscouraged; and when the Endeavour was equipping for a voyage to the South Seas, he determined to embark with the adventurers, from the laudable motive of enriching his native country with the knowledge of unknown productions, and new discoveries.

Dr. Solander, whom Mr. Banks engaged to accompany him, had been appointed to a place in the British Museum, then just established, which he filled with credit to himself, and in which he gave universal satisfaction. The Doctor was a native of Sweden, and a man of great learning, being an adept in natural philosophy, and who had studied under the famous Linnæus. Mr. Banks, besides the important and valuable acquisition of this gentleman, took with him two draughtsmen, the one being intended to paint subjects of natural history, and the other to delineate figures and landscapes. He had likewise four servants, two of whom were negroes, and a secretary in his retinue. Both Capt. Cook and Mr. Banks kept accurate and circumstantial journals of this voyage. The papers of Capt. Cook contained a minute account of all nautical incidents, and a very particular description of the figure and extent of the countries he had visited; and in those of Mr. Banks were found a great variety of incidents which had not come under the inspection of Capt. Cook; besides, some officers, and the more intelligent of the ship's crew, have communicated to their friends, innumerable natural and artificial curiosities, with descriptions of the people, and countries, their productions, manners, customs, religion, policy, and language. Materials so interesting and copious, will be thought quite sufficient to furnish the public with the following New and Complete Edition of the whole of Capt. Cook's Voyages, &c. in which will be contained all the curious remarks made by several gentlemen engaged in these celebrated expeditions; and it is our intention

to place every important incident in various points of view, that our readers may be complete judges of the valuable nature of the new discoveries, and of the preference which is due to this elegant, though Cheap Edition.

The preparations for this important work have been suitable to its inestimable value, and our earnest concern for its credit; while wealth and science have united their powers for the purposes of public benefit. Many of the first literary characters of the age have favoured us with their assistance: not only the great outlines of nature, but the variety of shades within have been carefully attended to, and not a single material shall be neglected which may embellish the narratives, and give life and beauty particularly to all the *Three respective Voyages* of this unparalleled Navigator. We therefore submit this undertaking to the judgment of the public, founding our claims to their favour ON MERIT ALONE, knowing, it is only ON THIS solid foundation we can hope and expect their encouragement and protection.



B O O K I.

C H A P. I.

The departure of the Endeavour from Plymouth—Her passage to the island of Madeira—A description of its natural curiosities and trade—A particular account of Funchiale, the capital of Madeira—The passage from Madeira to Rio de Janeiro—An account of this capital of the Portuguese dominions in South America, and of the circumjacent country—Incidents that happened while the Endeavour lay in the harbour of Rio de Janeiro.

THE Endeavour, a bark of three hundred and twenty tons, which had been originally built for the Coal-trade, was appointed to the service of Capt. Cook's first voyage round the world, having on board ten carriage and twelve swivel guns. On August the 26th, 1768, we therefore got under sail, and took our departure from Plymouth. On the 31st, we saw several of those birds, called by seamen Mother Carey's Chickens, and which they think prognosticate a storm. On the 2d of September we saw land between Cape Finisterre, and Cape Ortegál, on the coast of Galicia in Spain. In this course some marine animals were discovered, hitherto unnoticed by naturalists. One of these, described as a new species, is of an angular form, near three inches in length, and one thick. It has a hollow passage quite through it, and a brown spot at one end. Four of these animals appeared to adhere together by their sides; but when put into water, they separated, and swam about, shining with a brightness resembling the vivid colour of a gem. We also discovered another animal, exceeding in variety and brightness any thing we had seen; even in colour and splendor equal to those of an opal. At the distance of about ten leagues from Cape Finisterre, we caught among the rigging of the ship several birds not described by Linnæus.

On

On the 12th we discovered Puerto Santo and Madeira, and on the day following, moored with the stream anchor in the road of Funchiale. In heaving up the anchor, Mr. Weir, the master's mate, was unfortunately carried overboard and drowned.

Upon approaching the island of Madeira from the sea, it appears exceeding beautiful, the sides of the hills being covered with plantations of vines, which are green when all kinds of herbage, except here and there, are burnt up, which was the case at this time.

On the 13th in the forenoon the boat came from the officers of health, no one being suffered to land from on board a ship without their permission. When this was granted, we landed at Funchiale, the chief town in the island, and proceeded directly to the house of Mr. Cheap, a considerable merchant, and at that time the English consul there, who received us with a brotherly kindness, and treated us with a princely liberality. We continued on the island only five days, during which time the season was the worst in the year for searching after natural curiosities; however, the two gentlemen, Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks, pushed their excursions about three miles from the town, and collected a few plants in flower, by the obliging attention of Dr. Heberden, the chief physician of the island, and brother to Dr. Heberden of London. Mr. Banks enquired after and found the tree called *Laura Indicus*, the wood of which he supposes to be what is called the Madeira mahogany, as there is no real mahogany upon the island.

The inhabitants of Madeira have no other article of trade than wine, which is made by pressing the juice out in a square wooden vessel. The size of this is proportioned to the quantity of wine; and the servants, having taken off their stockings and jackets, get into it, and with their elbows and feet press out as much of the juice as they can. In like manner the stalks, being tied together, are pressed under a square piece of wood, by a lever with a stone fastened to the end of it.

During

During our stay upon this island we saw no wheel-carriages of any sort, nor have the people any thing that resembles them, except a hollow board, or sledge, upon which those wine vessels are drawn that are too big to be carried by hand. They have also horses and mules very proper for their roads, but their wine is, notwithstanding, brought to town from the vineyards where it is made, in vessels of goat-skins, which are carried by men on their heads.

Nature has been very liberal in her gifts to Madeira. The inhabitants are not without ingenuity, but they want industry. The soil is so very rich, and there is such a variety in the climate, that there is scarcely any article either of the necessaries or luxuries of life, which cannot probably be cultivated here. On the hills, walnuts, chefnuts, and apples flourish, almost without culture. Pine-apples, mangoes, guanas, and bananas, grow almost spontaneously in the town. They have corn which is large grained and fine, and it might be produced in plenty; but for want of being attended to, all they consume is imported from other countries. Beef, mutton, and pork are remarkably good, and the captain took some of the former on board for his own use.

Funchiale (which took its name from Foncho) signifying fennel in the Portuguese language) is situate at the bottom of a bay, and though it is extensive in proportion to the rest of the island, it is but poorly built, and the streets are narrow and badly paved. The churches are full of ornaments, with pictures and images of saints; the first are, for the most part, wretchedly executed, and the latter are dressed in laced cloaths. The taste of the convents, especially of the Franciscans, is better; neatness and simplicity being united in most of the designs of the latter. The infirmary also is a piece of good architecture, and one of the most considerable in this place. In this convent is a small chapel, the whole lining of which, both sides and ceiling, is composed of human skulls and thigh bones: the thigh bones are laid across

each

each other, and a scull is placed in each of the four angles. When we visited the good fathers, just before supper-time, they received us with great civility. "We will not ask you," said they, "to supper with us, because we are not prepared; but if you will come to-morrow, though it is a fast-day, we will have a turkey roasted for you." This polite invitation it was not in our power to accept. There are many high hills in this island; Pico Ruivo in particular is near 5100 feet high. To a certain height these hills are covered with vines, above which are numbers of chesnuts and pine trees; and above these again whole forests of various sorts of trees. The Mirmulano and Paobranco which are found among them, are unknown in Europe. The latter of these is very beautiful, and would be a great ornament to our gardens. The number of inhabitants in Madeira are computed to amount to about eighty thousand; and the custom-house duties produce to the king of Portugal a revenue of 20,000*l.* a year, clear of all expences. But the balance of trade is against the people; for all their money going to Lisbon, the currency of the island is in Spanish. This coin consisteth of pistereens, worth about a shilling; bitts about sixpence, and half bitts worth about three-pence.

On the 19th of September the Endeavour sailed from Madeira, and on the 21st we saw the islands called the Salvages, northward of the Canaries. The principal of these was about five leagues to the south half west. On the 23d the Peak of Teneriffe bore west by south half south. Its appearance at sun set was very striking; for when most part of the island appeared of a deep black, the mountain still reflected rays, and glowed with a warmth of colour which no painting can express. There is no eruption of visible fire, but a heat issues from the chinks near the top, too strong to be borne by the hand when held near them. The height of this mountain is 15,396 feet, which is but one hundred and forty-eight yards less than three miles.

On

On the 30th we saw Bona Vista, one of the Cape de Verd islands, in latitude 16 deg. north, and longitude 21 deg. 51 min. west. In our course to Teneriffe, we observed numbers of flying fish, which appeared very beautiful, their sides resembling burnished silver.

On the 7th of October Mr. Banks went out in a boat, and caught what our sailors call a Portuguese man of war; together with several shell fishes, or testaceous animals, which are always found floating upon the water; and on the 25th this gentleman shot a black-toed gull, not described by Linnæus, and whose dung is of a red colour. We had now variable winds, with some showers of rain, and the air was so damp as to damage our utensils considerably.

On the 25th we crossed the line with the usual ceremonies; and on the 28th when the ship was in the latitude of Ferdinand Noronha, longitude 22 deg. 5 min. west, we began to look out for the island, and for the shoals which are laid down as lying between it and the main; but neither the island nor shoals could be discovered. On the 29th we perceived that luminous appearance of the sea mentioned by navigators, which emitted rays like those of lightning. As Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were not thoroughly satisfied with any of the causes hitherto assigned for this phenomenon, and supposing it was occasioned by some luminous animals, they threw out a casting net, in order to try by experiment whether they were right in their conjectures. A species of the Medusa was taken, which bore some resemblance to metalline substance greatly heated, and emitted a whitish light; they caught also some crabs which glittered very much; animals which had not before been taken notice of by the curious researchers into the secrets of nature.

As provisions by this time began to grow short, we resolved to put into the harbour of Rio de Janeiro; and on the 8th of November we saw the coast of

No. 1.

C

Brasil.

Brasil. Upon speaking with the crew of a Portuguese fishing boat, we were informed by them, that the land which we saw was to the south of Santo Espirito. Mr. Banks, having bought of these people some fish, was surprized, that they required English shillings: he gave them two which he happened to have about him; for he imagined Spanish silver to have been the only currency, and it was not without some dispute that they took the rest of the money in pistereens. The fresh fish, which was bought for about nineteen shillings, served the whole ship's company. We stood off and on along shore till the 12th, having in view successively Cape Thomas, and an island just without Cape Frio, and then made sail for Rio de Janeiro on the 13th in the morning. Capt. Cook sent his first lieutenant in the pinnace before to the city, to inform the governor, that we had put into that port in order to procure refreshments, and a pilot to bring us into proper anchoring ground. The pinnace returned, but the lieutenant had been detained by the viceroy, till the captain should come on shore. When the ship had come to an anchor, a ten-oared boat filled with soldiers approached, and rowed round her, but no conversation took place. Afterwards another boat appeared, which had several of the viceroy's officers on board. They enquired from whence the Endeavour came? what was her cargo? what number of men and guns she carried? and to what port she was bound? which questions having been punctually and truly answered, the Portuguese officers apologized for having detained the lieutenant, and pleaded the custom of the place in excuse for their behaviour.

On the 14th Captain Cook went on shore, and obtained leave to furnish the ship with provisions; but this permission was clogged with the conditions of employing an inhabitant as a factor, and of sending a soldier in the Endeavour's boat every time she came from shore to the vessel. To these uncivil terms the Captain made many objections; but the viceroy was

determined

determined to insist on them, neither would he permit Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to remain on shore, nor suffer the former to go up the country to collect plants. Captain Cook conceiving from these and other marks of jealousy, that the viceroy thought they were come to trade, used all his endeavours to convince him of the contrary; and acquainted him, that they were bound to the South Seas, to observe the transit of Venus over the disk of the sun, an object of great consequence to the improvement of navigation; but the viceroy by his answer seemed to be entirely ignorant of this phenomenon. An officer was now appointed to attend the captain, which order he was desired to understand as an intended compliment: however, when he would have declined such a ceremony, the viceroy very politely forced it upon him.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were not a little chagrined on hearing that they would not be permitted to reside on shore, and still more so when they understood, that they were not even allowed to quit the ship; for the viceroy had ordered, that the captain only, with such sailors as were required by their duty, should come on shore. Whether this arose from his jealousy in regard to trade, or from the apprehensions he entertained of the extraordinary abilities of the two gentlemen in search of new discoveries, it is certain that they were highly disagreeable to Mr. Banks and the Doctor, who were resolved, if possible, to evade the order. With this view they attempted to go on shore, but were stopped by the guard-boat; yet several of the crew, without the knowledge of the captain, let themselves down by a rope from the cabin window into the boat about midnight, and drove away with the tide, till they were out of hearing. They afterwards landed on an unfrequented part of the country, and were treated by the inhabitants with great civility.

Capt. Cook, uneasy under the restrictions of the viceroy, remonstrated with him; but the latter would

return no other answer, than that the king his master's orders must be obeyed. The captain, thus repulsed, and much displeas'd, resolv'd to go no more on shore, rather than, whenever he did so, to be treated as a prisoner in his own boat; for the officer who was so polite as to accompany him, constantly attended him, both to and from the shore. Two memorials were now drawn up and presented to the viceroy, one written by the captain, and the other by Mr. Banks; but the answers returned were by no means satisfactory. Several papers pass'd between them and the viceroy to no good purpose, the prohibition still remaining as before; from whence the captain thought it necessary in order to vindicate his own compliance, to urge the viceroy to an act of force in the execution of his orders. For this purpose he sent lieutenant Hicks with a packet, giving him his order not to admit of a guard in his boat. As this gentleman was resolv'd to obey his captain's commands, the officer of the guard boat did not oppose him by force, but acquainted the viceroy with what had happened, on which the lieutenant was sent away with the packet unopened. When returned, he found a guard of soldiers placed in the boat, and insist'd on their quitting it. Whereupon the officer seiz'd the boat's crew, and conducted them under an escort to prison, and the lieutenant was sent back to the ship guarded. When the captain was inform'd of this transaction, he wrote to the viceroy to demand his boat and her crew, inclosing the memorial which Mr. Hicks his lieutenant had brought back. These papers he sent by a petty officer, to avoid continuing the dispute concerning the guard, which must have been kept up by a commissioned officer. An answer was now promis'd by the viceroy; but before this could arrive, the long boat, which had four pipes of rum on board, was driven to windward, (the rope breaking that was thrown from the ship,) together with a small skiff that was fasten'd to the boat. Immediate orders were given for manning the yawl,

yawl, which being dispatched accordingly with proper directions, returned, and brought the people on board the next morning; from whom Capt. Cook learned, that the long-boat having filled with water, they had brought her to a grapling, and quitted her, and falling in with a reef of rocks on their return, they were forced to cut the fastening of Mr. Banks's little boat, and send her adrift. The captain now dispatched another letter to his excellency, wherein he informed him of the accident, desired he would assist him with a boat to recover his own, and, at the same time, renewed his demand of the delivery of the pinnace and her crew. The viceroy granted the request, but in his answer to the captain's remonstrance, suggested some doubts that he entertained, whether the Endeavour was really a king's ship, and also accused the crew of smuggling. Capt. Cook, in his reply, said, that he was willing to shew his commission, adding, if any attempt should be made to carry on a contraband trade, he requested his excellency would order the offender to be taken into custody. The dispute being thus terminated, Mr. Banks attempted to elude the vigilance of the guard, which he found means to do, and got safe on shore on the 26th in the morning. He took care to avoid the town, and passed the day in the fields, where he could best gratify his curiosity. Mr. Banks found the country people inclined to treat him with civility, and was invited to their habitations. But it was afterwards heard, that search had been making for this gentleman when absent. He and Dr. Solander therefore resolved to run no more risques in going on shore, while they remained at this place.

On the 1st of December, having taken in water and provisions, we got, with leave from the viceroy, a pilot on board; but the wind prevented us from putting to sea. A Spanish packet from Buenos Ayres, bound for Spain, arriving the next day, the captain of her with great politeness offered to take our letters to Europe.

Europe. The favour was accepted, and Captain Cook delivered into his hands a packet for the secretary of the Admiralty, containing copies of all the papers that had passed between him and the viceroy, leaving the duplicates with his excellency. On the 5th we weighed anchor, and towed down the bay, but were stopped at Santa Cruz, the principal fortification, the order from the viceroy, to let us pass, by an unaccountable negligence, not having been sent; so that it was not till the 7th that we got under sail. When we had passed the fort the guard-boat left us, and our pilot was discharged. It was observed, during our stay in this harbour, that the air was filled with butterflies, chiefly of one kind, and the greatest part above our mast-head. Of the town and neighbouring country we shall give the following description.

Rio de Janeiro was probably so called because discovered on the festival of St. Januarius, from whence we may suppose the river Januarius took its name, and also the town, which is the capital of the Portuguese in America. This town is situated on the west side of the river, from which it is extended about three quarters of a mile. The ground whereon it stands is a level plain. It is defended on the north side by a hill, that extends from the river, having a small plain, which contains the suburbs and king's dock. On the south is another hill running towards the mountains which are behind the town. This is neither ill designed nor ill built; the houses in general are of stone, and two stories high; every house having, after the manner of the Portuguese, a small balcony before its windows, and a lattice of wood before the balcony; its circuit is about three miles; and it appears to be equal in size to the largest country towns in England. The streets are straight, and of a convenient breadth, intersecting each other at right angles; the greater part, however, lie in a line with the citadel, called St. Sebastian, which stands on the top of a hill that commands the town. The principal street

street is near 100 feet in width, and extends from St. Benedict to the foot of Castle-hill. The other streets are commonly twenty or thirty feet wide. The houses adjoining to the principal street are three stories high, but in other places they are very irregular, though built after the same manner as at Lisbon. Water is conveyed to a fountain in the great square, from an aqueduct, raised upon two stories of arches. The water at this fountain, however, is so bad, that we could not drink it with pleasure. The churches are richly ornamented, and there is more religious parade in this place than in any of the popish countries in Europe. Not a day passes without a procession of some parish, with various insignia, splendid and costly in the highest degree. But the inhabitants may pay their devotions at the shrine of any saint, without waiting for a procession; for a small cupboard, having a glass window, and in which is one of these tutelary gods, is placed before almost every house, and a lamp is kept constantly burning, lest the old proverb should be verified, "Out of sight, out of mind." Before these saints the people pray and sing with such vehemence, that in the night they were distinctly heard by our sailors on board the ship.

In this town are four convents, the first is that of the Benedictines, situated near its northern extremity; the structure affords an agreeable prospect, and contains an elegant chapel, ornamented with several valuable paintings. The second is that of the Carmelites, which forms the centre angle of the royal square, and fronts the harbour; its church was rebuilding in a very elegant manner, with fine free stone brought thither from Lisbon. The third is that of St. Anthony, situated on the top of a hill, on the south side of the town; before this convent stands a large basin of brown granite, in the form of a parallelogram, which is employed in washing. The fourth is situated at the eastern extremity of the town.

town, and was formerly the jesuit's convent, but is now converted into a military hospital.

In the right angle of the royal square stands the viceroy's palace; this with the mint, stables, gaol, &c. compose one large building, which has two stories, and is 90 feet from the water. In passing through the palace, the first entrance is to a large hall or guard-room, to which there is an ascent of three or four steps. In the guard-room are stationed the viceroy's body-guards, who are relieved every morning between eight and nine; and adjoining to the hall are the stables, the prison being in the back part of the building. Within the guard-room is a flight of stairs for ascending to the upper story, which divides at a landing-place about half way, and forms two branches, one leading to the right, and the other to the left. The former leads to a saloon, where there are two officers in constant attendance; the viceroy's aid-de-camp at the same time waiting in the anti-chamber to receive messages and deliver orders.

The left wing of the royal square is an irregular building, which consists chiefly of shops occupied by trading people. In the centre of this square is the fountain, of which we have made mention, as being supplied with water from a spring at the distance of three miles, from which it is brought by an aqueduct. The place is continually crowded with negroes of both sexes waiting to fill their jars. At the corner of every street is an altar. The market place extends from the north-east end of the square along the shore, and this situation is very convenient for the fishing boats, and those who bring vegetables from the other side of the river to market. Negroes are almost the only people who sell the different commodities exposed in the market, and they employ their leisure time in spinning cotton.

The form of government is in its constitution mixed, but in fact very despotic; the viceroy and civil magistrate of the town frequently committing persons to prison,

prison, or transporting them to Lisbon, at their own pleasure. In order to prevent the people from making excursions into the country, in search after gold and diamonds, certain bounds are prescribed them, sometimes at a few, and sometimes at many miles distance from the town; and if a man is taken up by the guard without the bounds, where they constantly patrole, he is immediately sent to prison.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro are exceeding numerous, and consist of Portuguese, Negroes, and Indians, which last were the original natives of the country. The township of Rio is but a small part of the Capitanea, or province; yet it is said to contain 37,000 white people, and 629,000 blacks, many of whom are free, making together 666,000, in the proportion of 17 to 1.

The military is composed of twelve regiments of regular troops, six being Portuguese, and six Creoles, and twelve regiments of provincial militia. The inhabitants are servilely submissive to the regulars, and it has been said, that if any of them should omit the compliment of taking off his hat, when he meets an officer, he would be immediately knocked down. But the subordination of the officers to the viceroy is equally mortifying, for they are obliged to wait three times every day to know, or receive his commands: the answer frequently is, "there is nothing new."

In Rio de Janeiro the gentry keep their chaises, which are drawn by mules; the ladies however use a sedan chair, boarded before and behind, with curtains on each side, which is carried by two negroes on a pole connected with the top of the chair, by two rods, coming from under its bottom, one on each side, and resting to the top. The apothecaries shops commonly serve the purposes of coffee-houses, as the people meet in them to drink capillaire, and play at back-gammon. When the gentry are seen abroad, they are well dressed, though at home but loosely covered. The shop-keepers have generally short hair,

No 1.

D

and

and wear linen jackets with sleeves. The women in general, as in most of the Portuguese and Spanish settlements in South America, are more ready to grant amorous favours than those of any other civilized parts of the world. As soon as the evening began, females appeared at the windows on every side, who distinguished such of the men as best pleased their fancies by throwing down nosegays; and Dr. Solander and two other gentlemen received so many of these love-tokens, that they threw them away by hat-fulls.

Without the Jesuits college on the shore, is a village called Neustra Señora del Gloria, which is joined to the town by a very few intervening houses. Three or four hundred yards, within the Jesuit's-college, stands a very high castle, but it is falling to decay. The bishop's palace is about three hundred yards behind the Benedictine convent, and contiguous to it is a magazine of arms, surrounded by a rampart.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro maintain a whale-fishery, which supplies them with lamp oil. They import brandy from the Azores, and their slaves and East India goods from their settlements in Africa, their wine from Madeira, and their European goods from Lisbon. The current coin is Portuguese, which is struck here; the silver pieces are called petacks, of different value; and the copper are five and ten ree pieces. This place is very useful for ships that are in want of refreshment. They water, as we have before observed, at the fountain in the great square, but the water is not good. We landed our casks on a smooth sandy beach, which is not more than a hundred yards distant from the fountain, and upon application to the viceroy a centinel is appointed to look after them. The harbour is safe and commodious, and distinguished by a remarkable hill, in the shape of a cone, at the west point of the bay. The entrance is not wide, but it is easy, from the sea breeze which prevails from noon to sun-set, for any

any ship to enter before the wind. The entrance of the narrow part is defended by two forts, La Cruz, and Lozia; they are about three quarters of a mile from each other. The bottom being rocky, renders it dangerous to anchor there, but to avoid it ships must keep in the mid-channel. The coast abounds with a variety of fish, among which are dolphins and mackarel. Provisions, except wheaten bread and flour, are easily procured. Yams and cassada are in plenty. Beef both fresh and jerked may be bought at two-pence farthing a pound, but it is very lean. The people jerk their beef, by taking out the bones, and cutting it into large but thin slices. They then cure it with salt, and dry it in the shade. It eats very well, and, if kept dry, will remain good a long time at sea. Mutton is scarcely to be procured. Hogs and poultry are dear. Garden stuff and fruit are in abundance, but the pumpkin only can be preserved at sea. Tobacco also is cheap, though not good. Rum, sugar, and molasses are all excellent, and to be had at reasonable prices.

The climate of Rio de Janeiro is healthy, and free from most of those inconveniencies incident to tropical countries. The air is seldom immoderately hot, as the sea breeze is generally succeeded by a land wind. The seasons are divided into dry and rainy, though their commencement of late has been irregular and uncertain, for the latter had failed for near four years preceding our arrival; but at this time the rain had just began, and fell in heavy showers during our stay: formerly the streets have been overflowed by the rain, and rendered impassable with canoes.

The adjacent country is mountainous, and chiefly covered with wood, a small part of it only being cultivated. Near the town the soil is loose and sandy, but farther from the river it is a fine black mould. It produces all the tropical fruits in great plenty, and without much cultivation, a circumstance exceeding agreeable to the inhabitants, who are very indolent.

The mines, which lie far up in the country, are very rich. Their situation is carefully concealed, and no one can view them, except those concerned in working and guarding them. About twelve months before our arrival, the government had detected several jewellers in carrying on an illicit trade for diamonds, with slaves in the mines; and immediately afterwards a law passed, making it felony to work at the trade, or to have any tools fit for it in possession, the civil officers having indiscriminately seized on all that could be found. Near 40,000 negroes are annually imported to dig in the mines, so pernicious to the human frame are those works. In 1776, 20,000 more were draughted from the town to supply the deficiency of the former number.



C H A P. II.

*The departure of the Endeavour from Rio de Janeiro—
 Her passage to the entrance of the Streight of Le Maire—
 The inhabitants of Terra del Fuego described—Mr. Banks
 and Dr. Solander ascend a mountain in search of plants—
 An account of what happened to them in this excursion—
 The Endeavour passes through the Streight Le Maire—
 An account of her passage, and a further description of
 the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, and its productions—
 Remarks respecting the south east part of Terra del Fuego,
 and the Streight of Le Maire—Directions for the passage
 westward round this part of America, into the South
 Seas—The passage of the Endeavour from Cape Horn to
 the newly discovered islands—An account of their figure
 and appearance—The inhabitants described; with a nar-
 rative of the various incidents during the course, and on
 the Endeavour's arrival among them.*

ON the 8th of December, 1768, having procured all necessary supplies, we took our departure from Rio de Janeiro; and on the 9th an amazing number of atoms were taken out of the sea. These were of a yellowish colour, and few of them were more than the 5th part of an inch long; nor could the best microscope on board the Endeavour discover whether they belonged to the vegetable or animal creation. The sea was tinged in such a manner with these equivocal substances, as to exhibit broad streaks of a similar colour, for near the space of a mile in length, and for several hundred yards in breadth. Whence they came, or for what designed, neither Mr. Banks nor Dr. Solander could determine. Perhaps they might be the spawn of some marine animal, unknown to either antient or modern philosophers.

On the 11th we hooked a shark. It proved to be a female. When opened we took six young ones out of

it,

it, five of which were alive, and swam briskly in a tub of water, but the sixth appeared to have been dead some time. From this time we met with no material occurrence till the 22d, when we discovered numerous birds of the profillaria kind, in latitude 39 deg. 37 min. south, and longitude 49 deg. 16 min. west; we also discovered great numbers of porpoises of a singular species, of about 15 feet in length, and of an ash colour. On the 23d we observed an eclipse of the moon; and about seven o'clock in the morning, a small white cloud appeared in the west, from which a train of fire issued, extending itself westerly: about two minutes after, we heard two distinct loud explosions, immediately succeeding each other, like those of cannon, after which the cloud disappeared. On the 24th we caught a large loggerhead tortoise, weighing one hundred and fifty pounds. We likewise shot several birds, one an albetros, which measured between the tips of its wings nine feet and an inch, and from its beak to the tail two feet one inch and an half. On the 30th we ran upwards of fifty leagues, through vast numbers of land insects; some in the air, and others upon the water; they appeared to resemble exactly the flies that are seen in England, though they were thirty leagues from land, and some of these insects are known not to quit it beyond three yards. At this time we judged ourselves to be nearly opposite to the bay called Sans Fond (without bottom) where it is supposed by some writers, that the continent of America is divided by a passage; but it was the opinion of our circumnavigators, that there might be a large river, which probably had occasioned an inundation. On the 31st we had much thunder, lightning and rain. This day and the three following, we saw several whales; likewise a number of birds about the size of a pigeon, with white bellies and grey beaks.

On the 3d of January, 1769, we saw the appearance of land, in latitude 47 deg. 17 min. south, and

longitude

longitude 61 deg. 29 min. 45 sec. west, which we mistook for Pepy's island. In appearance it so much resembled land, that we bore away for it; and it was near two hours and an half before we were convinced, that it was one of those deceptions which sailors call a Fog-bank. At this time our seamen beginning to complain of cold, they were furnished with a pair of trowsers, and a Magellanic jacket, made of a thick woollen stuff called Fearnought. On the 11th, after having passed Falkland's Island, we saw the coast of Terra del Fuego, at the distance of about four leagues from the west to south-east by south. As we ranged along the shore to the south-east, smoke was perceived, made, probably, by the natives as a signal, for it was not to be seen after we had passed by.

On the 14th we entered the Streight of Le Maire, but were afterwards driven out again with such violence (the tide being against us) that the ship's bowsprit was frequently under water. At length, however, we got anchorage in a small cove, on the east of Cape St. Vincent, the entrance to which our captain named St. Vincent's Bay. The weeds which grow here upon rocky ground are very remarkable; they appear above the surface in eight and nine fathoms water. The leaves are four feet in length; and many of the stalks, though not more than an inch and a half in circumference, above one hundred.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks went on shore, where, having continued four hours, they returned about nine in the evening, with upwards of an hundred different plants and flowers, of which none of the European botanists had taken any notice near this bay. The country in general was flat, and the bottom, in particular, was a grassy plain. Here was plenty of wood, water, and fowl, and winter bark was found in great plenty. The trees appeared to be a species of the birch, but neither large nor lofty. The wood was white, and they bore a small leaf. White and red cranberries were found in these parts.

On

On the 18th we came to an anchor in twelve fathom water, upon coral rocks, before a small cove, at the distance of about a mile from the shore. At this time two of the natives came down upon the beach, as if they expected that the strangers would land; but as there was no shelter here, the ship was got under sail again, and the Indians retired disappointed. The same afternoon about two o'clock, we came into the bay of Good Success, and the vessel coming to an anchor, the captain went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to search for a watering place, and discourse with the Indians. These gentlemen had not proceeded above one hundred yards before the captain, when two of the Indians that had seated themselves rose up, and threw away the small sticks which they held in their hands, as a token of amity. They afterwards returned to their companions, who had remained at some distance behind them, and made signs to their guests to advance, whom they received in a friendly, though uncouth manner. In return for their civility, some ribbands and beads were distributed among them. Thus a sort of mutual confidence was established, and the rest of the English joined the party, the Indians conversing with them in their way, in an amicable manner. Capt. Cook and his friends took three of them to the ship, dressed them in jackets, and gave them bread and other provisions, part of which they carried on shore with them; but they refused to drink rum or brandy, making signs that it burned their throats, as their proper drink was water. One of these people made several long and loud speeches, but no part of them was intelligible to any of us. Another stole the covering of a globe, which he concealed under his garment that was made of skin. After having remained on board about two hours, they returned on shore, Mr. Banks accompanying them. He conducted them to their companions, who seemed no way curious to know what their friends had seen, and the latter were

were as little disposed to relate, as the former were to enquire. None of these people exceeded five feet ten inches in height, but their bodies appeared large and robust, though their limbs were small. They had broad flat faces, high cheeks, noses inclining to flatness, wide nostrils, small black eyes, large mouths, small, but indifferent teeth, and straight black hair, falling down over their ears and foreheads, the latter being generally smeared with brown and red paints, and like all the original natives of America, they were beardless. Their garments were the skins of seals and guanicoes, which they wrapped round their shoulders. The men likewise wore on their heads a bunch of yarn, which fell over their foreheads, and was tied behind with the sinews or tendons of some animals. Many of both sexes were painted on different parts of their bodies with red, white, and brown colours, and had also three or four perpendicular lines pricked across their cheeks and noses. The women had a small string tied round each ankle, and each wore a flap of skin fastened round the middle. They carried their children upon their backs, and were generally employed in domestic labour and drudgery.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Slander, attended by their servants, set out from the ship on the 16th, with a design of going into the country as far as they could that day, and returning in the evening. Having entered a wood, they ascended a hill through a pathless wilderness till the afternoon. After they had reached what they took for a plain, they were greatly disappointed to find it a swamp, covered with birch, the bushes interwoven and so inflexible that they could not be divided: however, as they were not above three feet high, they stepped over them, but were up to the ankles in boggy ground. The morning had been very fine, but now the weather became cold and disagreeable; the blasts of wind were very piercing, and the snow fell thick; nevertheless they pursued their route in hope of finding a better road. Before they had got

over this swamp, an accident happened that greatly disconcerted them: Mr. Buchan, one of the draughtsmen whom Mr. Banks had taken with him, fell into a fit. It was absolutely necessary to stop and kindle a fire, and such as were most fatigued remained to assist him; but Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Monkhouse proceeded, and attained the spot they had in view, where they found a great variety of plants that gratified their curiosity and repaid their toil. On returning to the company amidst the snow which now fell in great abundance, they found Mr. Buchan much recovered. They had previously sent Mr. Monkhouse and Mr. Green back to him and those that remained with him, in order to bring them to a hill which was conjectured to lie in a better track for returning to the wood, and which was accordingly fixed on as a place of rendezvous. They resolved from this hill to pass through the swamp, which this way did not appear to be more than half a mile in extent, into the covert of the wood, in which they proposed building a hut, and kindling a fire, to defend themselves from the severity of the weather. Accordingly, the whole party met at the place appointed, about eight in the evening, whilst it was still day-light, and proceeded towards the next valley.

Dr. Solander having often passed over mountains in cold countries, was sensible, that extreme cold, when joined with fatigue, occasions a drowsiness that is not easily resisted; he therefore intreated his friends to keep in motion, however disagreeable it might be to them. His words were—Whoever sits down will sleep, and whoever sleeps will wake no more. — Every one seemed accordingly armed with resolution; but, on a sudden, the cold became so very intense as to threaten the most dreadful effects. It was now very remarkable, that the Doctor himself, who had so forcibly admonished and alarmed his party, was the first that insisted to be suffered to repose. In spite of the most earnest intreaties of his friends, he lay down amidst the snow,

and it was with difficulty that they kept him awake. One of the black servants also became weak and faint, and was on the point of following this bad example. Mr. Buchan was therefore detached with a party to make a fire at the first commodious spot they could find. Mr. Banks and four more remained with the Doctor and Richmond the black, who with the utmost difficulty were persuaded to come on; and when they had traversed the greatest part of the swamp, they expressed their inability of going any farther. When the black was told that if he remained there he would soon be frozen to death, his reply was, That he was so much exhausted with fatigue, that death would be a relief to him. Doctor Solander said, he was not unwilling to go, but that he must first take some sleep, still persisting in acting contrary to the opinion which he himself had delivered to the company. Thus resolved, they both sat down, supported by some bushes, and in a short time fell asleep. Intelligence now came from the advanced party, that a fire was kindled about a quarter of a mile farther on the way. Mr. Banks then awakened the Doctor, who had already almost lost the use of his limbs, though it was but a few minutes since he sat down; nevertheless, he consented to go on, but every measure taken to relieve the black proved ineffectual. He remained motionless, and they were obliged to leave him to the care of a sailor, and the other black servant, who appeared to be the least hurt by the cold, and they were to be relieved as soon as two others were sufficiently warmed, to fill their places. The Doctor, with much difficulty, was got to the fire; and as to those who were sent to relieve the companions of Richmond, they returned without having been able to find them. What rendered the mortification still greater was, that a bottle of rum (the whole stock of the party) could not be found, and was judged to have been left with one of the three that were missing.

A fall of snow continuing for near two hours, there now remained no hopes of seeing the three absent persons

sons again. At twelve o'clock, however, a great shouting was heard at a distance, which gave inexpressible satisfaction to every one present. Mr. Banks and four others went forward and met the sailor, who had just strength enough left to walk. He was immediately sent to the fire, and they proceeded to seek for the other two. They found Richmond upon his legs, but incapable of moving them; the other black was lying senseless upon the ground. All endeavours to bring them to the fire were fruitless; nor was it possible to kindle one upon the spot, on account of the snow that had fallen, and was falling; so that there remained no alternative, and they were compelled to leave the two unfortunate negroes to their fate, after they had made them a bed of the boughs of some trees, and covered them over thick with the same. As all hands had been employed in endeavouring to move these poor blacks to the fire, and had been exposed to the cold for near an hour and an half in the attempt, some of them began to be afflicted in the same manner as those whom they were to relieve. Briscoe, another servant of Mr. Banks, in particular, began to lose his sensibility. At last they reached the fire, and passed the night in a very disagreeable manner.

The party that set out from the ship had consisted of twelve; two of these were already judged to be dead, it was doubtful whether the third would be able to return on board, and Mr. Buchan, a fourth, seemed to be threatened with a return of his fits. The ship they reckoned to be at the distance of a long day's journey, through an unfrequented wood, in which they might probably be bewildered till night, and having been equipped only for a journey of a few hours, they had not a sufficiency of provisions left to afford the company a single meal.

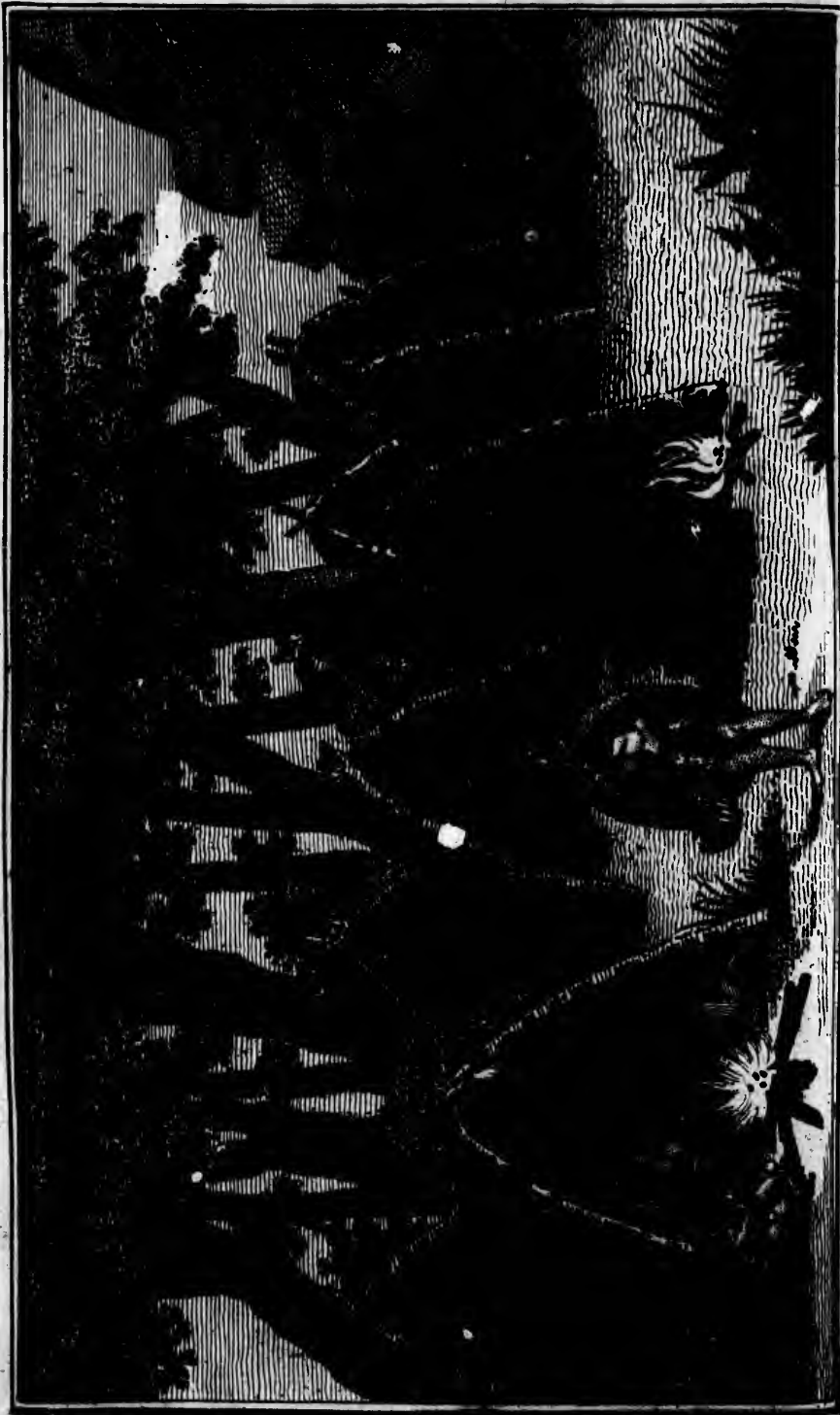
At day-break on the 17th, nothing presented itself to the view all around but snow, which covered alike the trees and the ground; and the blasts of wind were so frequent and violent, that their journey seemed to be rendered

hout-
essible
d four
d just
ly sent
other
out in-
lying
bring
sible to
w that
ned no
he two
d made
covered
d been
blacks
or near
began
m they
Banks,
ust they
ery dif-

sisted of
e dead,
e to re-
emed to
hip they
ourney,
y might
ng been
ey had
e com-

itself to
like the
were so
ed to be
endered

London : Published as the Act directs, by Alex^r. Hoag, at the Kings Arms, N^o. 16, Paternoster Row.



Chiswick sculp.

rendered impracticable, and they had reason to dread perishing with cold and famine. However, about six in the morning, they were flattered with a dawn of hope of being delivered, by discovering the sun through the clouds, which gradually diminished. Before their setting out, messengers were dispatched to the unhappy negroes; but these returned with the melancholy news of their death. Though the sky had flattered the hopes of the survivors, the snow continued falling very fast, a circumstance which impeded their journey; but a breeze springing up about eight o'clock, added to the influence of the sun, began to clear the air, and the snow falling in large flakes from the trees, gave tokens of a thaw. Hunger prevailing over every other consideration, induced our travellers to divide the small remainder of their provisions, and to set forward on their journey about ten in the morning. To their great astonishment and satisfaction, in about three hours they found themselves on the shore, and much nearer to the ship than their most sanguine expectations could have suggested. When they looked back upon their former route from the sea, they found, that instead of ascending the hill in a direct line, they had made a circle almost round the country. On their return, these wanderers received such congratulations from those on board, as can more easily be imagined than expressed.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore again on the 20th of this month, landing in the bottom of the bay, where they collected a number of shells and plants, hitherto unknown. After having returned to dinner, they went to visit an Indian town, about two miles up the country, the access to which, on account of the mud, was difficult. When they approached the town, two of the natives came out to meet them, who began to shout in their usual manner. They afterwards conducted Mr. Banks and the Doctor to their town. It was situate on a small hill, over-shaded with wood, and consisted of about a dozen huts, constructed without art

art or regularity. (They were composed of a few poles inclining to each other in the shape of a sugar-loaf, which were covered on the weather side with grass and boughs, and on the other side a space was left open, which served at once for a fire-place and a door.) They were of the same nature of the huts that had been seen at St. Vincent's Bay. (A little grass served for beds and chairs) and their utensils were a basket for the hand, a satchel to hang upon the back, and a bladder for water, out of which they drank through a hole near the top. This town was inhabited by a tribe of about fifty men, women, and children. Their bows and arrows were constructed with neatness and ingenuity, being made of wood highly polished; and the point, which was either glass or flint, very skilfully fitted. These latter substances were observed among them unwrought, as also cloth, rings, buttons, &c. from whence it was concluded that they sometimes travelled to the northward, as no ship, for years past, had touched at this part of Terra del Fuego. The natives here did not shew any surprize at the sight of fire arms, but appeared to be well acquainted with their use. It is likely that the spot on which the Doctor and Mr. Banks met them, was not a fixed habitation, as their houses did not seem as if they were erected to stand for any long time, and they had no boats or canoes among them. They did not appear to have any form of government, or any ideas of subordination. (They seemed to be the very outcasts of men, and a people that passed their lives in wandering in a forlorn manner over dreary wastes; their dwelling being a thatched hovel, and their cloathing scarcely sufficient to keep them from perishing with cold, even in these climates. Their only food was shell-fish, which on any one spot must soon be exhausted; nor had they the rudest implement of art, not even so much as was necessary to dress their food) yet amidst all this, we are told, that they appeared to enjoy that content, which is seldom found

found in great and populous cities ; a species of content, which if they really enjoyed, it must have arisen from stupidity, a satisfaction the offspring of the greatest ignorance. Such is the state of uncultivated nature ; such the rude form which uncivilized man puts on. The wants of these people seemed to be few ; but some wants all mankind must have, and even the most simple of them, these poor savages appeared scarcely in a condition to gratify. The calls of hunger and thirst must be obeyed, or man must perish ; yet the people in question seemed to depend on chance for the means of answering them. Those who can be happy in such a situation, can only be so, because they have not a due feeling of their misery. We know that there have been admirers of simple nature amongst the philosophers of all ages and nations ; and certainly simple nature has her beauties. In regard to the vegetative and brute creation, she operates with resistless energy ; her power is prevalent, as her pencil is inimitable ; but when we ascend in the scale of beings, and come to examine the human race, what shall we find *them*, without cultivation ? It is here that instinct ends, and reason begins ; and without entering into the question, Whether a state of nature is a state of war ? when we observe the innumerable inconveniences to which those are subject on whom the light of science never dawned, we may easily determine in the favour of those arts which have civilized mankind, formed them into societies, refined their manners, and taught the nations where they have prevailed, to protect those rights which the untutored savages have ever been obliged to yield to the superior abilities of their better instructed invaders, and have thus fallen a prey to European tyranny.

We observed in this place seals, sea-lions, and dogs, and no other quadrupeds ; nevertheless it is probable there are other kinds of animals in the country ; for Mr. Banks remarked, from a hill, an impression of the
foot-

foot-steps of a large animal on the surface of a bog, but of what kind it was he could not determine. Not any land-birds were seen larger than an English black-bird, hawks and vultures excepted. Ducks and other water-fowls we saw in abundance; also shell-fish, clams, and limpets. The country, though uncleared, had neither gnat, musquito, nor any other noxious or troublesome animals. A great variety of plants were found by the Doctor and Mr. Banks. The wild celery and scurvy-grass are supposed to contain antiscorbutic qualities, which will therefore be of service to the crews of such ships as hereafter may touch at this place, after a long voyage. The latter is found in abundance near springs and in damp places, particularly at the watering place in the bay of Good Success, and it resembles the English cuckow flower, or lady's-smock. The wild celery is like what grows in our gardens in England; but the leaves are of a deeper green. This plant may be found in plenty near the beach, and upon the land above the spring tides. In taste it is between that of celery and parsley. The grateful seaman, long confined to salt provisions, enjoy this healing vegetable diet, as a special blessing of an all gracious Providence, particularly visible in providing in different climates different food and nourishment, suitable to his nature, wants and necessities.

On Sunday, Jan. 22, having got in our wood and water, we sailed out of the bay, and continued our course through the Streight; and in passing this, notwithstanding the description which some voyagers have given of Terra del Fuego, we did not find that it had, agreeable to their representations, such a forbidding aspect. On the contrary, we found the sea coasts and the sides of the hills clothed with verdure. Indeed the summits of the hills were barren, but the valleys appeared rich, and a brook was generally found at the foot of almost every hill; and though the water had a reddish tinge, yet it was far from being ill tasted. Upon the whole it was the best we took on board during our voyage.

voyage. Nine miles westward of cape St. Diego, the low point that forms the north entrance of the Streight of Le Maire, are three hills, called the Three Brothers; and on Terra del Fuego is another hill, in the form of a sugar-loaf, which stands on the west side not far from the sea. We had not that difficulty mentioned in the history of Lord Anson's voyage, in finding where the streight of Le Maire lies. No ship can well miss the streight that keeps Terra del Fuego in sight, for it will then be easily discovered; and Staten island which lies on the east side will be still more plainly perceived, for there is no land on Terra del Fuego like it. And let it be further particularly observed, that the entrance of the streight should be attempted only with a fair wind, when the weather too is moderate, and likewise, upon the beginning of the tide of flood, which here falls out upon the full and change of the moon, about one or two o'clock; let it also be remembered, to keep as near the shore of Terra del Fuego as the winds will permit.

The streight of Le Maire is bounded on the west by Terra del Fuego, and on the east by the west end of Staten island, and is nearly five leagues in length, nor less in breadth. The bay of Good Success is seated about the middle of it, on the side of Terra del Fuego, which presents itself at the entrance of the streight from the northward; and the south end of it may be distinguished by a land mark, resembling a road from the sea to the country. It affords good anchorage, and plenty of wood and water. Staten land did not appear to Captain Cook in the same manner as it did to Commodore Anson. That horror and wildness, mentioned by the Commodore, were not observed by our gentlemen; on the contrary, the land appeared to be neither destitute of wood nor verdure, nor was it covered with snow; and on the north side we saw the appearances of bays and harbours. It is probable, that the season of the year and other circumstances might concur to occasion such different representations of a

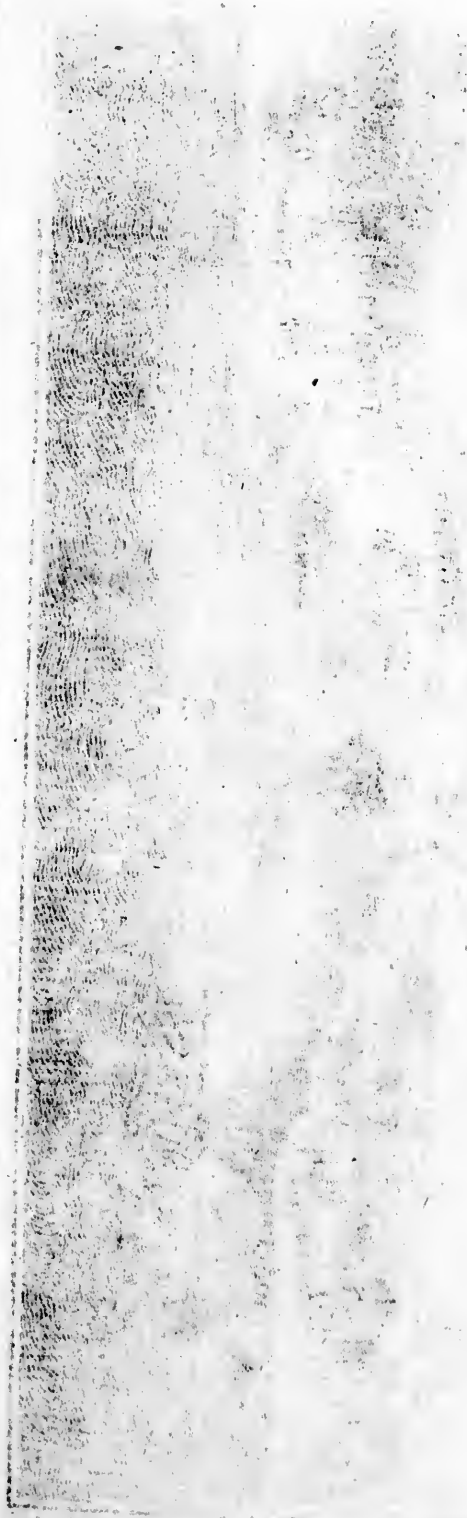
No. 2. F land,

land, which all our circumnavigators must own to be unfriendly and disagreeably situated. On the west side of the cape of Good Success, whereby is formed the south west entrance of the streight, we saw the mouth of Valentine's bay; from whence the land lies in a direction west south-west for more than twenty leagues, appearing high and mountainous, with several inlets and bays. Fourteen leagues from the bay of Good Success, south-west half-west, and nearly three leagues from the shore, is New Island; terminating to the north-east in a remarkable hillock; and seven leagues from hence, south-west, lies Evout's isle; a little to the west of the south of which are two small low islands, near to each other, called Barnevelt's. These are partly surrounded with rocks, which rise to different heights above the water, and are twenty-four leagues from the streight of Le Maire. Three leagues south west by south, from Barnevelt's islands, is the south-east point of Hermit's islands, which lie south-east and north-west. They appeared to us in different points of view, sometimes as one island, and at others as part of the main. From the south-east point of these islands to Cape Horn, the course is south-west by south, distant three leagues. Hermit, who commanded the Dutch squadron in 1624, certainly put into some of them, and Chapenham, vice admiral of this squadron, first discovered that Cape Horn was formed by a cluster of islands. Between the streight Le Maire and Cape Horn we found, when near the shore, the current setting generally strong to the north-east; but we lost it at the distance of fifteen or twenty leagues from land.

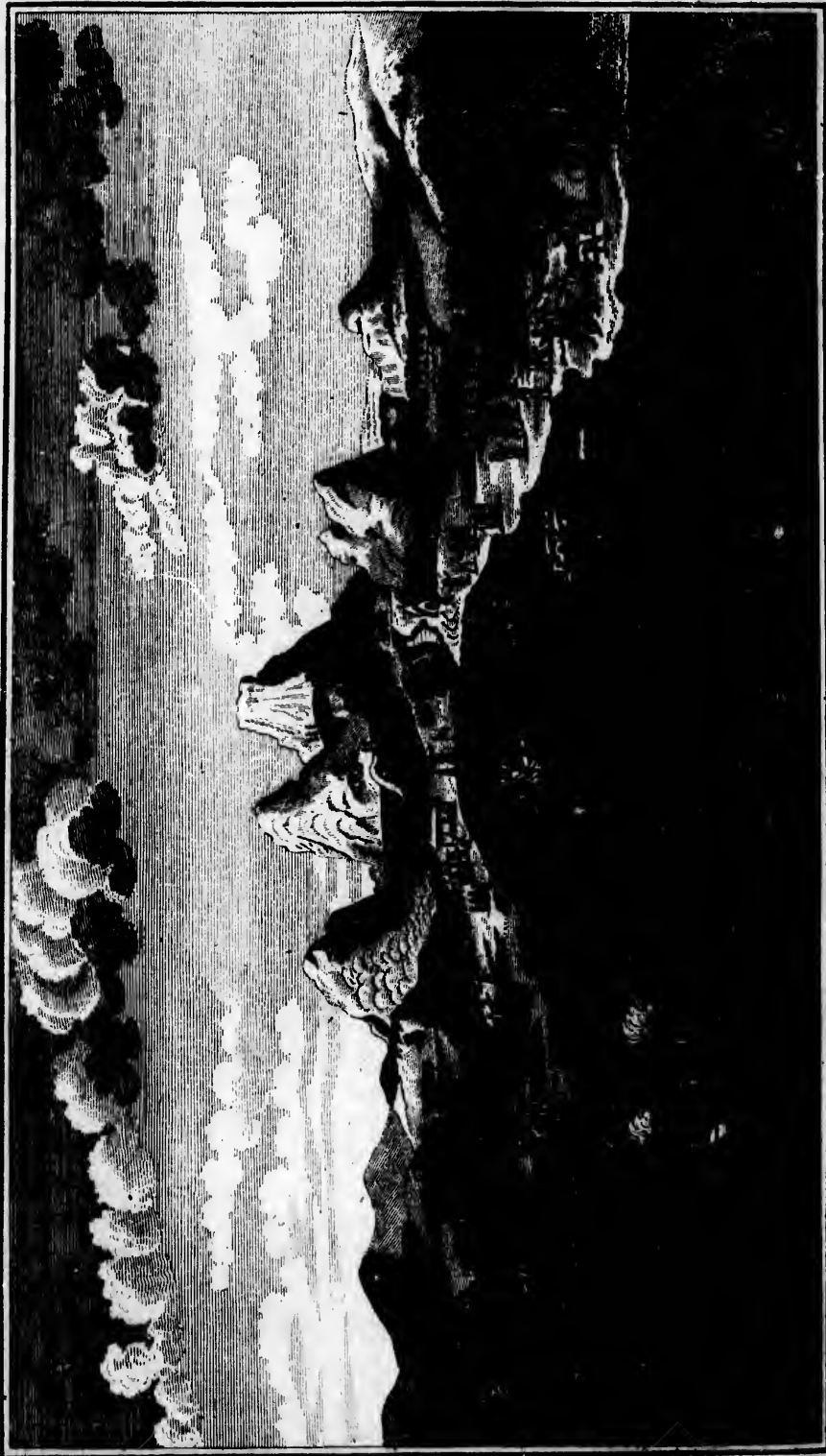
January the 26th we took our departure from Cape Horn, and the farthest southern latitude we made was 60 deg. 10 min. and our longitude was then 74 deg. 30 min. west. Cape Horn is situated in 55 deg. 53 min. south latitude, and 68 deg. 13 min. west longitude. The weather being very calm, Mr. Banks sailed in a small boat to shoot birds, when he killed some shear-waters, and albatrosses. The latter were larger than

oe
le
ne
h
i-
s,
ts
d
es
ne
es
ne
s,
y
ts
ne
y
nt
n-
of
rt
is
nt
h
n,
ft
of
n
e-
ne

ce
as
y
3
d
e
r
n



London; Published as the Act directs, by Alex. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N^o. 16. Paternoster Row.



MOUNT VESUVIUS

than those which had been taken to the northward of the streight, and proved to be very good food. At this time we found ourselves to be 12 deg. to the westward, and three and a half to the northward of the streight of Magellan, having, from the east entrance of the streight, been three and thirty days in sailing round Cape Horn. Notwithstanding the doubling of Cape Horn is represented as a very dangerous course, and that it is generally thought passing through the streight of Magellan is less perilous, yet the Endeavour doubled it with as little danger as she would the north Foreland on the Kentish coast; the heavens were serenely fair, the wind temperate, the weather pleasant, and, being near shore, we had a very distinct view of the coast. The Dolphin, in her last voyage, which was performed at the same season with ours, was not less than three months in passing through the streight of Magellan, not including the time that she lay in Port Famine; and it was the opinion of Captain Cook, that if we had come through the streight, we should not at this time have been in these seas; and should have suffered many inconveniences which we have not experienced. It is a question, Whether it is better to go through the streight of Le Maire, or to stand to the eastward, and go round Staten land? This can only be determined according to particular circumstances, which may make one or the other more eligible. The streight may be passed with safety by attending to the directions already given; but if the land is fallen in with to the eastward of the streight, and the wind should prove tempestuous, it would be best, in our opinion, to go round Staten land. In any case, however, we cannot approve of running into the latitude of 61 or 62, before any attempt is made to stand to the westward.

March the 1st we found ourselves, both by observation and the log, in latitude 38 deg. 44 min. south, and 110 deg. 33 min. west longitude, a concurrence very singular in a run of 660 leagues; and which

proved, that no current had affected the ship in her course; and it was likewise concluded, that we had not come near land of any considerable extent; for currents are always found at no great distance from the shore. Mr. Banks killed above sixty birds in one day; also two forest flies, such as had never yet been described; he also found a cuttle-fish of a species different from those generally known in Europe. This fish had a double row of talons, resembling those of a cat, which it could put forth or withdraw at pleasure. When dressed it made excellent soup. On the 24th our latitude was 22 deg. 11 min. south, and 127 deg. 55 min. west longitude. On the 25th a young marine about twenty threw himself overboard, on account of a quarrel about a piece of seal skin, which he took by way of frolic; but being charged with it as a theft, he took the accusation so much to heart, that in the dusk of the evening he threw himself into the sea and was drowned.

On the 4th of April about 10 o'clock, A. M. Peter Briscoe, servant to Mr. Banks, discovered land to the south, at the distance of about three or four leagues. Capt. Cook immediately gave orders to haul for it, when we found an island of an oval form, having a lagoon or lake in the center, that extended over the greater part of it. The surrounding border of land was low and narrow in many places, especially towards the south, where the beach consisted of a reef of rocks. Three places on the north side had the same appearance, so that on the whole the land seemed to resemble several woody islands. To the west was a large clump of trees, and in the center two cocoa-nut trees. When within a mile of the north side, though we cast out a line, no bottom could be found at 130 fathom, nor any good anchorage. This island was covered with trees, but we could discern no other species than the palm and the cocoa-nut. Several of the natives were discovered on shore, they appeared to be tall, with heads remarkable large, which probably some bandage might have increased,

increased. Their complexion was of the copper colour, and their hair was black. Some of these people were seen abreast of the ship, holding poles or pikes of twice their own height. They appeared also naked; but when they retired, on the ship's passing by the islands, they put on a light-coloured covering. Some clumps of palm-trees served them for habitations, which at a distance appeared like hilly ground, and the view of the groves was a very agreeable one. Our captain called this place Lagoon Island. It lay in 18 degrees latitude, and 139 west longitude. In the afternoon we again saw land to the north-west; by sun-set we reached it, when it appeared to be a low island of a circular form, and about a mile in circumference. The land was covered with verdure of various kinds, but no inhabitants were visible, nor any cocoa-nut trees. This island is distant from that of Lagoon about seven leagues north, and 62 west, which our gentlemen on board named Thumb Cap.

On the 5th we continued our course with a favourable wind, and about three o'clock discovered land to the westward. It was low, in form resembling a bow, and in circumference seemed to be ten or twelve leagues. Its length is about three or four leagues, and its width about two hundred yards. The beach was flat, and seemed to have no other herbage upon it than seaweeds. The resemblance of a bow was preserved in the arch and cord forming the land, while the intermediate space was taken up by water. The arch, in general, was covered with trees of various verdure and different heights. This island, from the smoke that was discovered, appeared to be inhabited, and we gave it the name of Bow Island.

On the 6th about noon, we again saw land to the west, and at three o'clock we came up with it. This land seemed to be divided into two parts, or rather a collection of islands (to which we gave the name of the Groups) to the extent of about nine leagues. The two largest were divided from the others by a strait, the
breadth

breadth of which was about half a mile. Some of these islands were ten miles or more in length, but appeared like long narrow strings of land, not above a quarter of a mile in breadth; but they produced trees, however, of different kinds, among which was the cocoa-nut tree. Several of the inhabitants came out in their canoes, and two of them shewed an intention of coming on board; but these, like the rest, stopped at the reef. From the observations made, these people appeared to be about our size, and well made. Their complexion was brown, and they were naked. In general, they had two weapons; one was a long pole, spear pointed, and the other resembled a paddle. Several of their canoes were constructed in such a manner, as not to carry more than three persons; others were fitted up for six or seven; and one of these boats hoisted a sail, which was converted into an awning when a shower of rain fell. Capt. Cook would not stay for any of them, neither could we determine, whether the signals made were meant for defiance, or for invitation; one party waving their hats, and another answering by shouting. In this respect it was not judged prudent to try the experiment, in order to be convinced, as the island appeared of no importance, and the crew not being in want of any thing it could produce. This curiosity was therefore laid aside, in expectation of soon discovering the island, where we had been directed to make our astronomical observations, the natives of which, it was reasonable to conjecture, would make no resistance, having already experienced the danger of opposing an European force.

On the 7th we discovered another island, judged to be in compass about five miles, being very low, and having a piece of water in the center. It appeared to abound in wood, and to be covered with verdure, but we saw no inhabitants upon it. It was named Bird Island, from the number of birds that were seen flying about. This lies in latitude 17 deg. 48 min. south, and 143 deg. 35 min. west longitude; distant ten leagues,

leagues, in the direction west half north from the west end of the Groups.

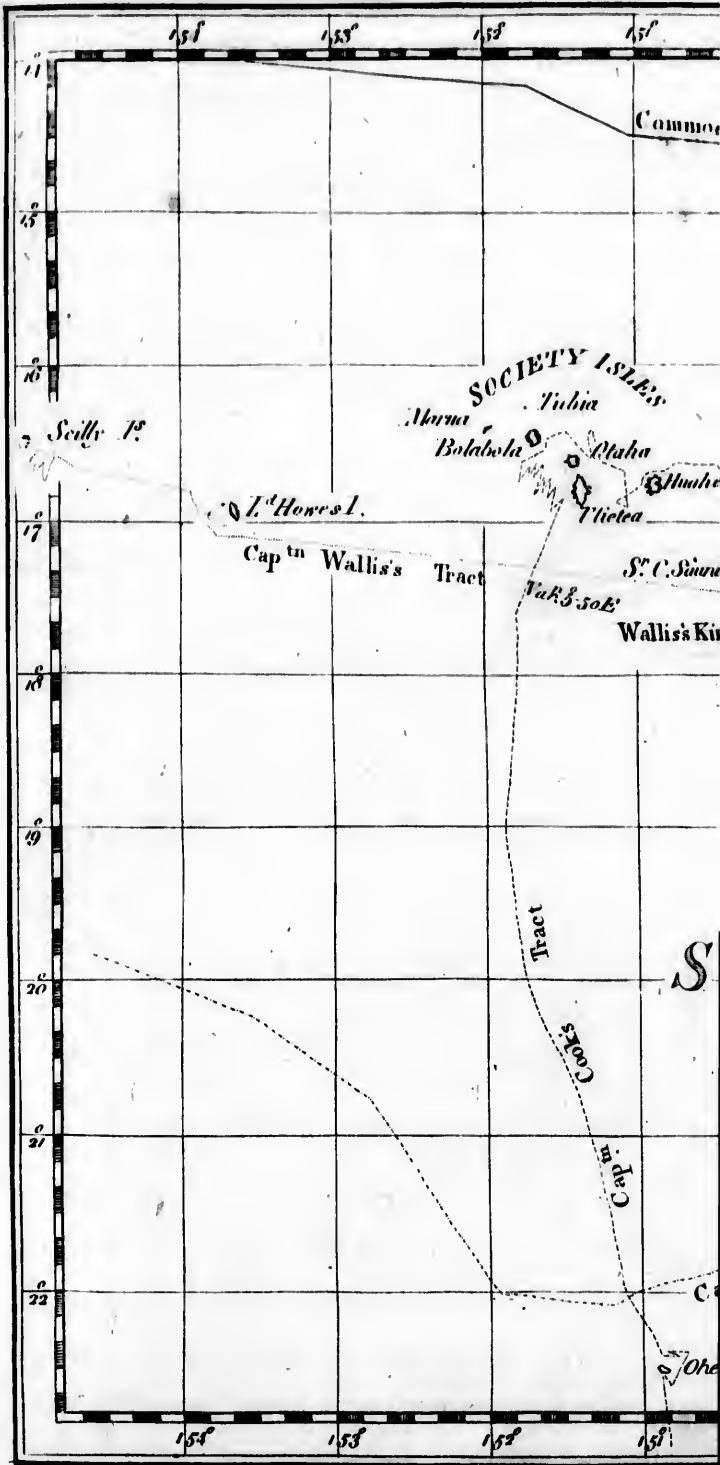
On the 8th in the afternoon we saw land to the northward, and came abreast of it in the evening, at about five miles distance. This land seemed to be a chain of low islands, of an oval figure, and consisted of coral and sand, with a few clumps of small trees, and in the middle of it was a lagoon. On account of its appearance, it was called Chain Island.

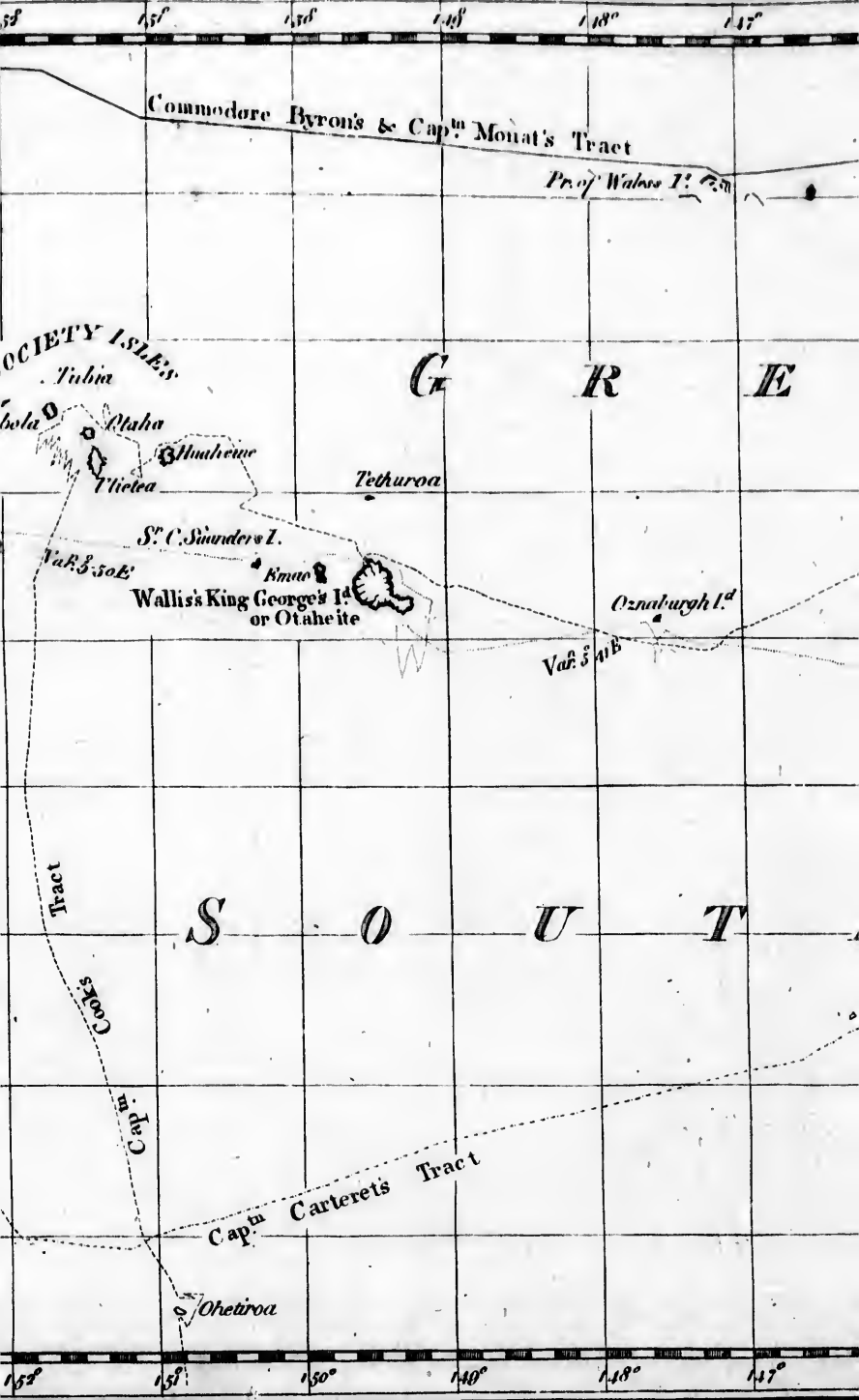
On the 10th, after a tempestuous night, we came in sight of Osnaburgh island, called by the natives Maitea. This island is circular, about four miles in circumference, partly rocky, and partly covered with trees.



The Endeavour arrives at Otaheite, or George the Third's Island—Rules established by Capt. Cook for conducting a trade with the natives—An account of several incidents during his stay in this island—An observatory and fort erected—Excursions into the woods—Visits from several of the chiefs—The music of the natives, and their manner of burying their dead, described—Other excursions and incidents, both on board and on shore—First interview with Oberea, the supposed Queen of the island—The fort described—The quadrant stolen, and the consequences—A visit to Tootabah, an Indian chief—A wrestling match described—European seeds are sown—The Indians give our people names.

ON the 11th we made Otaheite, or, as captain Wallis had named it, king George the Third's Island. The calms prevented our approaching it till the morning of the 12th, when a breeze sprung up, and several canoes were seen making towards the ship. Few of them, however, would come near, and those who did could not be persuaded to come on board. They had brought with them young plantains and branches of trees, which were handed up the ship's side, and, by their desire, were stuck in conspicuous parts of the rigging as tokens of peace and friendship. We then purchased their commodities, consisting of cocoa-nuts, bananas, bread-fruit, apples and figs, which were very acceptable to the crew. On the evening of the same day we opened the north-west point of the isle, to which the Dolphin's people had given the name of York Island. We lay off and on all night, and in the morning of the 13th we entered Port Royal Harbour in the island of Otaheite, and anchored within half a mile of the shore. Many of the natives came off immediately in their canoes, and brought with them bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, apples, and some hogs, which they





Commodore Byron's & Cap^m Mouat's Tract

Pr. of Wales I^d (2, 3)

SOCIETY ISLANDS

G R E

S. C. Saunders L.

Wallis's King George's I^d
or Otahite

Oznaburgh I^d

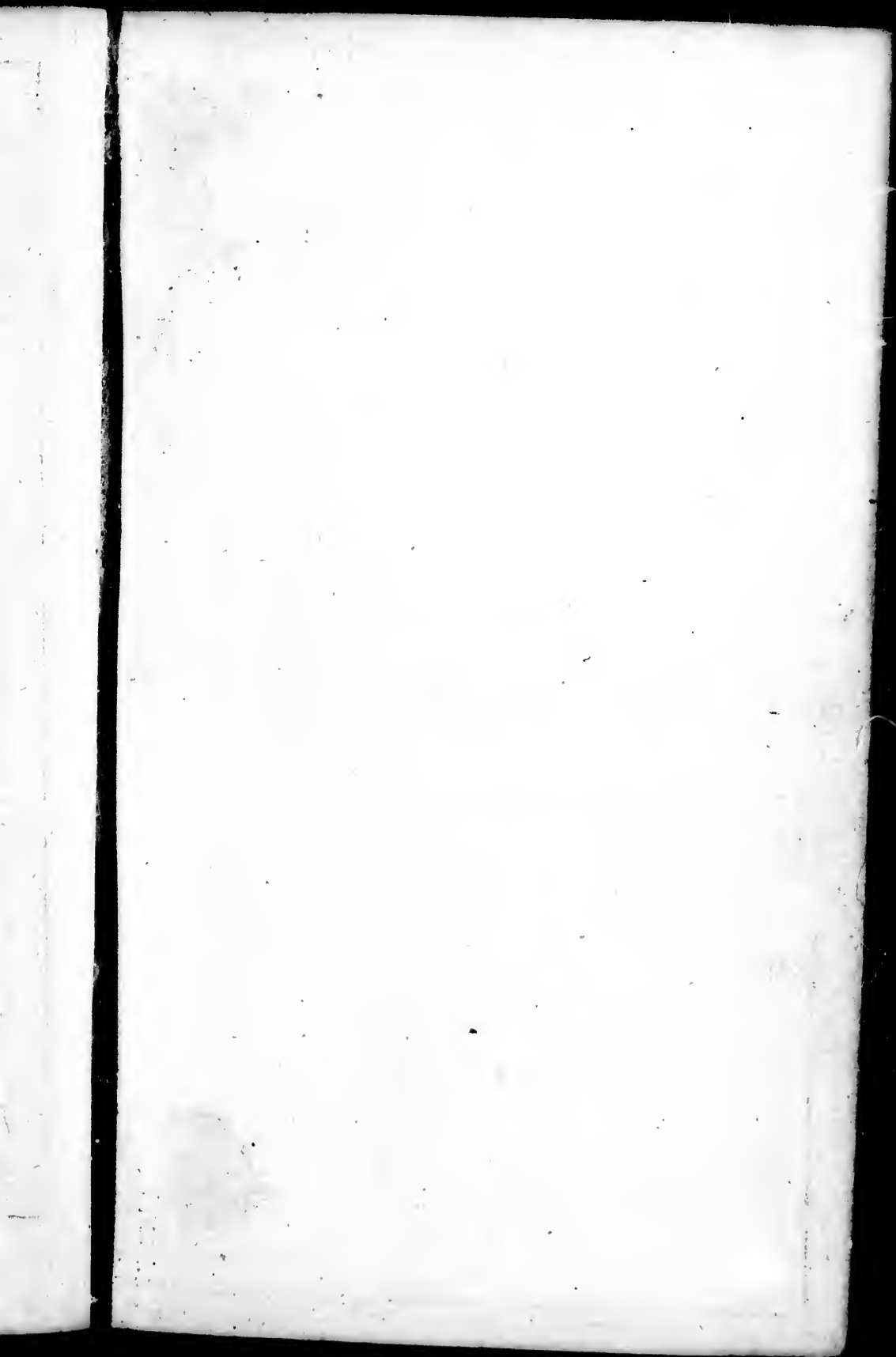
S O U T H

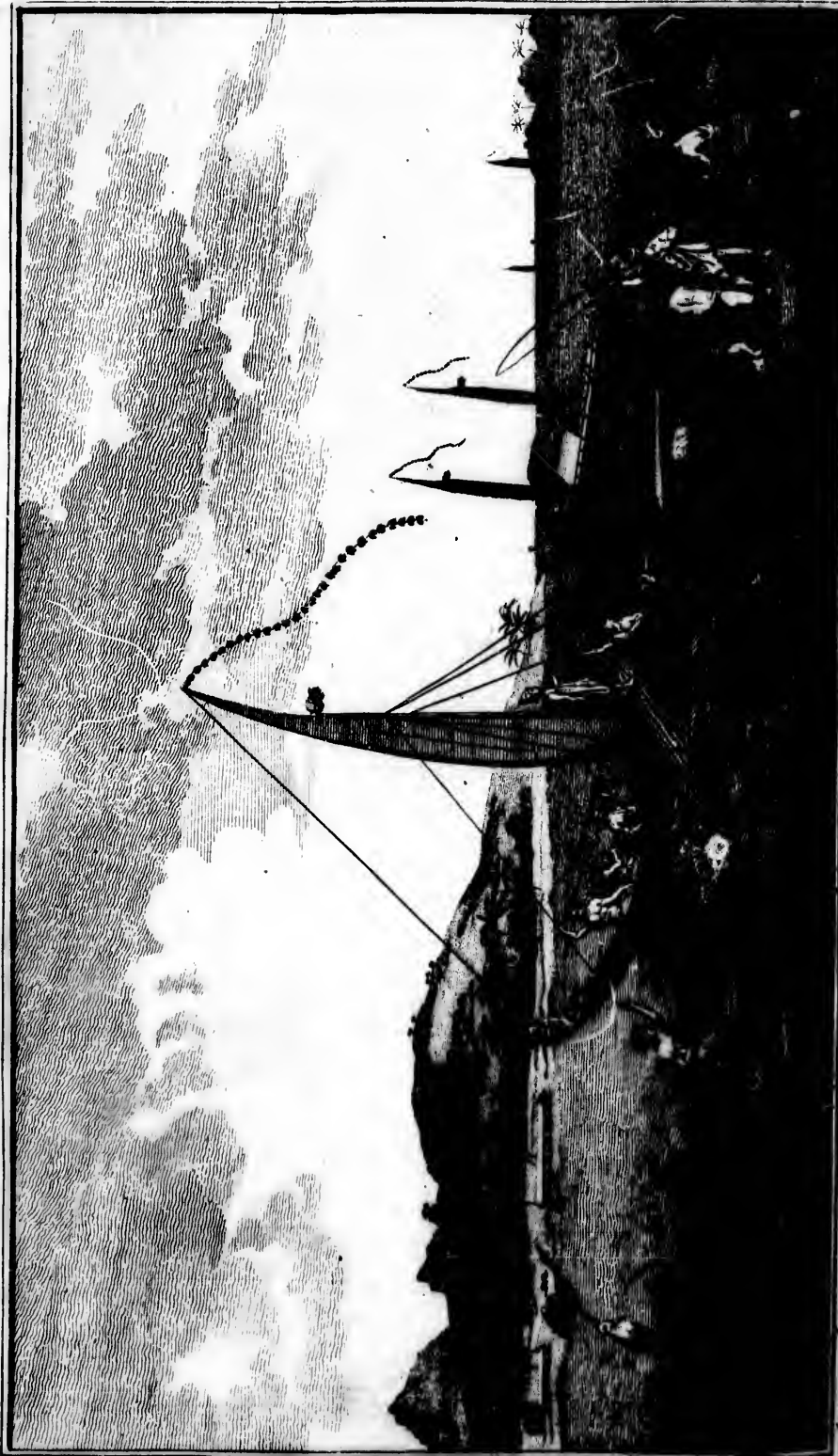
Cook's Tract
Cap^m

Cap^m Carteret's Tract

Ohetiroa

London, Published by Alex^r. Hogg.



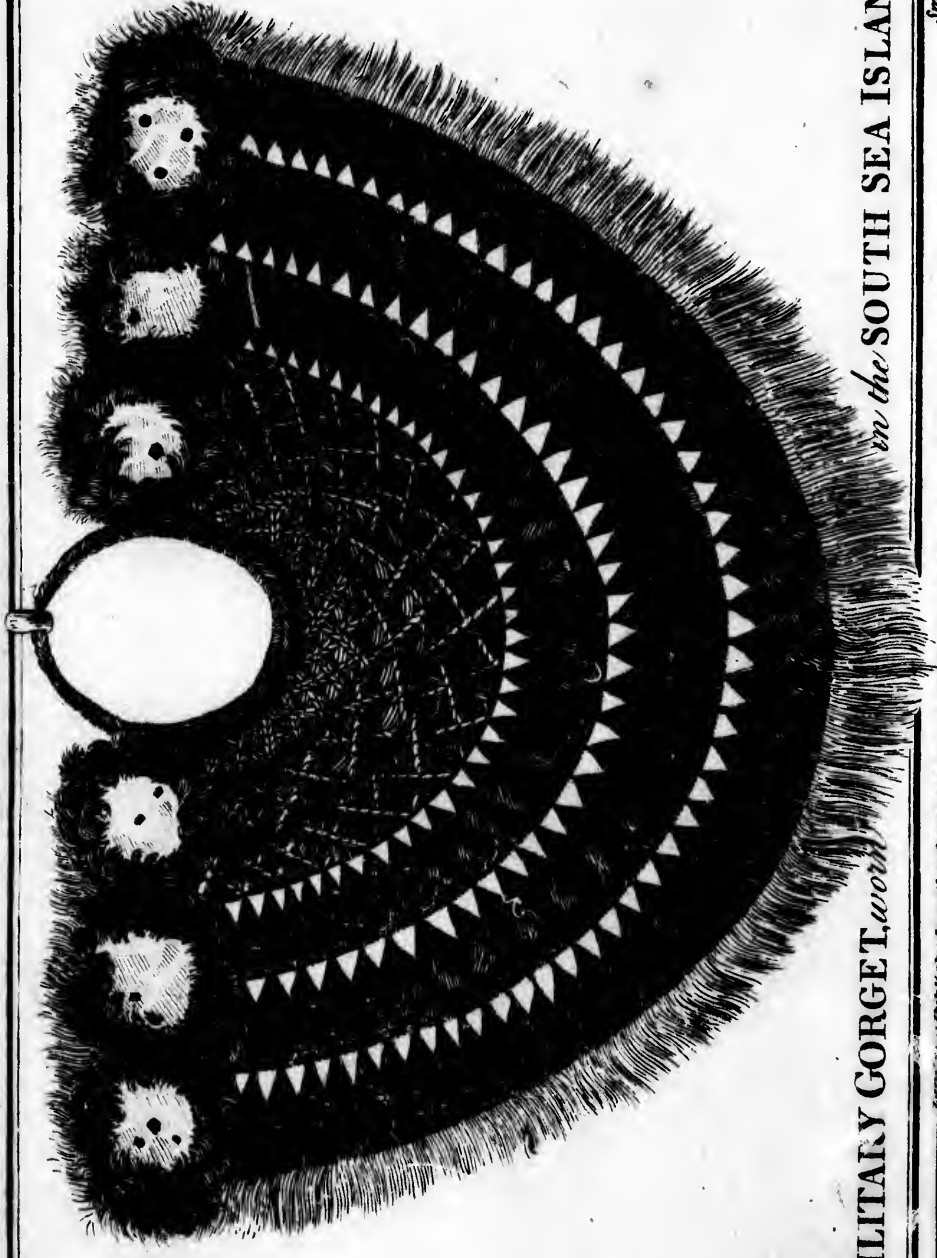


View of the Harbor of Honolulu, Oahu, Hawaii, from the Ship "The Commodore" (1842)

Published by G. W. Colver, No. 10, N. York St., N. Y.

Journal of the U.S. Fish Commission, Vol. 1, 1871-1872

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page]



A MILITARY GORGET, worn in the SOUTH SEA ISLANDS.

Smith sculp.

from the King Arms, No. 6, Birmingham, Eng.

Smith sculp.

they bartered for beads and other trinkets with the ship's company. The tree which bears the bread-fruit is about the size of a horse-chestnut: its leaves are near a foot and a half in length, in shape oblong, and very much resemble those of the fig-tree. The fruit is not unlike the cantaloupe melon: it is inclosed in a thin skin, and its core is as large as a man's thumb. The substance of this fruit is somewhat like that of new bread, and as white as the blanched almond. It must be roasted, and when eaten it has the taste of a slight sweetness.

Among those who came on board the Endeavour, was an elderly man, named Owhaw, known to Mr. Gore and others who had visited this island with captain Wallis. Owhaw being considered by our gentlemen as a very useful man, they studied to please him, and to gratify all his wishes. As our continuance in George's Island was not likely to be very short, certain rules were drawn up to be observed by every person on board his majesty's bark the Endeavour, for the better establishing a regular trade with the natives. The substance of these rules were, "That in order to prevent quarrels and confusion, every one of the ship's crew should endeavour to treat the inhabitants of Otaheite with humanity, and by all fair means to cultivate a friendship with them. That no officer, seaman, or other person, belonging to the ship, excepting such only who were appointed to barter with the natives, should trade, or offer to trade, for any kinds of provision, fruit, or other produce of the island, without having express leave so to do. That no person should embezzle, trade, or offer to trade with any part of the ship's stores: and, that no sort of iron, or any thing made of iron, nor any sort of cloth, or other useful articles in the ship, should be given in exchange for any thing but provision." These necessary rules were signed by Capt. Cook, and, being his orders, to the non-observance of them were annexed certain penalties, besides the punishment according to the usual custom of the navy.

No. 2.

G

When

When the bark was properly secured, Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on shore, with a party under arms, and their friend the old Indian. They were received by some hundreds of the natives with awe and reverence, who exchanged the tokens of peace, and offered to conduct them to a spot of ground, which would be more convenient for them to occupy, than that where they had landed. On their way, the English made the Indians some presents, which the latter very thankfully received. They now took a circuit of about four miles through groves of the bread-fruit and cocoa-trees. Intermingled with these were the dwellings of the natives, which consisted of huts without walls. In the course of their journey they found but few fowls or hogs, and understood, that none of their conductors, nor any of the people they had hitherto seen, were persons of rank in the island. Those of our crew, who had before been at Otaheite in the Dolphin, were likewise of opinion, that the queen's residence had been removed, as no traces of it were now to be discovered.

Next day, in the morning, before they could leave the ship, several canoes came about her filled with people, whose dress denoted them to be of the superior class. Two of these came on board, and each of them fixed upon a friend: one of them chose Mr. Banks, and the other Captain Cook. The ceremonials consisted of taking off their cloaths in great part, and putting them upon their adopted friends. This compliment was returned by our gentlemen presenting them with some trinkets. They then made signs for their new friends to go with them to the place of their abode; and the latter being desirous of being acquainted with the people, and finding out a more convenient harbour, accepted the invitation, and went with them, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook, and others. We all landed in two boats at the distance of about three miles, among a great number of the natives, who conducted us to a large habitation, where we were introduced to a middle-aged man, named
Tootahah.

k,
a
n.
res
of
id,
yy,
he
he
ir-
id-
ere
uts
ey
ne
ad
nd.
in
n's
ere
ave
eo-
ior
em
ks,
ted
ing
ent
with
new
and
the
our,
om-
ok,
nce
na-
ere
ned
ah.

London. Published as the Act directs, by Alex. Hoag, at the Kings Arms, N^o. 16, Paternoster Row.



View from the KING of DUKE of YORK'S ISLAND.

Tootahah. When we were seated, he presented to Mr. Banks a cock, a hen, and a piece of perfumed cloth, which compliment was returned by a present from Mr. Banks. We were then conducted to several other large dwellings, wherein we walked about with great freedom. The ladies, so far from shunning; invited, and even pressed us to be seated. By frequently pointing to the mats upon the ground, and sometimes drawing us down upon them, we had no doubt of their being less jealous of observation than we were; but the huts that are all open, except a roof, afforded no place of requisite retirement. Walking afterwards along the shore, we met, accompanied by a great number of natives, another chief, named Tubourai Tamaide, with whom we settled a treaty of peace, in the manner before described. This chief gave us to understand, that he had provisions at our service, if we chose to eat, which he produced, and we dined heartily upon bread-fruit, plantains, and fish. During this visit, Tomio, the chief's wife, placed herself upon the same mat with Mr. Banks, close by him; but as she was not young, nor appeared ever to have possessed many charms, this gentleman paid little attention to her; and Tomio received an additional mortification, when Mr. Banks beckoned to a pretty girl, who, with some reluctance, came and placed herself by him. The princess was somewhat chagrined at this preference given to her rival; nevertheless she continued her assiduities to her guest. This whimsical scene was interrupted by an event of a more serious nature; Dr. Solander having missed his opera glass, a complaint was made to the chief, which interrupted the convivial party. The complaint was enforced by Mr. Banks's starting up and striking the butt-end of his musquet against the ground, which struck the Indians with such a panic, that all of them ran precipitately out of the house, except the chief and a few others of the superior class. That no disadvantageous notions might be entertained of them on account of this circumstance, the chief observed, with an air of

great probity, That the place which the Doctor had mentioned on this occasion, was not within his district, but that he would send to the chief of it, and endeavour to recover it, adding, that if this could not be done, he would make the Doctor compensation, by giving him as much new cloth (of which he produced large quantities) as should be thought equal to the value. The case however was brought in a little time, and the glass itself soon after, which deprived us of the merit we should otherwise have had in refusing the cloth which had been offered us. But it afforded an opportunity of convincing the natives of our generosity, by lavishing rewards upon them for an action, to which self-interest had been the motive, rather than any sentiment of probity; to which, from numerous transactions, they appeared to be absolutely strangers. After this adventure was amicably terminated, we returned to the ship about six o'clock in the evening. On Saturday the 15th, in the morning, several of the chiefs, one of whom was very corpulent, came on board from the other point, bringing with them hogs, bread-fruit, and other refreshments, in exchange for which they received linen, beads, and other trinkets; but some of them took the liberty of stealing the lightning chain. This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks, and some of the other gentlemen, went on shore, to fix on a proper spot to erect a fort for their defence, during their stay on the island, and the ground was accordingly marked out for that purpose; a great number of the natives looking on all the while, and behaving in the most peaceable and friendly manner.

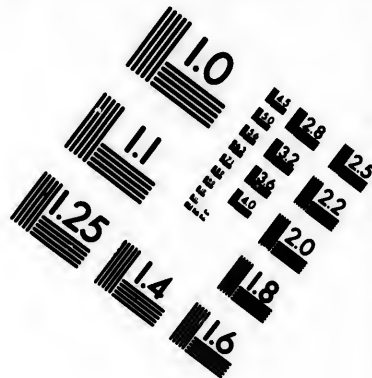
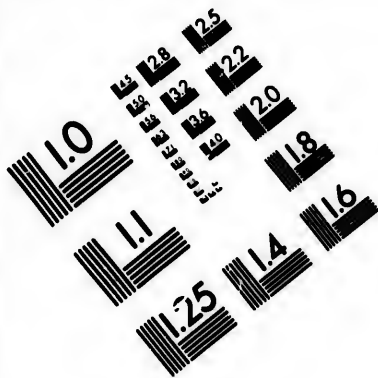
Mr. Banks and his friends having seen few hogs and poultry in their walks, they suspected that they had been driven up the country; for which reason they determined to penetrate into the woods, the tent being guarded by a petty officer and a party of marines. On this excursion several of the natives accompanied the English. While the party were on their march, they were alarmed by the discharge of two pieces fired by the guard of the tent. Owhaw having now called together

together the captain's party, dispersed all the Indians, except three, who in token of their fidelity broke branches of trees, according to their custom, and whom it was thought proper to retain. When they returned to the tent, they found that an Indian having snatched away one of the centinel's musquets, a young midshipman, who commanded the party, was so imprudent as to give the marines orders to fire, which were obeyed, and many of the natives were wounded; but this did not satisfy them, as the offender had not fallen, they therefore pursued him and revenged the theft by his death. This action, which was equally inconsistent with policy and humanity, could not but be very displeasing to Mr. Banks; but as what had passed could not be recalled, nothing remained but to endeavour to accommodate matters with the Indians. Accordingly he crossed the river, where he met an old man, through whose mediation several of the natives were prevailed to come over to them, and to give the usual tokens of friendship. The next morning, however, they saw but few of the natives on the banks, and none came on board, from whence it was concluded that the treatment they had received the former day was not yet forgotten, and the English were confirmed in this opinion by Owhaw's having left them. In consequence of these circumstances, the captain brought the ship nearer to the shore, and moored her in such a manner as to make her broad-side bear on the spot which they had marked out for erecting their little fortification. But in the evening the captain and some of the gentlemen going on shore, the Indians came round them, and trafficked with them as usual.

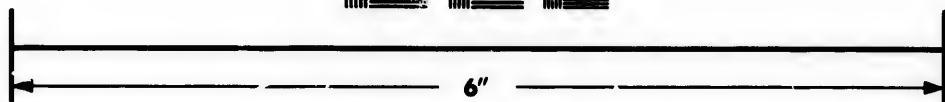
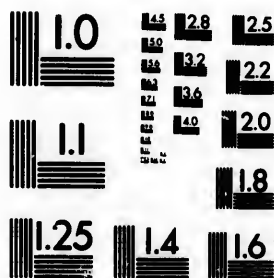
Mr. Banks on the 17th, had the misfortune to lose Mr. Buchan. The same day they received a visit from Tubourai Tamaide, and Tootahah. They brought with them some plantain branches, and till these were received, they would not venture on board. They bartered some bread-fruit and a hog, which was ready dressed, for nails, with the English.

The fort began to be erected on the 18th. And now
some





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

33 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14590
(716) 872-4503

1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0

10
01

some of the company were employed in throwing up intrenchments, whilst others were busied in cutting fascines and pickets, in which work the Indians assisted them. They fortified three sides of the place, with intrenchments and pallisadoes, and upon the other which was flanked by a river, where a breast-work was formed by the water-casks. The natives brought down such quantities of bread fruit and cocoa-nuts this day, that it was necessary to refuse them, and to let them know that none would be wanting for two days. Mr. Banks slept for the first time on shore this night. None of the Indians attempted to approach his tent, he had however taken the precaution of placing centinels about it, for its defence, in case any attack should be meditated.

Tubourai Tamaide visited Mr. Banks at his tent on Wednesday the 19th, and brought with him his wife and family with the materials for erecting a house, intending to build it near the fort. He afterwards asked that gentleman to accompany him to the woods. On their arrival at a place where he sometimes resided, he presented his guests with two garments, one of which was of red cloth, and the other was made of fine matting; having thus clothed Mr. Banks, he conducted him to the ship, and staid to dinner with his wife and son. They had a dish served up that day, which was prepared by the attendants of Tubourai Tamaide, which seemed like wheat flour, and being mixed with cocoa-nut liquor, it was stirred about till it became a jelly. Its flavour was something like blanc mange. A sort of market was now established without the lines of the fort, which was tolerably well supplied, and Tubourai Tamaide was a frequent guest to Mr. Banks, and the other English gentlemen. He was the only native that attempted to use a knife and fork, being fond of adopting European manners, Mr. Monkhouse the surgeon being abroad on his evening walk, reported that he had seen the body of a man who had been shot from the tent; of which he gave the following account—
“The corpse was deposited in a shed, close to the house where the deceased had resided when he was
alive,

g up
ting
sted
in-
which
med
such
that
now
nks
the
ow-
t it,
d.
on
wife
in-
ted
On
he
ich
at-
ted
nd
was
ich
oa-
ly,
of
rt,
a-
he
at
pt-
on
he
om
he
was
ve,



London. Published by Alex. Hogg at the Kings Arms N. 6. Paternoster Row.



— Page sculp. —

A MUSICIAN playing on a LUTE, from his Nose.

Row.



his Nose.





A CORPSE *embalmed* TOUPAPOW, attended by the Chief Mourner, &c.

alive, and others were within ten yards of it. It was about fifteen feet in length, and eleven in breadth, and the height was proportionable. The sides and one end were inclosed with a sort of wicker work; the other end was entirely open. The body lay on a bier, the frame of which was of wood, supported by posts about five feet high, and was covered with a mat, over which lay a white cloth: by the side of it lay a wooden mace, and towards the head two cocoa shells; towards the feet was a bunch of green leaves, and small dried boughs tied together, and stuck in the ground, near which was a stone about the size of a cocoa-nut; here were also placed a young plantain tree, and a stone axe. A great many palm nuts were hung in strings at the open end of the shed; and the stem of a palm-tree was stuck up on the outside of it, upon which was placed a cocoa-shell filled with water. At the side of one of the posts there hung a little bag with some roasted pieces of bread-fruit." The natives were not pleased at his approaching the body, their jealousy appearing plainly in their countenances and gestures.

On the 22d we were entertained by some of the musicians of the country, who performed on an instrument somewhat resembling a German flute, but the performer blew through his nostril instead of his mouth, and others accompanied this instrument, singing only one tune. Some of the Indians brought their axes to grind and repair, most of which they had obtained from Captain Wallis and his people in the Dolphin; but a French one occasioned a little speculation, and at length upon enquiry, it appeared to have been left here by M. de Bougainville.

On the 24th Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander made an excursion into the country, and found it level and fertile along the shore, for about two miles to the eastward; after which the hills reached quite to the water's edge; and farther on they ran out into the sea. Having passed these hills, which continued about three miles, we came to an extensive plain, abounding with good habitations, and the people seemed to enjoy a considerable share of property. The place was rendered

dered still more agreeable by a wide river issuing from a valley, and which watered it. We crossed this river, when perceiving the country to be barren, we resolved to return. Just as we were about so to do, we were offered some refreshment by a man, which some writers have expressed to be a mixture of many nations, but different from all, his skin being of a dead white, though some parts of his body were not so white as others; and his hair, eye-brows and beard were as white as his skin. His eyes appeared like those that are blood shot, and he seemed as if he was near-sighted. Upon our return, the excessive joy of Tubourai Tamaide and his women is not to be expressed.

On the 25th, in the evening, several of the gentlemen's knives being missing, Mr. Banks, who had lost his among the rest, accused Tubourai Tamaide of having taken it, which as he was innocent, occasioned him a great deal of unmerited anxiety. He made signs, while the tears started from his eyes, that if he had ever been guilty of such a theft as was imputed to him, he would suffer his throat to be cut. But though he was innocent, it was plain from many instances, that the natives of this island were very much addicted to thieving: though Mr. Banks's servant had mislaid the knife in question, yet the rest were produced in a rag, by one of the natives.

When the guns on the 26th, which were six swivels, had been mounted on the fort, the Indians seemed to be in great trouble, and several of the fishermen removed, fearing, notwithstanding all the marks of friendship which had been shewn to them by our people, they should, within a few days, be fired at from the fort: yet the next day, being the 27th, Tubourai Tamaide came with three women, and a friend of his, who was a remarkable glutton, into the fort to dine with us, and after dinner returned to his own house in the wood. In a short time after he came back to complain to Mr. Banks, of a butcher, who had threatened to cut his wife's throat, because she would not barter a stone hatchet for a nail. It appearing clearly that the offender

der had infringed one of the rules enjoined by the Captain for trading with the natives, he was flogged on board in their sight. When the first stroke had been given they were humane enough to interfere, and intreated earnestly that the culprit might be untied; but when this favour was denied them, they shewed strong signs of concern, and burst into tears.

On the 28th, Terapo, one of Tubourai Tamaide's female attendants, came down to the fort in the greatest affliction, the tears gushing from her eyes. Mr. Banks seeing her full of lamentation and sorrow, insisted upon knowing the cause, but instead of answering, she struck herself several times with a shark's tooth upon her head, till an effusion of blood followed, while her distress was disregarded by several other Indians, who continued laughing and talking with the utmost unconcern. After this, she gathered up some pieces of cloth, which she had thrown down to catch the blood, and threw them into the sea, as if she wished to prevent the least trace and mark of her absurd behaviour. She then bathed in the river, and with remarkable cheerfulness returned to the tent, as if nothing extraordinary had happened. During the forenoon of this day the Indian canoes were continually coming in, and people of both sexes filled the tents of the fort. Mr. Molineux, master of the Endeavour, seeing a woman whose name was Oberea, he declared she was the same person, whom he judged to be the queen of the island when he was there with Capt. Wallis. The eyes of every one were now fixed on her, of whom so much had been said by the crew of the Dolphin, and in the account given of her by the captain. With regard to her person, she was tall and rather large made; she was about forty years of age, her skin white, and her eyes had great expression in them: she had been handsome, but her beauty was now upon the decline. It was not long before an offer was made to conduct her on board the ship, which she accepted. Many presents were made her, particularly a child's doll, which she viewed very attentively. Capt. Cook accompanied her on

No. 2. H shore,

shore, and when we landed, she presented him with a hog and some plantains, in return for his presents, which were carried to the fort in procession, Oberea and the Captain bringing up the rear. In the way they met Tootahah, who, though not king, seemed to be at this time invested with sovereign authority. Envy is found among those who are supposed to be the children of simple nature. Her influence was plainly visible in a matter which to us was rather a subject of laughter than of serious consideration. Tootahah no sooner saw the doll, than he discovered strong symptoms of jealousy, nor could any method be found of conciliating his friendship, but that of complimenting him with a baby also. A doll was now preferable to a hatchet; but a very short time taught the Indians the superior value of iron, which, on account of its usefulness, prevailed over every other consideration. To such of the men who came from time to time on board, the ship's provisions seemed to be very acceptable, but the women did not chuse to taste them; and though they were cou- to dine with our gentlemen, yet, for reasons kno- nly to themselves, they preferred the eating of plantains with the servants.

On the 29th, near noon, Mr. Banks paid a visit to Oberea, but was informed that she was asleep under the awning of her canoe; and, going to call her up, was surprized at finding her in bed with a young fellow of about twenty-five years of age, a discovery which caused him to retire rather disconcerted; but he soon understood that a commerce of this kind was by no means considered as scandalous, the ladies frequently courting the men to amorous dalliance, of which they made no secret; and as to young Obadee, found in bed with the queen, he was well known by every one to be the object of her lascivious hours. The queen soon got up, and dressed herself to wait upon Mr. Banks, and, after having, as a token of her particular regard, put on him a suit of fine cloth, they proceeded together to the tents. In the evening Mr. Banks visited Tubourai Tamaide. He was astonished to

to find this chief and his family in tears, and not being able to discover the cause, he soon took leave of them. Upon his return the officers told him, that Owhaw had foretold, that the guns would be fired within four days, and as this was the eve of the third day, they were alarmed at the situation they judged themselves to be in. As we were apprehensive of ill consequences from this prepossession, the centinels were doubled at the fort, and we thought it necessary to keep under arms; but Mr. Banks walking round the point, at two in the morning, and finding nothing that might tend to encourage his suspicions, he dropped them, and rested secure in the fort. This our little fortification was now complete. A bank of earth four feet and an half high on the inside, and a ditch without ten feet broad and six deep, formed the north and south sides. On the west, opposite the bay, was another bank (with pallisadoes upon it) four feet high; but a ditch was unnecessary, the works being at high-water mark. Upon the river's bank, on the east-side, was a range of water casks, filled with water. This being thought the weakest side, we planted two four pounders, and mounted six swivel guns, which commanded the only two avenues from the woods. We had about forty-five men in this fort, including the officers, and other gentlemen who resided on shore.

On the 30th Tomio came in great haste to our tents, and taking Mr. Banks by the arm, told him that Tubourai Tamaide was dying, owing to somewhat that had been given him by our people, and intreated him instantly to go to him. Accordingly Mr. Banks went, and found the Indian very sick. He had been vomiting, and had thrown up a leaf which they said contained some of the poison. Mr. Banks having examined the leaf, found it was nothing but tobacco, which the Indian had begged of some of the ship's company.

The matter, however, appeared in a very serious light to Tubourai Tamaide, who really concluded from the violent sickness he suffered, that he had swallowed

some deadly drug, the terror of which no doubt contributed to make him yet more sick. While Mr. Banks was examining the leaf, he looked up to him, as if he had been just on the point of death. But when the nature of this dreadful poison was found out, he only ordered him to drink of cocoa nut milk, which soon restored him to health, and he was as chearful as before the accident happened. These people seemed in particular instances to be sometimes strangely afflicted from slight causes.

On the 1st of May, Captain Cook having produced an iron adze, which was made in imitation of the stone ones used by the natives, shewed it to Tootahah, as a curiosity. The latter snatched it up and insisted on having it; and though he was offered the choice of any of the articles in the chests which were opened before him, yet he would not accept of any thing in its stead. A chief dined with us that day, who had been on board some time before, accompanied by some of his women that used to feed him. He now came alone; and when all things were set ready for dinner, the captain helped him to some victuals, supposing that he would have dispensed with the ceremony of being fed; but he was deceived; for the chief never attempted to eat, and would have gone without his dinner, if one of the servants had not fed him. The next morning, May 2, we took the astronomical quadrant and some of the instruments on shore that afternoon; and to our great surprize when we wanted to make use of the quadrant, the next day, it was not to be found; a matter which was looked upon as the more extraordinary, as a centinel had been placed for the whole night within a few yards of the place where it was deposited. Our own people, at first, were suspected of being concerned in this theft, and, as the instrument had never been taken out of the case, it was suspected that some person might have carried it off, under the supposition that its contents were articles used in traffic. A strict search was made in and about the fort, and a considerable reward offered in order to obtain

obtain it again. But all this proving fruitless, Mr. Banks, accompanied by Mr. Green and some other gentlemen, set out for the woods, where they thought they might probably get some tidings of what was stolen. In their way, they met with Tubourai Tamaide and some of the natives. This chief was made to understand by signs, that they had lost the quadrant, and that as some of his countrymen must have taken it, they insisted upon being shewn the place where it was concealed. Having proceeded a few miles together, after some enquiry, Tubourai Tamaide was informed who the thief was, and it was found that he was then at a place about four miles distant. As they had no arms but a brace of pistols, not caring to trust themselves so far from the fort, a message was dispatched to Captain Cook, requesting him to send out a party to support them. The captain accordingly set out with a party properly armed, after having laid an embargo upon all the canoes in the bay.

In the mean time, Mr. Banks and Mr. Green proceeded on their way, and at the place which had been mentioned, were met by one of Tubourai Tamaide's own people, bringing with him part of the quadrant; the case and the other parts of the instrument were recovered soon afterwards, when it was found that it had received no real injury, though it had been taken to pieces.

When they returned in the evening, they were much surpris'd to find Tootahah under confinement in the fort, while a croud of the natives surrounded the gate, discovering marks of the greatest anxiety for the fate of their chief. The occasion of his detention originated from the conduct of the Indians: alarmed at Capt. Cook's having gone up the country with an armed party, most of the natives left the fort that evening, and one of the canoes attempted to quit the bay. The lieutenant who commanded on board the ship, having it in charge not to suffer any canoe to depart, sent a boat to detain her, but she no sooner approached, than the Indians jumped into the sea, Tootahah being of
the

the number, was taken up, and sent by the lieutenant to the officer that commanded at the fort, who concluded he should do right to detain him prisoner, while the poor chief thought of nothing but being put to death, till Capt. Cook caused him to be returned, to the great joy of his countrymen. But the natives were still inclined to bear this affair in their minds; and as a proof of it, they neglected to supply the market with provisions. Mr. Banks walking into the woods, heard great murmurings concerning the treatment of Tootahah, who, as they said, had been ill used and beaten, though Mr. Banks declared he was quite ignorant of his having received such treatment.

The chief now sent for such hogs to be restored as he had left behind him, at first intending them as a present, which by this time, perhaps, he did not think the English had merited; but they refused to send them unless he would come himself, thinking by an interview to promote a reconciliation; and this they were the more desirous of, as they were told it would be a fortnight before he would pay them a visit.

On the 3d provisions were extremely scarce, as the markets continued to be ill supplied on the account already mentioned; and it was not without some difficulty, that Mr. Banks got a few baskets of bread-fruit from Tubourai Tamaide. Tootahah on the 4th sent for an axe and a shirt in return for the hogs, which were accordingly promised to be brought him the next day. He sent again early in the morning of the 5th, and Mr. Banks and the Doctor set out in the pinnace, taking with them one of Tootahah's people, and soon reached Eparre, where he resided, which was a few miles to the westward. When they arrived there, they found a great number of the natives waiting for them on the shore, and were conducted directly to the chief, the people notwithstanding the offence they had so lately taken, shouting out in their language, "Tootahah is your friend." He was sitting under a tree, and some old men were standing about him. Having made signs for them to be seated, he asked for the axe, which

which was then given him by Capt. Cook, as also the shirt that he had demanded, and a broad-cloth garment, which latter he put on, and was well pleased with the present. They ate a mouthful together in the boat, and were afterwards conducted to a large court-yard on one side of the chief's house, where they were to be entertained with wrestling after the manner of the country. He himself sat at the upper end of the area, having several of his principal men on each side of him, who appeared as judges of the sport, which was as follow:

“ Ten or twelve combatants entered the area, and after many simple ceremonies of challenging, they engaged, and each endeavoured to throw his antagonist by mere strength: thus they seized each other by the hand, or other parts of the body, grappling, without the least art, till one, by having a greater hold, or stronger muscular force, threw his antagonist on his back. The conquest was applauded by the old men with a few words repeated in a kind of tune, and with three huzzas. After one engagement another succeeded; but if the combatants could not throw each other in the space of a minute, they parted, either by consent, or the intervention of their friends. Several women of rank in the country were present, but it was thought they only attended this amusement in compliment to the English gentlemen. A man with a stick, who made way for us when we landed, officiated as master of the ceremonies, keeping order among the people, and those of them who pressed forward he struck with his stick very smartly. During these athletic sports, another party of men performed a dance, for the space of a minute, but neither of these parties took the least notice of each other, their attention being wholly fixed on their own endeavours to please and conquer. At the conclusion of this entertainment, not unlike the wrestling matches of remote antiquity, we were told, that some hogs, and a large quantity of bread fruit were preparing for our dinner, very agreeable intelligence to those whose appetites were sharpened

ed by their journey; but our host, instead of setting his two hogs before us, ordered one of them to be carried into our boat. Here we thought to have enjoyed our good cheer, and yet we neither dined on shore, nor in the boat, but at the desire of Tubourai Tamaide, proceeded as far as the ship: no small mortification this, as we had to row four miles, while our dinner was growing cold: however, we were at last gratified with our promised repast, of which our chief and his friends had a liberal share. This friendly reconciliation between them and us, operated on the natives like a charm: for it was no sooner known that Tubourai Tamaide was on board, than provisions of all kinds were brought to the fort in great plenty.

On the 8th, early in the morning, Mr. Molineux, the master, and Mr. Green set out in the pinnace to the eastward, in order to procure some poultry, or hogs. They saw many of the latter, and one turtle, yet could not purchase either, because they belonged to Tootahah, and without his permission, the people could not be prevailed upon to sell them. Hence we concluded that Tootahah was indeed a prince; and we afterwards learnt, that, in this part of the island, he acted as regent for a minor, whom we never saw all the time of our stay here. However, some time afterwards, having produced some nails to barter for provisions, we obtained near twenty cocoa-nuts, and some bread-fruit, for one of the smallest size, so that we soon had plenty of these articles, though no hogs. In this excursion Mr. Green imagined he had discovered a tree sixty yards in circumference; but, on his return, he was informed by our two gentlemen, that it was a species of the fig, whose branches bending down to the earth take fresh root, and thus form a mass of trunks, which being all united by a common vegetation, might easily be mistaken for one trunk or body.

On the 9th in the forenoon, Oberea paid us a visit, accompanied by her favourite Obadee, presenting us with a hog and some bread-fruit. This was the first visit we had received from this lady, since the loss of our

our quadrant, and the confinement of Tootahah. By this time our forge was set up and at work, which afforded a new subject of admiration to the Indians, and to Capt. Cook an additional opportunity of transferring obligations on them, by permitting the smith, in his leisure hours, to convert the old iron, which they were supposed to have procured from the Dolphin, into different kinds of tools. Oberea produced as much old iron as would have made for her another axe; this she requested to have done; however the lady could not be gratified in this particular, upon which she brought a broken axe, desiring it might be mended. The axe was mended, and to all appearance she was content. On their return home, the Indians took with them the canoe which had lain some time at the point.

On the 10th we sowed, in ground properly prepared, seeds of melons, and other plants, but none of them came up, except mustard. Mr. Banks thought the seeds were spoiled by a total exclusion of fresh air, they having all been put into small bottles, and sealed up with rosin. We learnt this day, that the Indians called the island Otaheite, the name by which we have distinguished it; but we were not so fortunate in our endeavours to teach them our names; and, after repeated attempts to pronounce them, which proved fruitless, they had recourse to new ones, the productions of their own invention. Capt. Cook they named Toote; Mr. Hicks, Hete. The master they called Boba, from his christian name Robert; Mr. Gore, Toarro; Dr. Solander, Torano; Mr. Banks, Tapani; Mr. Green, Eteree; Mr. Parkinson, Patani; Mr. Sporing, Polini; and so on for the greatest part of the ship's crew. These perhaps, were significant words in their own language; and we are inclined to this opinion, because Mr. Monkhouse, who commanded the party, that shot the man for stealing a musket, they named Matte, which was not merely an arbitrary sound, but in their language it signified dead.

An extraordinary visit—Divine service attended by the natives of Otabeite—An uncommon sight—Tubourai Tamaide found guilty of theft—A visit paid to Tootabab—Various adventures at that time, and an extraordinary amusement of the Indians—A relation of what happened at the fort, while preparations were making to observe the Transit of Venus—The observations made with great success—A particular account and description of an Indian funeral—An unusual character among the Indians—A robbery at the fort—Specimen of Indian cookery—A narrative of various incidents—A circumnavigation of the island, and occurrences during this expedition—A burying place, and a Morai, or place of worship described—An inland expedition of Mr. Banks—Preparations made by the crew of the Endeavour to leave the island of Otabeite—An account of the departure of the Endeavour, and the behaviour of the natives, particularly of Tupid, on this occasion.

ON the 12th of this month (May) an uncommon ceremony was performed by some of the natives. As Mr. Banks was sitting in his boat, trading with them as usual, some ladies, who were strangers, advanced in procession towards him: (The rest of the Indians on each side gave way) and formed a lane for the visitors to pass, who coming up to Mr. Banks, presented him with some parrots feathers, and various kinds of plants. Tupid, who stood by Mr. Banks, acted as his master of the ceremonies, and receiving the branches, which were brought at six different times, laid them down in the boat. After this some large bundles of cloth were brought, consisting of nine pieces, which being divided into three parcels, one of the women, called Oorattooa, who appeared to be the principal, stepping upon one of them, pulled up her cloaths as high as her waist, and then, with an air of unaffected simplicity, turned round three times. This ceremony

ceremony she repeated, with similar circumstances, on the other two parcels of cloth; and the whole being then presented to Mr. Banks, the ladies went and saluted him; in return for which extraordinary favours, he made them such presents as he thought would best please them. In the evening the gentlemen of the fort were visited by Oberea, and Otheorea, her favourite female attendant, who was a very agreeable girl, and whom we were the more pleased to see, because it had been reported that she was either sick or dead.

On the 13th Tubourai Tamaide offended Mr. Banks, by snatching his gun out of his hand, and firing it in the air; an action which also much surprized that gentleman, as he imagined him totally ignorant of the use of it. And as the ignorance of the people of those countries in regard to this particular, must always cause them to fear their guests, Mr. Banks therefore made a serious matter of what, probably, the other meant only as a joke, and, not without threats, gave him to understand, that for him but to touch the piece was a high insult. The offender made no reply, but set out immediately, with his family, for Eparre. Great inconvenience being apprehended from this man, and as in many instances he had been particularly useful, Mr. Banks determined to follow him. He set out the same evening from the fort, accompanied by Mr. Molineux, and found him in the middle of a large circle of people, the picture of extreme grief, which was also visible in the countenances of his attendants. One of the women expressed her trouble in the same manner as Terapo had done, upon another occasion. Mr. Banks lost no time in endeavouring to put an end to all animosity. The chief was soothed into confidence, and, a double canoe being got ready, they all returned together to the fort before supper: and as a pledge of sincere reconciliation, both he and his wife passed the night in the tent of Mr. Banks. That very night, notwithstanding their presence, one of the natives attempted to scale

the barricadoes of the fort; but, being discovered by one of our centinels, he ran away much faster than any of our people could follow him. The temptation which caused him to attempt what might have cost him his life, was, doubtless the iron and iron tools which were in use at the armourer's forge: incitements to theft which none of the Indians could resist.

On Sunday the 14th, in the morning divine service was performed at the fort. We hoped to have had the presence of some of the Indians, but before the time fixed on for beginning the service, most of them were gone home. Tubourai Tamaide and his wife were present, but though they behaved with much decency, they made no enquiries with respect to the ceremonies, and their brethren were as little inquisitive upon their return. The day thus begun with acts of devotion, was concluded with those of lewdness exhibited among the natives by way of entertainment. Among the rest a young fellow lay publickly with a girl about twelve years of age, in the presence of many of our people, and a great number of the Indians, without the least sense of impropriety or indecency. Oberea, and some women of the first rank in the country were spectators, who even gave instructions to the girl how to perform her part, which, young as she was, seemed unnecessary.

On Monday the 15th, Tubourai Tamaide was detected in having committed a theft. Mr. Banks had a good opinion of this chief, but, when his honesty was put to the test, a basket of nails, left in the corner of the tent proved irresistible. He confessed the fact of having stolen four nails, but when restitution was demanded, Tamaide said the nails were at Eparre. High words passed on the occasion, and, in the end, the Indian produced one of the nails, and was to be forgiven on restoring the rest; but his virtue was not equal to the task, and he withdrew himself, as usual, when he had committed any offence. At this time our long-boat was so much eaten with worms, that it was found necessary to give her a new bottom. On examining the

the pinnace, thinking she might be in the same state, we had the satisfaction to perceive, that not a worm had touched her. This difference in the condition of the two boats we attributed to the different ingredients with which their bottoms were paid; the long-boat had been paid with varnish of pine, and the pinnace painted with white lead and oil; which last coating we think to be the most eligible for the bottoms of all boats intended for this part of the world.

On the 24th, Mr. Hicks was sent to Tootahah, who had removed from Eparre to a place called Tettahah. The chief having sent several times to request a visit from the captain, promising, at the same time, that he would acknowledge the favour by a present of some hogs, the business of Mr. Hicks was, to obtain, if possible, the hogs, upon easier terms than the required visit. He was received in a friendly manner by Tootahah, who, upon his arrival, produced one hog only, but promised three more that were at a distance the next morning. Mr. Hicks waited patiently till the appointed time; but when the morning came, he was obliged to depart with the single hog that had been presented to him.

On the 25th, Mr. Banks seeing Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio at the tent for the first time since the former had been detected in stealing the nails, he endeavoured to persuade him to restore them, but in vain. As our gentlemen treated him with a reserve and coolness which he could not but perceive, his stay was short, and he departed in a very abrupt manner; nor could our surgeon the next morning persuade to effect a reconciliation by bringing down the nails.

On the 27th, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook, and some others, set out in the pinnace to visit Tootahah, who had again removed to a place called Atahourou, six miles from his last abode; and not being able to go half way thither in a boat, it was almost evening before we arrived. We found the chief, as usual, sitting under a tree with a great crowd about him,

him. Having made our presents in due form, consisting of a yellow stuff petticoat, and other trifling articles, we were invited to supper, and to pass the night there. Our party consisted of six only; but the place was crowded with a greater number than the houses and canoes could contain. Among other guests were Oberea with her train of attendants. Mr. Banks having accepted of a lodging in Oberea's canoe, left his companions in order to retire to rest. Oberea had the charge of his cloaths; but notwithstanding her care, they were stolen, as were also his pistols, his powder horn, and several other things out of his waistcoat pockets. An alarm was given to Tootahah, in the next canoe, who went with Oberea in search of the thief, leaving Mr. Banks with only his breeches and waistcoat on, and his musket uncharged. They soon returned, but without success. Mr. Banks thought proper to put up with the loss at present, and retired a second time to rest; just as he had composed himself to sleep, he was roused by some music, and observed lights at a little distance from the shore. He then rose to go and find his companions. As soon as he approached the lights, he found the hut where Captain Cook and three others of the gentlemen lay, when he began to relate his misadventure to them; they told him in return, that they had lost their stockings and jackets. In effect Dr. Solander, who joined them the next morning, was the only one that escaped being robbed, and he had slept at a house that was a mile distant. This accident, however, did not prevent Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, and the rest that were at the hut, from attending to the music, which was a sort of concert called Heiva, and consisted of drums, flutes, and several voices. They retired again to their repose, after this entertainment was over.

Their cloaths, and the other things which had been stolen, were never heard of afterwards, but Mr. Banks got some cloaths from Oberea, in which he made a whimsical appearance,

On

On the 28th, we set out for the boat, having obtained only one hog, which had been intended for our supper the preceding night; so that all things considered, we had little reason to be satisfied with our excursion. On our return to the boat, we had a specimen of the agility of the Indian swimmers, some of whom, merely for diversion, swam in a surf where no European boat could have lived, and where our best swimmers must have perished, had they accidentally fallen in with it.

At this time the preparations were made for viewing the transit of Venus, and two parties were sent out to make observations from different spots, that in case of failing in one place they might succeed in another. They employed themselves for some time in preparing their instruments, and instructing those gentlemen who were to go out, in the use of them; and on Thursday the first of June, they sent the long-boat with Mr. Gore, Mr. Monkhouse (the two observers) and Mr. Sporing, the latter of whom was a friend of Mr. Banks, with proper instruments to Emayo. Others were sent to find out a spot that might answer the purpose, at a convenient distance from their principal station.

The party that went towards Emayo, after rowing the greater part of the night, having hailed a canoe, were informed of a place by the Indians on board, which was judged proper for their observatory, where they accordingly fixed their tents. It was a rock that rose out of the water about 140 yards from the shore.

Saturday the 3d (the day of the transit) Mr. Banks, as soon as it was light, left them, in order to go and get fresh provisions on the island. This gentleman had the satisfaction to see the sun-rise without a cloud. The king, whose name was Tarrao, came to pay him a visit, as he was trading with the natives, and brought with him Nuna his sister. As it was customary for the people in these parts to be seated at their conferences,

ences,

ences, Mr. Banks spread his turban of Indian cloth, which he wore as a hat, upon the ground, on which they all set down. Then a hog and a dog, some coconuts, and bread-fruit were brought, being the king's present, and Mr. Banks sent for an adze, a shirt, and some beads, which were presented to his majesty, who received them with apparent satisfaction. Tubourai Tamaide, and Tomio, who had gone with Mr. Banks, came from the observatory, when Tomio, who was said to be related to Tarrao, gave him a long nail, and left a shirt as a present for Nuna. Afterwards the king, his sister, and three beautiful young women their attendants, returned with Mr. Banks to the observatory, where he shewed them the transit of Venus, when that planet was upon the sun, and acquainted them, that to view it in that situation was the cause of his undertaking a voyage to those remoter parts. According to this gentleman's account, the produce of this island is nearly the same with that of Otaheite; the people also resembled those of that island: he had seen many of them upon it who were acquainted with the nature of trading articles. The parties that were sent out to make their observations on the transit, had good success in the undertaking: though they differed rather more than might have been expected in their account of the contact.

Mr. Green's account was as follows:

	Hours.	Min.	Sec.	
The first external contact	9	25	4	} Morning
The first internal contact, or total emersion	9	44	4	
The second internal contact, or beginning of the emersion	3	14	8	} Afternoon
The second external contact, or total emersion	3	32	10	

Latitude

an cloth,
on which
ne cocoa-
he king's
hirt, and
isty, who
l'ubourai
r. Banks,
was said
and left
he king,
their at-
rvatory,
hen that
, that to
under-
rding to
is island
people
en many
e nature
t out to
ood suc-
l rather
account

Sec.
4 } Morn.
4 } Afternoon.
8 }
0 }
atitude



— Page scalp. —

A MAN of OTAHEITE, in A MOURNING DRESS

Latitude of the observatory 17 deg. 29 min. 15 sec. south;—longitude, 149 deg. 32 min. 30 sec. west from Greenwich.

While the gentlemen and officers were busied in viewing the transit, some of the ship's company having broke into the store-room, took the liberty of stealing a quantity of spike-nails. After a strict search the thief was found out; he had, however, but few of the nails in his possession; but he was ordered to receive two dozen of lashes, by way of example.

On the 4th, the two parties sent out to observe the transit were absent; on which account we deferred keeping his majesty's birth-day to the next day, the 5th, when we celebrated the same; several of the Indian chiefs partook of our entertainment, and in turn drank his majesty's health by the name of Kihiaro, the nearest imitation they could produce of king George. About this time an old female of some distinction dying, gave the English an opportunity of observing the ceremonies used by these islanders in disposing of the dead bodies of their people; which, as we have observed, they do not directly bury. The reader has already seen the description of the bier, the placing the bread-fruit, &c. which, according to Tubourai Tamaide's account, was a kind of offering to their gods. In the front of the square space, a sort of stile was placed where the relations of the deceased stood to give token of their grief. There were under the awning some pieces of cloth, whereon were the tears and blood of the mourners, who used to wound themselves with a shark's tooth upon these occasions. Four temporary houses were erected at a small distance, in one of which remained some of the relations of the deceased; the chief mourner resided in another; and was dressed in a particular manner, in order to perform a certain ceremony. When the corpse is rotten, the bones are buried near the spot, and these places were found to answer the purposes of religious worship, though Captain Wallis could not perceive the traces of any such

worship among them. Concerning the ceremony we are about to speak of, the following is the account we have of it, which may not be unentertaining to the curious reader. It was performed on the 10th, and Mr. Banks was so desirous of being present, that he agreed to take a part in it, when he was informed that he could not be a spectator on any other condition. He went accordingly in the evening, to the place where the body was deposited, where he was met by the relations of the deceased, and was afterwards joined by several other persons. Tubourai Tamaide was the principal mourner, whose dress was whimsical, though not altogether ungraceful. Mr. Banks was obliged to quit his European dress, and had no other covering than a small piece of cloth that was tied round his middle; his body was blacked over with charcoal and water, as were the bodies of several others, and among them some females, who were no more covered than himself. The procession then began, and the chief mourner uttered some words which were judged to be a prayer, when he approached the body, and he repeated these words as he came up to his own house. They afterwards went on, by permission, towards the fort. It is usual for the rest of the Indians to shun these processions as much as possible; they accordingly ran into the woods in great haste, as soon as this came in view. From the fort the mourners proceeded along the shore, crossed the river, then entered the woods, passing several houses, which became immediately uninhabited, and during the rest of the procession, which continued for half an hour, not an Indian was visible. Mr. Banks filled an office that they called Niniveh, and there were two others in the same character. When none of the other natives were to be seen, they approached the chief mourner, saying Imatata; then those who had assisted at the ceremony bathed in the river, and resumed their former dress. Such was this uncommon ceremony, in which Mr. Banks performed a principal part, and received applause from Tubourai Tamaide, the chief mourner. What can have introduced among these Indians

dians so strange a custom as that of exposing their dead above ground, till the flesh is consumed by putrefaction, and then burying the bones, it is perhaps impossible to guess; nor is it less difficult to determine, why the repositories of their dead should be also places of worship.

On the 12th, the Indians having lost some of their bows and arrows, and strings of plaited hair, a complaint was made to the captain. The affair was enquired into, and the fact being well attested, the offenders received each two dozen of lashes. The same day Tubourai Tamaide brought his bow and arrows, in order to decide a challenge of shooting between him and Mr. Gore; but it appeared they had mistaken each other, Mr. Gore intending to discharge his arrow at a mark, while the Indian meant only to try who could shoot farthest. The challenge was dropped in consequence of the mistake being discovered; but Tubourai Tamaide, in order to display his skill, kneeling down, shot an arrow, unfeathered (as they all are) near the sixth part of a mile, dropping the bow the instant the arrow was discharged. Mr. Binks having this morning met several of the natives, and being informed, that a musical entertainment was expected in the evening, he, and the rest of the English gentlemen resolved to be present at the same. They went accordingly, and heard a performance on drums and flutes by a kind of itinerant musicians. The drummers sung to the music, and the English were much surprized when they found that they were the subject of their lays. The songs they therefore concluded to be extemporary effusions, the rewards whereof were such necessaries as they required.

On the 14th, in the night, an iron coal rake for the oven was stole; and many other things having at different times been conveyed away, Capt. Cook judged it of some consequence, to put an end, if possible, to such practices, by making it their common interest to prevent it. He had already given strict orders, that the centinels should not fire upon the Indians, even if

they were detected in the fact; but many repeated depredations determined him to make reprizals. About twenty-seven of their double canoes with sails were just arrived, containing cargoes of fish; these the captain seized, and then gave notice, that unless the rake, and all the other things that had been stolen, were returned, the vessels should be burnt. The menace produced no other effect than the restitution of the rake, all the other things remaining in their possession. The captain, however, thought fit to give up the cargoes, as the innocent natives were in great distress for want of them, and in order to prevent the confusion arising from disputes concerning the property of the different lots of goods which they had on board. About this time another incident had nearly, notwithstanding all our caution, embroiled us with the Indians. The captain having sent a boat on shore to get ballast, the officer not meeting immediately with what he wanted, began to pull down one of the sepulchral mansions of the dead; which sacrilegious act of violence was immediately opposed by the enraged islanders. Intelligence of this dispute being received by Mr. Banks, he went to the place, and a reconciliation was soon effected, which put an end to the dispute, by sending the boat's crew to the river's side, where a sufficient quantity of stones were to be had without a possibility of giving offence. This was the only instance in which they offered to oppose us; and (except the affair of the fort, which has been related) the only insult offered to an individual, was, when Mr. Monkhouse, the surgeon, took a flower from a tree which grew in one of their sepulchral inclosures. Upon this occasion, an Indian came suddenly behind him and struck him; Mr. Monkhouse laid hold of the assailant, but two of his countrymen rescued him, and then they all ran off as fast as they could.

On the 19th in the evening, while the canoes were still detained, Oberea and several of her attendants paid us a visit. She came from Tootahah's palace, in a double canoe, and brought with her a hog, bread-fruit,

fruit, and other presents, among which was a dog; but not a single article of the things that had been stolen: these she said had been taken away by her favourite Obadee, whom she had beaten and dismissed. She seemed however conscious that her story did not deserve credit, and appeared at first much terrified; though she surmounted her fears with great fortitude, and was desirous of sleeping with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tent; but this being refused, she was obliged to pass the night in her canoe. A whole tribe of Indians would have slept in the ball tent, but were not permitted. The next morning Oberea returned, putting herself wholly in our power, when we accepted of her presents, which she doubtless thought, and justly too, the most effectual means to bring about a reconciliation. Two of her attendants were very assiduous in getting themselves husbands, in which they succeeded, by means of the surgeon and one of the lieutenants: they seemed very agreeable till bed-time, and determined to lie in Mr. Banks's tent, which they accordingly did, till the surgeon having some words with one of them Mr. Banks thrust her out, and she was followed by the rest, except Otea-Tea, who cried some time, and then he turned her out also. This had like to have become a serious affair, a duel being talked of between Mr. Banks and Mr. Monkhouse, but it was happily avoided. We had been informed that in this island dogs were esteemed more delicate food than pork, as those bred by the natives to be eaten, fed entirely upon vegetables. The experiment was tried. Tupia undertook to kill and dress the dog, which he did, by making a hole in the ground, and baking it. We all agreed it was a very good dish.

On the 21st we were visited by many of the natives, who brought with them various presents. Among the rest was a chief, named Oamo, whom we had not yet seen. He had a boy and a young woman with him. The former was carried on a man's back, which we considered as a piece of state, for he was well able to walk. Oberea and some of the Indians went from
the

the fort to meet them, being bareheaded, and uncovered as low as the waist; circumstances we had noticed before, and judged them marks of respect, which was usually shewn to persons of high rank. When Oamo entered the tent, the young woman, though seemingly very curious, could not be prevailed upon to accompany him. The youth was introduced by Dr. Solander, but as soon as the Indians within saw him, they took care to have him very soon sent out. Our curiosity being raised by these circumstances, we made enquiry concerning the strangers, and were informed, that Oamo was the husband of Oberea, but that by mutual consent they had been for a considerable time separated, and the boy and girl were their children. The former was called Terridiri: he was heir apparent to the sovereignty of the islands, and when he had attained the proper age, was to marry his sister. The present sovereign Outou, was a minor, and the son of a prince, called Whappai. Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were all brothers; Whappai was the eldest, and Oamo the second; wherefore Whappai having no child but Outou, Terridiri was heir to the sovereignty. To us it appeared singular, that a boy should reign during the life of his father; but in the island of Otaheite, a boy succeeds to his father's authority and title as soon as he is born; but a regent being necessary, that office, though elective, generally falls upon the father, who holds the reins of government till the child is of age. The reason that the election had fallen upon Tootahah was on account of his warlike exploits among his brethren. Oamo was very inquisitive, asking a number of questions concerning the English, by which he appeared to be a man of understanding and penetration. At this time, a woman named Teetee, who came from the west of the island, presented to the captain an elegant garment. The ground was a bright yellow, it was bordered with red, and there were several crosses in the middle of it, which they had probably learned from the French.

On the 23d in the morning, one of our hands being

ing missing, we enquired for him among the natives, and were told he was at Eparre, Tootahah's residence in the wood, and one of the Indians offered to fetch him back, which he did that evening. On his return he informed us, that he had been taken from the fort, and carried to the top of the bay by three men, who forced him into a canoe, after having stripped him, and conducted him to Eparre, where he received some cloaths from Tootahah, who endeavoured to prevail on him to continue there. We had reason to conclude this account true, for the natives were no sooner acquainted with his return, than they left the fort with precipitation.

On June the 26th, early in the morning, Capt. Cook setting out in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, sailed to the eastward with a design of circum-navigating the island. They went on shore in the forenoon, in a district in the government of Ahio, a young chief, who at the tents had frequently been their visitant. And here also they saw several other natives whom they knew. Afterwards they proceeded to the harbour where M. Bougainville's vessel lay, when he came to Otaheite, and were shewn the watering place, and the spot where he pitched his tent.

Coming to a large bay, when the English gentlemen mentioned their design of going to the other side, their Indian guide, whose name was Titubaola, said he would not accompany them, and also endeavoured to dissuade the captain and his people from going; observing, "That country was inhabited by people who were not subject to Tootahah, and who would destroy them all." Notwithstanding, they resolved to put their design in execution, loading their pieces with ball; and at last Titubaola ventured to go with them. Having rowed till it was dark, they reached a narrow isthmus which severed the island in two parts, and these formed distinct governments. However, as they had not yet got into the hostile part of the country, it was thought proper to go on shore to spend the night where Ooratoa, the lady who had paid her compliments in so extraordinary a manner at the fort, provided them with a sup-

per, and they proceeded for the other government in the morning. They afterwards landed in the district of a chief called Maraitata, and his father was called Pahairede. The former of these names signifies the *burying place of men*, and the other *the stealer of boats*. These people gave the captain a very good reception, sold them a hog for a hatchet, and furnished them with provisions. A crowd of the natives came round the English gentlemen, amongst whom however they met only two with whom they were acquainted; but they saw several European commodities, yet they perceived none that came out of the Endeavour. Here they saw two twelve pound shot, one of which had the king's broad arrow upon it, yet the natives said they had them from M. Bougainville. They afterwards advanced till they reached that district which was under the government of Waheatua, who had a son: it was not known in whose hands the sovereign power was deposited. There they found a spacious plain with a river which they were obliged to pass over in a canoe, though the Indians that followed them swam over without any difficulty. They proceeded on their journey for a considerable way along the shore, till at last they were met by the chief, who had with him an agreeable woman, of about twenty-two years of age, who was called Toudidde. Her name was not unknown to the English, who had often heard of it; and she was supposed to bear the same rank here as Oberea bore in the other part of the island. The parts through which they now passed, appeared to be better cultivated than any of the rest, and the burial places were more in number. They were neat, and ornamented with carvings; and in one a cock was seen, which was painted with the various colours of the bird. Though the country was apparently fertile, very little bread-fruit was to be found here, a nut called Ahee, furnishing the principal subsistence of the inhabitants.

Being fatigued with their journey, they went on board their boat, and landed in the evening on an island which was called Otooareite, to seek for refreshment. Mr.

Banks

Banks going into the woods for this purpose, when it was dark could discover only one house, wherein he found some of the nuts before mentioned, and a little bread-fruit. There was a good harbour in the southern part of this island, and the surrounding country appeared to be extremely fruitful. Landing at about three miles distance they found some of the natives whom they well knew, yet it was not without difficulty that they obtained a few cocoa-nuts before they departed. When they came a little farther to the eastward, they landed again, and here they were met by Mathiabo, the chief, with whom they were not at all acquainted. He supplied them with bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, and they purchased a hog of him for a glass bottle, which he chose in preference to all the other articles presented before him. A turkey-cock and a goose were seen here, which were much admired by the natives, and were supposed to have been left there by Capt. Wallis's people. They observed in a house near the same place several human jaw-bones, which seemed fresh, and had not lost any of the teeth, and were fastened to a board, of a semicircular figure; but they could not get any information of the cause of this extraordinary appearance.

When they left the place, the chief piloted them over the shoals. In the evening they opened the bay on the north-west side of the island, which answered to that on the south-east in such a manner as to intersect it at the isthmus. Several canoes came off here; and some beautiful women giving tokens that they should be glad to see them on shore, they readily accepted the invitation.—They met with a very friendly reception from the chief whose name was Wiverou, who gave directions to some of his people to assist them in dressing their provisions, which were now very plentiful, and they supped at Wiverou's house in company with Mathiabo. Part of the house was allotted for them to sleep in, and soon after supper they retired to rest. Mathiabo having borrowed a cloak of Mr. Banks, under the notion of using it as a coverlet when he lay

down, made off with it without being perceived either by that gentleman or his companions. However, news of the robbery being presently brought them by one of the natives, they set out in pursuit of Mathiabo, but had proceeded only a very little way before they were met by a person bringing back the cloak which this chief had given up rather through fear than from any principle of honesty. On their return they found the house entirely deserted; and, about four in the morning, the centinel gave the alarm that the boat was missing. Captain Cook and Mr. Banks were greatly astonished at this account, and ran to the water-side; but though it was a clear star-light morning, no boat was to be seen. Their situation was now extremely disagreeable. The party consisted of no more than four, having with them only one musquet and two pocket pistols, without a spare ball or a charge of powder. After having remained some time in a state of anxiety, arising from these circumstances, of which they feared the Indians might take advantage, the boat which had been driven away by the tide, returned; and Mr. Banks and his companions had no sooner breakfasted than they departed. This place is situated on the north side of Tiarrabou, the south east peninsula of the island, about five miles east from the isthmus, with a harbour equal to any in those parts. It was fertile and populous, and the inhabitants every where behaved with great civility.

The last district in Tiarrabou, in which they landed, was governed by a chief named Omoe. He was then building a house, and was very earnest to purchase a hatchet, but the gentlemen had not one left. He would not trade for nails, and they embarked, the chief, however, following them in his canoe with his wife. They were afterwards taken on board, but when they had sailed about a league, desired to be put on shore. Their request was complied with, when the captain met with some of Omoe's people, who brought with them a very large hog. The chief agreed to exchange the hog for an axe and a nail, and to bring the
beast

beast to the fort. As the hog was a very fine one, Mr. Banks accepted the offer. They saw at this place one of the Indian Eatuas, a sort of image, made of wicker-work, which resembled a man in figure; it was near seven feet in height, and was covered with black and white feathers; on the head were four protuberances, called by the natives Tata etc, that is, little men. Having taken their leave of Omoe, the gentlemen set out on their return. They went on shore again, after they had rowed a few miles, but saw nothing, except a sepulchral building, which was ornamented in an extraordinary manner. The pavement, on which was erected a pyramid, was very neat; at a small distance there was a stone image, very uncouthly carved, but which the natives seemed to hold in high estimation. They passed through the harbour, which was the only one fit for shipping, on the south of Opoureonou, situate about five miles to the westward of the isthmus, between two small islands, not far from the shore, and within a mile of each other. They were now near the district called Paparra, which was that where Oamo and Oberea governed, and where the travellers intended to spend the night. But when Mr. Banks and his company landed, about an hour before it was dark, it appeared they were both set out to pay them a visit at the fort. However, they slept at Oberea's house, which was neat, though not large, and of which there was no inhabitant but her father, who shewed them much civility.

They took this opportunity of walking out upon a point upon which they had observed at a distance some trees called Etoa, which usually grow upon the burial places of these islanders. They call those burying grounds Morai. And here Mr. Banks saw a vast building, which he found to be the Morai of Oamo and Oberea, which was the most considerable piece of architecture in the island. It consisted of an enormous pile of stone work, raised in the form of a pyramid, with a slight of steps on each side. It was near 270 feet long, about one third as wide, and between 40 and

50 feet high. The foundation consisted of rock stones; the steps were of coral, and the upper part was of round pebbles, all of the same shape and size. The rock and coral-stones were squared with the utmost neatness and regularity, and the whole building appeared as compact and firm as if it had been erected by the best workmen in Europe. What rendered this last circumstance the more extraordinary was the consideration that when this pile was raised, the Indians must have been totally destitute of iron tools, either to shape their stones or for any other necessary purpose, nor had they mortar to cement them when made fit for use; so that a structure of such height and magnitude must have been a work of infinite labour and fatigue. In the centre of the summit was the representation of a bird carved in wood; close to this was the figure of a fish in-stone. The pyramid constituted part of one side of a court or square, the sides of which were nearly equal; and the whole was walled in, and paved with flat stones, notwithstanding which pavement, several plants, and trees which the natives call Etoa, grew within the inclosure. At a small distance to the westward of this edifice was another paved square that contained several small stages, called Ewattas by the natives; which appeared to be altars, whereon they placed the offerings to their gods. Mr. Banks afterwards observed whole hogs placed upon these stages or altars.

On Friday the 30th, they arrived at Otahorou, where they found their old acquaintance Tootahah, who received them with great civility, and provided them a good supper, and convenient lodging; and though they had been so shamefully plundered the last time they slept with this chief, they spent the night in the greatest security, none of their cloaths nor any other article being missing the next morning. They returned to the fort at Port Royal Harbour on the first of July, having discovered the island, including both peninsulas, to be about 100 miles in circumference.

After their return from this tour, they were very much in want of bread-fruit, none of which they had been

been able to provide themselves with, as they had seen but little in the course of their journey; but their Indian friends coming round them, soon supplied their want of provisions.

On the 3d, Mr. Banks made an excursion, in order to trace the river up the valley to its source, and to remark how far the country was inhabited along the banks of it. He took some Indian guides with him, and after having seen houses for about six miles, they came to one which was said to be the last that could be met with. The master presented them with coconuts and other fruits, and they proceeded on their walk, after a short stay. They often passed through vaults formed by rocky fragments in the course of their journey, in which, as they were told, benighted travellers sometimes took shelter. Pursuing the course of the river about six miles farther, they found it banked on both sides by rocks almost 100 feet in height, and nearly perpendicular; a way, however, might be traced up these precipices, along which their Indian guides would have conducted them, but they declined the offer, as there did not appear to be any thing at the summit which could repay them for the toil and dangers of ascending it. Mr. Banks sought in vain for minerals among the rocks, which were naked almost on all sides, but no mineral substances were found. The stones every where exhibited signs of having been burnt, which was the case of all the stones that were found while they staid at Otaheite, and both there and in the neighbouring islands the traces of fire were evident in the clay upon the hills. On the 4th, a great quantity of the seeds of water-melons, oranges, limes, and other plants, brought from Rio de Janeiro were planted on each side of the fort, by Mr. Banks, who also plentifully supplied the Indians with them, and planted many of them in the woods. Some melons, the seeds of which had been sown on the first arrival of the English at the island, grew up and flourished before they left it.

By this time they began to think of making preparations

rations to depart; but Oamo, Oberea, and their son and daughter visited them before they were ready to sail. As to the young woman (whose name was Toimata) she was curious to see the fort, but Oamo would not permit her to enter. The son of Waheatua, chief of the south-east peninsula, was also here at the same time; and they were favoured with the company of the Indian who had been so dextrous as to steal the quadrant, as above related. The carpenters being ordered to take down the gates and palisadoes of the fort, to be converted into fire-wood for the Endeavour, one of the natives stole the staple and hook of the gate; he was pursued in vain, but the property was afterwards recovered, and returned to the owners by Tubourai Tamai.

Before their departure, two circumstances happened which gave Capt. Cook some uneasiness. The first was, that two foreign sailors having been abroad, one of them was robbed of his knife, which as he was endeavouring to recover, he was dangerously hurt with a stone by the natives, and his companion also received a slight wound in the head. The offenders escaped, and the captain was not anxious to have them taken, as he did not want to have any disputes with the Indians.

Between the 8th and 9th, two young marines one night withdrew themselves from the fort, and in the morning were not to be met with. Notice having been given the next day that the ship would sail that or the ensuing day; as they did not return, Capt. Cook began to be apprehensive that they designed to remain on shore; but as he was apprised in such a case no effectual means could be taken to recover them without running a risque of destroying the harmony subsisting between the English and the natives, he resolved to wait a day, in hopes of their returning of their own accord. But as they were still missing on the tenth in the morning, an enquiry was made after them, when the Indians declared, that they did not propose to return, having taken refuge among the mountains, where it was impossible

possible for them to be discovered; and added, that each of them had taken a wife. In consequence of this, it was intimated to several of the chiefs that were in the fort with the women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be suffered to quit it till the deserters were produced. They did not shew any signs of fear or discontent, but assured the captain that the marines should be sent back. In the mean time Mr. Hicks was dispatched in the pinnace to bring Tootahah on board the ship, and he executed his commission without giving any alarm. Night coming on, Capt. Cook thought it not prudent to let the people, whom he had detained as hostages, remain at the fort; he therefore gave orders to remove them on board, which greatly alarmed them all, especially the females, who testified the most gloomy apprehensions by floods of tears. Capt. Cook escorted Oberea and others to the ship; but Mr. Banks remained on shore with some Indians, whom he thought it of less importance to detain. In the evening one of the marines was brought back by some of the natives, who reported, that the other and two of our men who went to recover them, would be detained while Tootahah was confined. Upon this Mr. Hicks was immediately sent off in the long boat, with a strong body of men to rescue the prisoners; at the same time the captain told Tootahah, that it was incumbent on him to assist them with some of his people, and to give orders in his name, that the men should be set at liberty; for that he would be expected to answer for the event. Tootahah immediately complied, and this party released the men without any opposition.

On the 11th, about seven in the morning, they returned, but without the arms that had been taken from them when they were made prisoners; these, however, being restored soon after, the chiefs on board were allowed to return, and those who had been detained on shore were also set at liberty. On examining the deserters it appeared, that the Indians had told the truth,

they

they having chosen two girls, with whom they would have remained in the island. At this time the power of Oberea was not so great as it was when the Dolphin first discovered the island. Tupia, whose name has been often mentioned in this voyage, had been her prime minister. He was also the chief priest, consequently, well acquainted with the religion of the country. He had a knowledge of navigation, and was thoroughly acquainted with the number, situation, and inhabitants of the adjacent islands. This chief had often expressed a desire to go with us when we continued our voyage.

On the 12th in the morning he came on board, with a boy about twelve years of age, his servant, named Taiyota, and requested the gentlemen on board, to let him go with him. As we thought he might be useful to us in many particulars, we unanimously agreed to comply with his request. Tupia then went on shore for the last time to bid farewell to his friends, to whom he gave several baubles as parting tokens of remembrance.

Mr. Banks, after dinner, being willing to obtain a drawing of the Morai, which Tootahah had in his possession at Eparre, Capt. Cook accompanied him thither in the pinnace, together with Dr. Solander. They immediately upon landing repaired to Tootahah's house, where they were met by Oberea and several others. A general good understanding prevailed. Tupia came back with them, and they promised to visit the gentlemen early the next day, as they were told the ship would then sail.

On the 13th these friendly people came very early on board, and the ship was surrounded with a vast number of canoes, filled with Indians of the lower sort. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor; and notwithstanding all the little misunderstandings between the English and the natives, the latter, who possessed a great fund of good nature and much sensibility, took their leave, weeping in an affectionate manner. As to Tupia he supported himself through
this

ey would
ne power
Dolphin
ame has
been her
t, conse-
he coun-
was tho-
ion, and
nief had
ve conti-

rd, with
named
d, to let
be useful
reed to
on shor-
whom
remem-

obtain a
in his
ed him
lander.
tahah's
several
evailed.
to visit
old the

y early
a vast
er fort.
r; and
gs be-
, who
ch sen-
tionate
rough
this



*A FLY FLAP of the Island OHITEROA, with Two
Handles for the same Instrument, made in Otaheite.*

Patronmaster Row.



with Two
taheite .

Eastgate 500

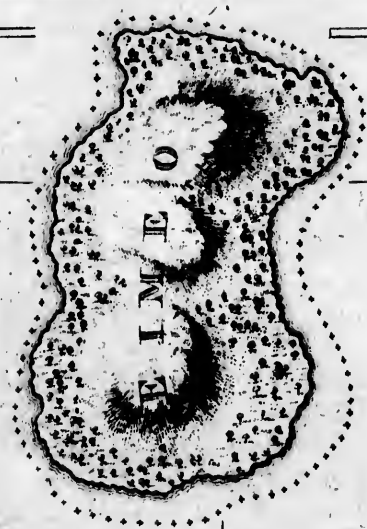
h
o
c
h
h

be
ur

as
in
he
rt
A

us-
any
ap-
ages
also
able
in-
c at
tain
uni-
peap
om-
y by
uded
ame
ocpu-
ence

reef



140.10

Matavai B

Motu-ahou-na

O P O V

O T A

Murainote (an)

1730

1740

1750

CHART
 OF THE ISLAND
 O TA HE I T E
 BY
 CAPT^N COOK
 1769

West Longitude from Greenwich

140.50

140.40

London, Published by A. W. Lloyd, at the R

149.30

149.20

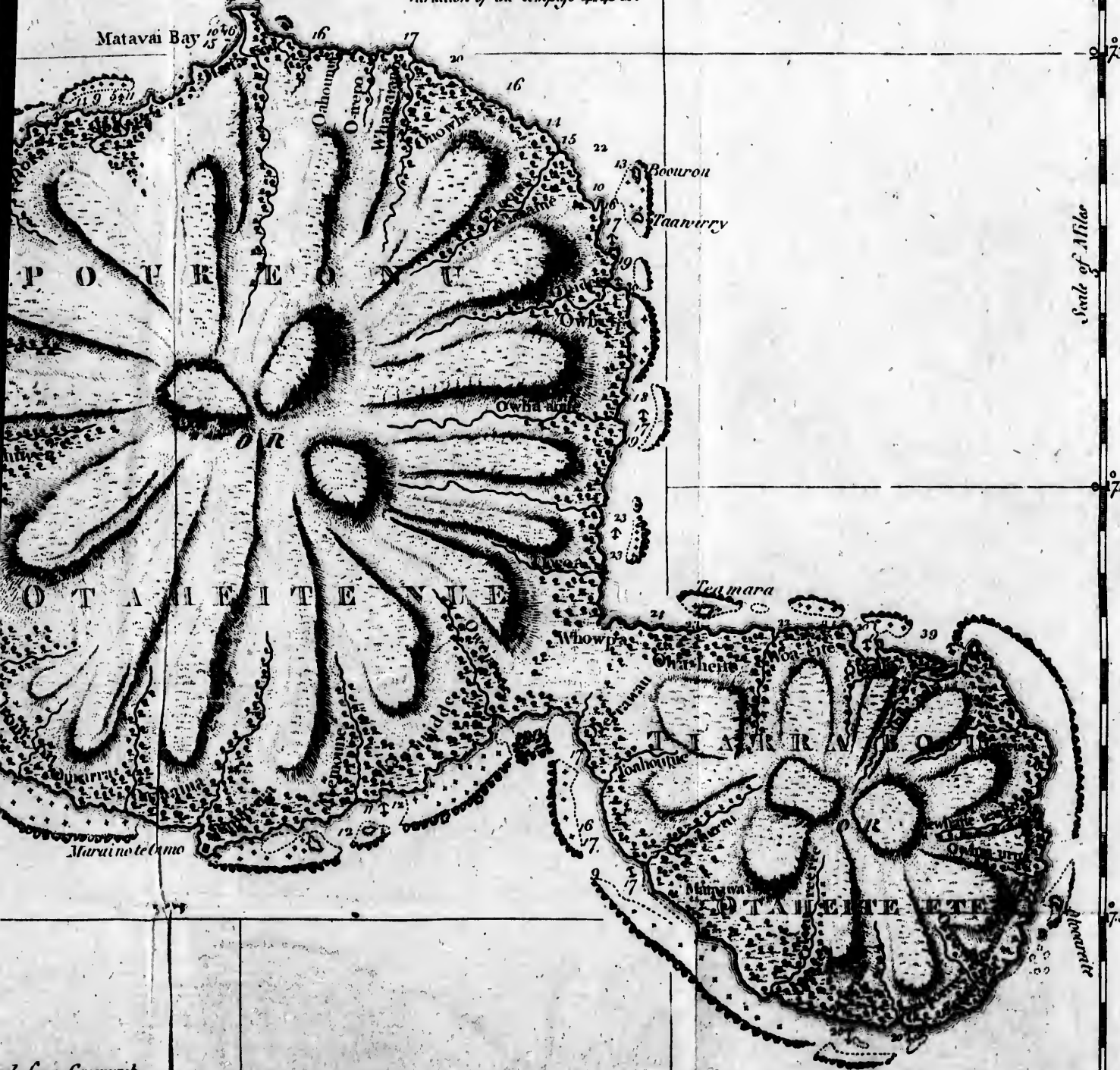
149.10

POINT VENUS

Variation of the Compass 4. 46 E.

Matavai Bay 10 40

1730



Scale of Miles

1740

1750

Made from Greenwich

149.30

149.20

149.10

Alou' Hogg at the Kings Arms No 16. Paternoster Row.



A FLY
Handles

h
n
o
-
so
ol
ne
C
be
th
ni
m
cu
ve
O
P
be
by
T
78
49
X

this scene with a becoming fortitude. Tears flowed from his eyes, it is true, but the effort that he made to conceal them did him an additional honour. He went with Mr. Banks to the mast head, and waving his hand took a last farewell of his country: Thus we departed from Otaheite, after a stay of just three months.

C H A P. V.*

An historical and descriptive Account of Otaheite—Of the Island and its Productions—Of the Inhabitants—their Dress—Dwellings—Manner of living—Diversions—Manufactures—Arts—Sciences—Language—Diseases—Religious Ceremonies—and Government.

PORT Royal bay, in the island of Otaheite, as settled by captain Wallis, we found to be within half a degree of its real situation; and point Venus, the northern extremity of this island, and the eastern part of the bay, lies in 149 deg. 30 min. longitude. A

* We here beg leave to remark to our very NUMEROUS SUBSCRIBERS, that this much admired Work is not only far preferable to any other publication of the kind whatever, on account of its Elegance, Cheapness, Authenticity, and its including a full account of all Capt. Cook's Voyages Complete, written in an admirably pleasing and elegant style, but also because every single Sheet of our Letter-press comprehends at least double the quantity of Matter given in other Works of the kind, which, by spinning out the subject to an unnecessary length, is offered to the public at more than double the Price. Publications of this kind, which contain only a single Voyage of the celebrated CAPT. COOK, we find are also universally objected to by the public: so that by the publication of this cheap OCTAVO EDITION of ALL CAPT. COOK'S VOYAGES, &c. COMPLETE, the public at large will be agreeably accommodated, not only by being possessed at an easy Rate of such a vast Quantity of Matter included by our close Method of Printing, but likewise by acquiring at the same Time all the SPLENDID COPPER-PLATES, carefully, elegantly and accurately taken from the ORIGINALS, in Numbers, price only Sixpence each.

reef of coral rocks surround the island, forming several excellent bays, among which, and equal to the best of them, is Port Royal. This bay, called by the natives Matavai, may easily be discovered by a remarkable high mountain in the center of the island, bearing due south from Point Venus. To sail into it, either keep the west point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, close on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a small shoal of coral rocks, whereon there is but two fathom and a half of water. The most proper ground for anchoring is on the eastern side of the bay. The shore is a fine sandy beach, behind which runs a river of fresh water, very convenient for a fleet of ships. The only wood for firing upon the whole island is that of fruit trees, which must be purchased of the natives, or it is impossible to live on friendly terms with them. The face of the country is very uneven. It rises in ridges that run up into the middle of the island, where they form mountains which may be seen at the distance of sixty miles. Between these ridges and the sea is a border of low land of different breadths in different parts, but not exceeding any where a mile and a half. The soil being watered by a number of excellent rivulets, is extremely fertile, and covered with various kinds of fruit trees, which form almost one continued wood. Even the tops of the ridges are not without their produce in some parts. The only parts of the island that are inhabited, are the low lands, lying between the foot of the ridges and the sea. The houses do not form villages, but are ranged along the whole border, at about fifty yards distant from each other. Before them are little groups of the plantain trees, which furnish them with cloth. According to Tupia's account, this island could furnish above six thousand fighting men. The produce is bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, bananas, sweet potatoes, yams, jumbu, a delicious fruit, sugar-cane, the paper mulberry, several sorts of figs, with many other plants and trees, all which the earth produces spontaneously,

scarcely, or with little culture. But here are no European fruit, garden-stuff, pulse, nor grain of any kind. The tame animals are hogs, dogs, and poultry; the wild, ducks, pigeons, parroquets, and a few other birds. The only quadrupeds are rats, and not a serpent is to be found. In the sea is a great variety of excellent fish, which constitutes their chief luxury, and to catch it their chief employment.

The people in general are of a larger make than the Europeans. The males are mostly tall, robust, and finely shaped; the women of the higher class above the size of our English ladies, but those of inferior rank are below our standard, and some of them very short. Their natural complexion is a fine clear olive, or what we call a brunette, their skin delicately smooth, and agreeably soft. Their faces in general are handsome, and their eyes full of sensibility. Their teeth are remarkably white and regular, their hair for the most part black, and their breath is entirely free from any disagreeable smell. The men, unlike the original inhabitants of America, have long beards, which they wear in various shapes. Circumcision is generally practised among them from a motive of cleanliness, and they have a term of reproach with which they upbraid those who do not adopt this custom. Both sexes always eradicate the hair from their arm-pits, and they reproached our gentlemen with want of cleanliness: their motions are easy and graceful, and their behaviour, when unprovoked, affable and courteous. Contrary to the custom of most other nations, the women of this country cut their hair short, whereas the men wear it long, sometimes hanging loose upon their shoulders, at other times tied in a knot on the crown of the head, in which they stick the feathers of birds of various colours. A piece of cloth, of the manufacture of the country, is frequently tied round the head of both sexes in the manner of a turban, and the women plait very curiously human hair into long strings, which being folded into branches, are tied on their

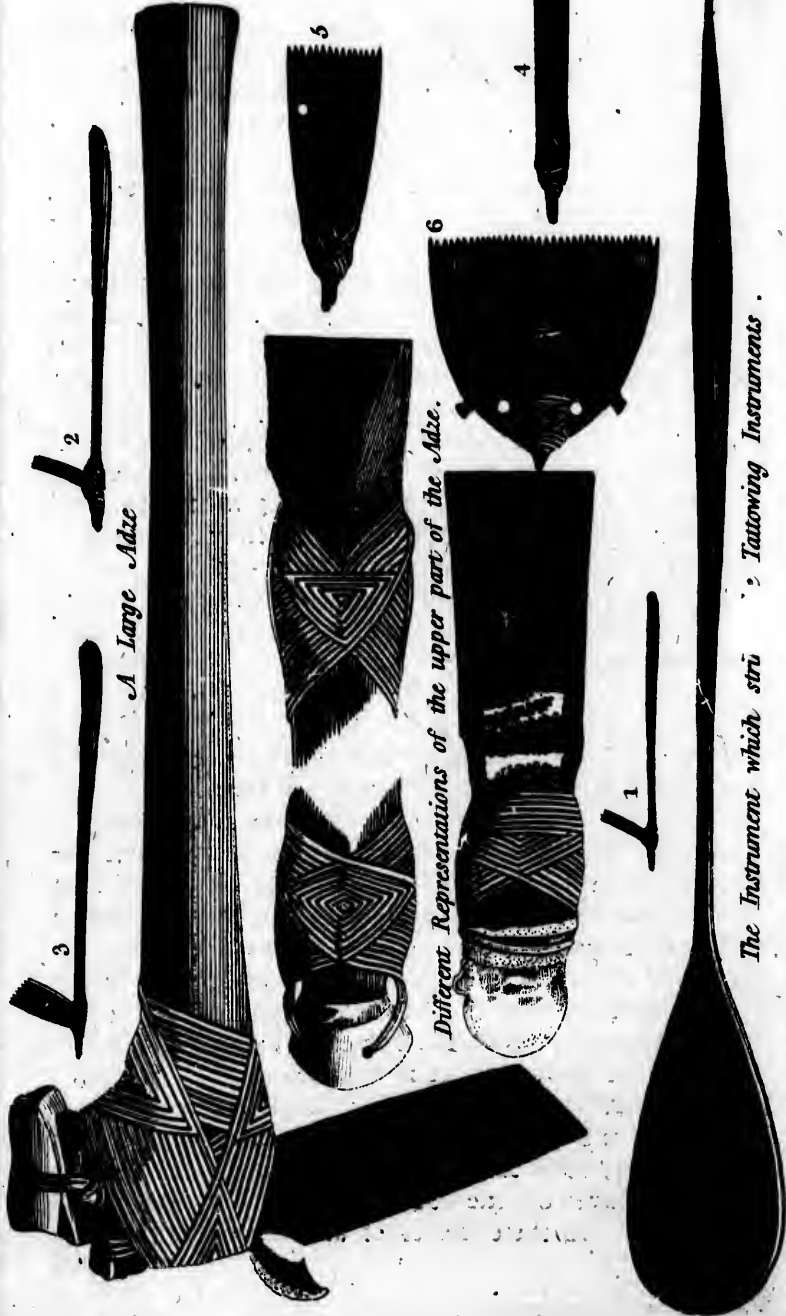
foreheads by way of ornament. They have a custom practised in many hot countries, of anointing their hair with cocoa-nut oil, the smell of which is not very agreeable. Having, among their various inventions no sorts of combs, they were infested with vermin, which they quickly got rid of when furnished with those convenient instruments.

They stain their bodies by indenting or pricking the flesh with a small instrument made of bone, cut into short teeth, which indentures they fill with a dark blue or blackish mixture, prepared from the smoke of an oily nut (burnt by them instead of candles) and water. This operation, called by the natives Tattaowing, is exceedingly painful, and leaves an indelible mark on the skin. It is usually performed when they are about ten or twelve years of age, and on different parts of the body; but those which suffer most severely are the breech and the loins, which are marked with arches, carried one above another a considerable way up the back. Mr. Banks was present at an operation of tattaowing, performed upon the posteriors of a girl about twelve years old. It was executed with an instrument that had twenty teeth, and at each stroke, which was repeated every moment, serum mixed with blood issued. She bore the pain with great resolution for several minutes; but at length it became so intolerable, that she murmured and burst into most violent lamentations; but her operator was inexorable, whilst some females present both chid and beat her. Mr. Banks was a spectator for near an hour, during which time one side only was tattaowed, the other having undergone the ceremony some time before, and the arches upon the loins, which are the most painful, but which they most value, were yet to be made.

They cloath themselves in cloth and matting of various kinds: the first they wear in fine, the latter in wet weather. These are in different forms, no shape being preserved in the pieces, nor are they sewed together. The women of a superior class wear three
of

15
ustom
their
very
itions
rmin,
with
g the
into
blue
of an
l wa-
wing,
rk on
about
of the
e the
ches,
p the
f tat-
about
ment
i was
fued.
l mi-
at the
ons ;
males
was a
e fide
e ce-
n the
most
f va-
er in
shape
d to
three
or

London, Published as the Act directs, by Alex. Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N^o. 16, Paternoster Row.



A Large Adze

Different Representations of the upper part of the Adze.

The Instrument which stri ; Tattooing Instruments .

Figures of Tattooing Instruments to pierce the Skin, of different sizes with & without their Handles.

or four pieces. One, which is of considerable length, they wrap several times round their waist, and it falls down to the middle of the leg. Two or three other short pieces, with a hole cut in the middle of each, are placed on one another, and their heads coming through the holes, the long ends hang before and behind, both sides being open, by which means they have the free use of their arms.

The mens dress is very similar, differing only in this instance, that one part of the garment instead of falling below the knees is brought between the legs. This dress is worn by all ranks of people, the only distinction being quantity in the superior class. At noon both sexes appear almost naked, wearing only a piece of cloth that is tied round the waist. Their faces are shaded from the sun with small bonnets, made of cocoa-nut leaves or matten, which are constructed in a few minutes. The men sometime wear a sort of wig of human or dog's hair, or of cocoa-nut strings, woven on a single thread, fastened under the hair, and hanging down behind. Both men and women wore ear-rings on one side, consisting of shells, stones, berries, or small pearls; but they soon gave the preference to the beads brought by the Endeavour's company. The boys and girls go quite naked; the first till they are seven or eight years old; the latter till they are about five.

The natives of Otaheite seldom use their houses but to sleep in, or to avoid the rain, as they eat in the open air, under the shade of a tree. In those there are no divisions or apartments. Their cloaths serve them for covering in the night. The master and his wife repose in the middle; then the married people; next the unmarried females; then the unmarried men; and in fair weather the servants sleep in the open air. The houses of the chiefs, however, differ in some particulars. There are those that are very small, and so constructed as to be carried in canoes: all sides of them are inclosed with the leaves of the cocoa-nut; the air nevertheless penetrates. In these the chief and his wife only sleep.

We

We likewise saw houses that are general receptacles for the inhabitants of a district, many of them being more than 200 feet in length, 40 in breadth, and 70 or 80 feet high. They are constructed at the common expence, and have an area on one side, surrounded with low palifadoes; but like the others without walls.

Their cookery consists chiefly in baking, the manner of doing which has been before noticed. When a chief kills a hog, which is but seldom, he divides it equally among his vassals. Dogs and fowls are more common food. When the bread-fruit is not in season, coconuts, bananas, plantains, &c. are substituted in its stead. They bake their bread-fruit in a manner which renders it somewhat like a mealy potatoe. Of this three dishes are made, by beating them up with bananas, plantains, or sour paste, which is called by them Mahie.

Sour paste is made by taking bread-fruit not thoroughly ripe, and laying it in heaps covered with leaves, by which means it ferments. The core is then taken out, and the fruit put into a hole lined with grass: it is then again covered with leaves, upon which large stones are placed; this produces a second fermentation; after which it grows sour, without any other change for a long time. They take it from this hole as they have occasion for it, and make it into balls. It is then rolled up in plantain leaves and baked. As it will keep for some weeks, they eat it both hot and cold. Such is the food of this people, their sauce to which is only salt water. As to their drink it is generally confined to water, or the milk of the cocoa-nut, though some of them would drink so freely of our English liquors as to become quite intoxicated, such instances, however, were occasioned more by ignorance than design, as they were never known to practice a debauch of this kind a second time. We were told, it is true, that their chiefs sometimes became inebriated by drinking the juice of a plant called Ava, but of this we saw not a single instance during the time we remained on the island.

The chief eats generally alone, unless when visited by

by a stranger, who is permitted sometimes to be his mess-mate. Not having known the use of a table, they sit on the ground, and leaves of trees spread before them serve as a table-cloth. Their attendants, who are numerous, having placed a basket by the chiefs, containing their provisions, and cocoa-nut shells of fresh and salt water, set themselves down around them. They then begin their meals with the ceremony of washing their mouths and hands; after which they eat a handful of bread-fruit and fish, dipt in salt water alternately, till the whole is consumed, taking a sip of salt water between almost every morsel. The bread-fruit and fish is succeeded by a second course, consisting of either plantains or apples, which they never eat without being pared. During this time a soft fluid of paste is prepared from the bread-fruit, which they drink out of cocoa-nut shells: this concludes the meal; and their hands and mouths are again washed as at the beginning. These people eat an astonishing quantity of food at a meal. Mr. Banks and others saw one of them devour three fish of the size of a small carp, four bread-fruits, as large as a common melon, thirteen or fourteen plantains seven inches long, and above half as big round; to all which was added a quart of the paste by way of drink, to digest the whole.

The inhabitants of this island, though apparently fond of the pleasures of society, have yet an aversion to holding any intercourse with each other at their meals; and they are so rigid in the observation of this custom, that even brothers and sisters have their separate baskets of provisions, and generally sit at the distance of some yards when they eat, with their backs to each other, and not exchanging a word during the whole time of their repast. The middle aged of superior rank go usually to sleep after dinner; but, which is somewhat remarkable, older people are not so indolent.

Music, dancing, wrestling, and shooting with the bow, constitute the greatest part of their diversions.

Flutes

Flutes and drums are the only musical instruments among them. Their drums are formed of a circular piece of wood, hollow at one end only. These are covered with the skin of a shark, and beaten with the hand instead of a stick. Their songs are extempore, and frequently in rhyme, but they consist only of two lines; these couplets are often sung by way of evening amusements, between sun-set and bed-time; during which interval they burn candles made of an oily nut, fixing them one above another upon a small stick that is run through the middle: some of these candles will burn a long time, and afford a pretty good light. Among other amusements, they have a dance called Timorodee, which is generally performed by ten or a dozen young females, who put themselves into the most wanton attitudes, keeping time during the performance with the greatest nicety and exactness. Pregnant women are excluded from these dances.

One of the worst customs of the people of Otaheite, is that which several of the principal people of the island have adopted of uniting in an association, wherein no woman confines herself to any particular man, by which means they obtain a perpetual society. These societies are called Arreoy. The members have meetings where the men amuse themselves with wrestling, and the women dance the Timorodee in such a manner as is most likely to excite the desires of the other sex, and which were frequently gratified in the assembly. A much worse practice is the consequence of this. If any of the women prove with child, the infant is destroyed, unless the mother's natural affection should prevail with her to preserve its life, which, however, is forfeited unless she can procure a man to adopt it. And where she succeeds in this, she is expelled from the society, being called Whanownow, which signifies a bearer of children, by way of reproach.

Personal cleanliness is much esteemed among these Indians. Both sexes are particular in washing three times

times a day, viz. when they rise in the morning, at noon, and before they go to rest. They are also very cleanly in their cloaths, so that no disagreeable effluvia are found to arise in the largest communities.

Cloth is the chief manufacture of Otaheite, and of this there are three sorts, all which are made out of the bark of different trees, namely, the mulberry, the bread-fruit, and a tree which bears some resemblance to the West-Indian wild fig-tree. The first of these produces the finest cloth, which is seldom worn but by those of the first rank. The next sort is made of the bread-fruit tree, and the last of that which resembles the wild fig-tree. But this last sort, though the coarsest, is scarcer than the other two, which are manufactured only in small quantities, as the same manner is used in manufacturing all these cloths. The following description will suffice for the reader's information.

The bark of the tree being stripped off, is soaked in water for two or three days; they then take it out, and separate the inner bark from the external coat, by scraping it with a shell, after which it is spread out on plantain leaves, placing two or three layers over one another, care being taken to make it of an equal thickness in every part. In this state it continues till it is almost dry, when it adheres so firmly that it may be taken from the ground without breaking. After this process, it is laid on a smooth board, and beaten with an instrument made for that purpose, of the compact heavy wood called Etoa. The instrument is about fourteen inches long, and about seven in circumference; is of a quadrangular shape, and each of the four sides is marked with longitudinal grooves or furrows, differing in this instance, that there is a regular gradation in the width and depth of the grooves on each of the sides; the coarser side not containing more than ten of these furrows, while the finest is furnished with above fifty. It is with that side of the mallet where the grooves are deepest and widest that they begin to beat their cloth, and proceeding regularly, finish

with that which has the greatest number. By this beating, the cloth is extended in a manner similar to the gold that is formed into leaves by the hammer; and it is also marked with small channels resembling those which are visible on paper, but rather deeper; it is in general beat very thin; when they want it thicker than common, they take two or three pieces and paste them together with a kind of glue prepared from a root called Pea. This cloth becomes exceedingly white by bleaching, and is dyed of a red, yellow, brown, or black colour; the first is exceeding beautiful, and equal, if not superior to any in Europe. They make the red colour from a mixture of the juices of two vegetables, neither of which used separately has this effect; matting of various kinds is another considerable manufacture, in which they excel, in many respects, the Europeans. They make use of the coarser sort to sleep on, and in wet weather they wear the finer. They excel in the basket and wicker-work; both men and women employ themselves at it, and can make a great number of different patterns. They make ropes and lines of all sizes of the bark of the Poerou, and their nets for fishing are made of these lines; the fibres of the cocoon they make thread of, such as they use to fasten together the several parts of their canoes; the forms of which are various, according to the use to which they are applied. Their fishing lines are esteemed the best in the world, made of the bark of the Erōwa, a kind of nettle which grows on the mountains; they are strong enough to hold the heaviest and most vigorous fish, such as bonettas and albigores; in short, they are extremely ingenious in every expedient for taking all kinds of fish.

The tools which these people make use of for building houses, constructing canoes, hewing stones, and for felling, cleaving, carving, and polishing timber, consists of nothing more than an adze of stone, and a chisel of bone, most commonly that of a man's arm; and for a file or polisher, they make use of a rasp of coral and

and coral sand. The blades of their adzes are extremely tough, but not very hard; they make them of various sizes, those for felling wood weigh six or seven pounds, and others which are used for carving, only a few ounces: they are obliged every minute to sharpen them on a stone, which is always kept near them for that purpose. The most difficult task they meet with in the use of these tools, is the felling of a tree, which employs a great number of hands for several days together. The tree which is in general use is called Aoie, the stem of which is straight and tall. Some of their smaller boats are made of the bread-fruit tree, which is wrought without much difficulty, being of a light spongy nature. Instead of planes they use their adzes with great dexterity. Their canoes are all shaped with the hand, the Indians not being acquainted with the method of warping a plank.

Of these they have two kinds, one they call Ivahahs, the other Pahies; the former is used for short voyages at sea, and the latter for long ones. These boats do not differ either in shape or size, but they are in no degree proportionate, being from sixty to seventy feet in length, and not more than the thirtieth part in breadth. Some are employed in going from one island to another, and others used for fishing. There is also the Ivahah, which serves for war; these are by far the longest, and the head and stern are considerably above the body. These Ivahahs are fastened together, side by side, when they go to sea, at the distance of a few feet, by strong wooden poles, which are laid across them and joined to each side. A stage or platform is raised on the fore part, about ten or twelve feet long, upon which stand the fighting men, whose missile weapons are slings and spears. Beneath these stages the rowers sit, who supply the place of those who are wounded. The fishing Ivahahs are from thirty or forty to ten feet in length, and those for travelling have a small house fixed on board, which is fastened upon the fore-part, for the better accommodation of persons of rank, who

N 2

occupy

occupy them both day and night. The Pahies differ also in size, being from sixty to seventy feet long, they are also very narrow, and are sometimes used for fighting, but chiefly for long voyages. In going from one island to another, they are out sometimes a month, and often at sea a fortnight or twenty days, and if they had convenience to stow more provisions, they could stay out much longer. These vessels are very useful in landing, and putting off from the shore in a surf, for by their great length and high stern they landed dry, when the Endeavour's boats could scarcely land at all.

They are very curious in the construction of these boats, the chief parts or pieces whereof are formed separately without either saw, plane, chissel, or any other iron tool, which renders their fabrication more surprising and worthy observation. These parts being prepared, the keel is fixed upon blocks, and the planks are supported with props, till they are sewed or joined together with strong plaited thongs, which are passed several times through holes bored with a chissel or bone such as they commonly make use of, and when finished, they are sufficiently tight without caulking. They keep these boats with great care in a kind of shed, built on purpose to contain them.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were at a loss to find out their method of dividing time, they always made use of the term Malama, which signifies the moon; whenever they spoke of time, either past or to come, they reckon thirteen of these moons, beginning again when they are expired. This proves that they have some idea of the solar year; but these gentlemen could not discover how they computed their months, to make thirteen equal to the year, as they said these months consisted of twenty-nine days, one day in which the moon was invisible being included. They, however, knew the prevailing weather that was to be expected, as well as the fruits that would be in season. As to the day, they divide it into twelve equal parts, six of which be-
long

long to the day, and the other six to the night. When they enumerate, they reckon from one to ten, making use of their fingers, and changing hands, till they come to the number which they intended to express; and joining expressive signs to their words, in the course of their conversation. But they are not so expert in measuring distances, for when they attempt describing the space between one place and another, they are obliged to express it by the time that would be taken in passing it.

With regard to their language, it is soft, as it abounds with vowels, and easy to be pronounced; but very few of their nouns or verbs being declineable, it must consequently be rather imperfect. However, we found means to be mutually understood without much difficulty. The following specimen will possibly enable the reader to form some notion of the language of those islanders.

Aheine, <i>a woman</i>	Matau, <i>the eyes</i>
Aihoo, <i>a garment</i>	Matte roah, <i>to die</i>
Ainao, <i>take care</i>	Mayneenee, <i>to tickle</i>
Aree, <i>a chief</i>	Meyoooo, <i>the nails</i>
Aouna, <i>to-day</i>	Midee, <i>a child</i>
Aoy, <i>water</i>	Mutee, <i>a kiss</i>
Eahoo, <i>the nose</i>	Myty, <i>good</i>
Eawow, <i>to scold</i>	Neeheco, <i>good night</i>
Eei, <i>to eat</i>	Oboboa, <i>to-morrow</i>
Eeyo, <i>look you</i>	Oowhau, <i>the thighs</i>
Emoto, <i>to box</i>	Ore' dehaiya, <i>a large nail</i>
Epanoo, <i>a drum</i>	Ore' eeteeca, <i>a small nail</i>
Epeenei, <i>an echo</i>	Otaowa, <i>yesterday</i>
Epehe, <i>a song</i>	Pahie, <i>a ship</i>
Erowroo, <i>the head</i>	Parawei, <i>a shirt</i>
Huaheine, <i>a wife</i>	Poa, <i>a night</i>
Itopa, <i>to fall</i>	Poe, <i>ear rings</i>
Kipoo, <i>a meemhee, a chamber-pot</i>	Tane, <i>a husband</i>
Mahana, <i>a day</i>	Tatta te hommanne maitai, <i>a good-natured person</i>
Marroowhai, <i>dry</i>	Tea, <i>white</i>

Teine,

Teine, <i>a brother</i>	Tumatua, <i>a bonnet</i>
Tooaheine, <i>a sister</i>	Wahoa, <i>fire</i>
Tooanahoe, <i>you and I</i>	Waow, <i>I</i> .
Toonoah, <i>a mole in the skin</i>	

The natives of this country are seldom afflicted with any diseases, except sometimes an accidental fit of the cholic; but they are subject to the erysipelas, attended with cutaneous eruptions somewhat resembling the leprosy; and if they have it to any considerable degree, they are excluded from society and live alone, in a small house in some unfrequented part of the island. The management of the sick belongs to the priests, whose method of cure consists generally of prayers and ceremonies, which are repeated till they recover or die. If the former happens, it is attributed to their mode of proceeding; if the patient dies, then they urge that the disease was incurable.

The religion of these islanders appears to be very mysterious; and as the language adapted to it, was different from that which was spoken on other occasions, we were not able to gain much knowledge of it. Tupia, who gave us all the information that we got in regard to this particular, informed us, that his countrymen imagined every thing in the creation to proceed from the conjunction of two persons. One of these two first (being the supreme deity) they called Taroa-taihetoomo, and the other Tapapa; and the year which they called Tettowmatatayo, they suppose to be the daughter of these two. They also imagine an inferior sort of deities, known by the name of Eatras, two of whom, they say, formerly inhabited the earth, and they suppose that the first man and woman descended from them. The Supreme Being they stile "The causer of earthquakes;" but more frequently address their prayers to Tane, whom they conceive to be a son of the first progenitors of nature. They believe in the existence of the soul in a separate state, and suppose that there are two situations differing in the degrees of happiness, which they consider as receptacles for different ranks, but not as places of rewards and punishments.

Their notion is, that the chiefs and principal people will have the preference to those of lower ranks. For as to their actions they cannot conceive them to influence their future state, as they believe the deity takes no cognizance of them. The office of the priest is hereditary; there are several of them of all ranks: the chief is respected next to their kings; and they are in general superior to the natives, not only in point of divine knowledge, but also in that of astronomy and navigation. They are not at all concerned with the ceremony of marriage, which is only a simple agreement between the man and the woman, and when they chuse to separate, the matter is accomplished with as little ceremony as was thought necessary to bring them together. These people do not appear to worship images of any kind; but they enter their Morais with great awe and humility, their bodies being uncovered to the waist when they bring their offering to their altar.

As to their form of government, there is a sort of subordination among them which resembles the early state of all the nations of Europe when under the feudal system, which reserved authority to a small number, putting the rest intirely in their power. The ranks of the people of this island were these, Earee Rahie, signifying a king or supreme governor; Earee, answering to the title of baron; Mannahoonies, to that of vassal; and Toutou, under which name was included the lowest orders of the people, such as are called villains according to the old law term. The Earee Rahie, of which there are two here, one belonging to each peninsula, had great respect shewn them by all ranks. The Earees are lords of one or more of the districts, into which these governments are divided; and they separate their territories into lots, which are given among the Mannahoonies, who respectively cultivate the share that they hold under the baron. But they are only nominal cultivators; this, as well as all other laborious work, being done by the Toutou, or lower class of the people. The sovereign, or Earee Rahie, and the baron, or Earee, are succeeded in titles and honours by their children,

children, as soon as they are born ; but their estates remain in their possession, and subject to the management of their parents. Every district under the command of an Earee furnishes a proportionate number of fighting men, for the defence of the common cause, in case of a general attack ; and they are all subject to the command of the Earee Rahie. Their weapons consist of slings, in the use of which they are very dextrous, and of long clubs remarkably hard, with which they fight obstinately and cruelly, giving no quarter to their enemies in time of battle.

While we staid at Otaheite, there was a good understanding between the Earees of the two peninsulas, though it seems that the Earee of Tearrebau called himself king of the whole island ; this was a mere nominal claim, and was considered as such by the inhabitants. There is not any thing among them substituted for money, or a general medium by which every desirable object may be purchased or procured ; neither can any permanent good be obtained by force or fraud. The general commerce with women sets aside almost every excitement to commit adultery. In a word, in a government so little polished, though distributive justice cannot be regularly administered ; as, at the same time, there can be but few crimes whereon to exercise it, the want of this justice is not so severely felt as in more civilized societies.

Soon after our arrival at this island, we were apprised of the natives having the French disease among them. The islanders called it by a name expressive of its effects, observing that the hair and nails of those who were first infected by it, fell off, and the flesh rotted from the bones, while their countrymen, and even nearest relations, who were unaffected, were so much terrified at its symptoms, that the unhappy sufferer was often forsaken by them, and left to perish in the most horrible conditions,

Thus have we given an accurate, full, and complete description of the island in its present state ; we shall only add a few remarks, which we apprehend may be
of

were on that Part of the Coast—The Range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay—Incidents that happend on board the Endeavour and ashore—A Description of the Country and its fortified Villages—She sails from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Islands—A Description of the Indians on the Banks of the River Thames—And of the Timber that grows there—Interviews and Skirmishes with the Natives on an Island, and on different Parts of the Coast—Range from the Bay of Islands round North Cape.

ON the 13th of July, 1769, after leaving the island of Otaheite, we continued our course, with clear weather and a gentle breeze; and were informed by Tupia, that four islands which he called Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaha, and Bolabola, were at the distance of about one or two days sail; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, very scarce on board, were to be got there in great abundance. He also mentioned an island to the northward, which he called Tethuroa. It is situated north half west eight leagues distant from the northern extremity of Otaheite. It was a small low island, but as Tupia said, without any settled inhabitants. On the 15th we made but little way, on account of the calms which succeeded the light breezes. Tupia often prayed to his god Tane for a wind, and boasted of his success, which indeed he took care to insure, by never applying to Tane, till he saw a breeze so near, that he knew it must reach the ship before his prayer was concluded.

On the 16th we sounded near the north-west part of the island of Huaheine, but found no bottom at 70 fathoms. Several canoes put off; but the Indians seemed fearful of coming near the bark till the sight of Tupia removed their apprehensions. They then came along side, and the king of the island, with his queen, came on board. They seemed surprized at whatever was shewn them, but made no enquiries after any thing but what was offered to their notice. After some time they became more familiar; and the king, whose name was

from Tolaga
board the
the Country
Curry Bay
adians on
the Timber
with the
the Coast
Cape.

island of
with clear
med by
uaheine,
stance of
wls, and
ere to be
ioned an
ethuroa.
ant from
small low
inhabi-
, on ac-
breezes.
nd, and
care to
a breeze
efore his

part of
at 70 fa-
ns seem-
of Tupia
e along
ame on
s shewn
ut what
ne they
: name
was

was Oree, as a token of amity, proposed exchanging names with Capt. Cook, which was readily accepted. We found the people here nearly similar to those of Otaheite in almost every particular; but if Tupia might be credited, they are not like them addicted to thieving. Having anchored in a small but convenient harbour, on the west side of the island, (called by the natives Owparre) we went on shore with Mr. Banks, and some other gentlemen, accompanied by the king and Tupia. The moment we landed Tupia uncovered himself as low as the waist, and desired Mr. Monkhouse to follow his example. Being seated he now began a speech, or prayer, which lasted about twenty minutes; the king, who stood opposite to him, answering in what seemed set replies. During this harangue, Tupia delivered, at different times, a handkerchief, a black silk neckcloth, some plantains, and beads, as presents to their Eatua, or deity; and in return for our Eatua, we received a hog, some young plantains, and two bunches of feathers, all which were carried on board. These ceremonies were considered as a kind of ratification of a treaty between us and the king of Huaheine.

On the 17th we went again on shore, and made an excursion into the country, the productions of which greatly resembled those of Otaheite; the rocks and clay seemed, indeed, more burnt: the boat houses were curious and remarkable large. The level part of the country affords the most beautiful landscapes that the imagination can possibly form an idea of. The soil is exceedingly fertile, and the shore is lined with fruit trees of different kinds, particularly the cocoa-nut; however, in some places there were salt swamps and lagoons which produced neither trees nor plants.

On the 18th we went again on shore, and Tupia being engaged with his friends, we took with us Taiyota, his boy. Mr. Banks proposed taking a more perfect view of a kind of chest, or ark, which he had before observed. The lid of this ark was neatly sewed on, and thatched in a peculiar manner with palm-nut leaves.

It was placed on two poles, and supported by small carved arches of wood. These poles served to remove it from one place to another, in the manner of our sedan-chairs. We remarked, that this chest was of a form resembling the ark of the Lord among the Jews; but it is still more remarkable, that enquiring of Tupia's servant what it was called, he told us Ewharreno-Eatua, the House of God; though he could give no account of its meaning or use. Our trade with the natives went on slowly; we got however eleven pigs, and were not without hopes of obtaining more the next morning.

On the 19th we offered them some hatchets, for which we procured three very large hogs. As we intended to sail in the afternoon, King Oree, and others of the natives came on board to take their leave. Captain Cook presented to Oree a small pewter plate, stamped with this inscription, "His Britannic Majesty's ship Endeavour, Captain Cook, commander, 16 July, 1769." We gave him also some medals, or counters, resembling our English coin, and other trifles, which he promised to keep in order to remember us. The island of Huaheine lies in 16 deg. 43 min. south latitude, and 150 deg. 52 min. west longitude; about 30 leagues distant from Otaheite, and is twenty miles in circumference. Its productions are a month forwarder than those of the last mentioned island, as we found by several of the fruits, &c. Mr. Banks collected only a few new plants, but found a species of the scorpion which he had not before seen. The inhabitants are very lazy, but are stouter and larger made than those of Otaheite; the women very fair, and we thought them handsome. Both sexes seemed to be less timid, and less curious. They made no enquiries when on board the ship, and, when we fired a gun, though apparently frightened, yet they did not fall down, as our friends at Otaheite constantly did when we came among them; but it is to be considered, that the former had never experienced its power of dispensing death. We

now

now made sale for the island of Ulietea, distant seven or eight leagues from Huaheine.

On the 20th, by the direction of Tupia, we anchored in a bay, formed by a reef, on the north side of the island. Two canoes soon came off from the shore, and the natives brought with them two small hogs, which they exchanged for some nails and beads. The captain, Mr. Banks, and other gentlemen now went on shore, accompanied by Tupia, who introduced them with the same kind of ceremonies that had taken place on their landing at Huaheine; after which Captain Cook took possession of this and the three neighbouring islands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, in the name of his Britannic majesty. We then walked to a large Morai, called by the natives Tabodeboatea, which we found different from the sepulchral monuments of Otaheite, being composed of four walls, about eight or nine feet high, and built of large coral stones, surrounding a court of about 30 feet square. At a small distance we found an altar, or ewhatta, whereupon lay the last oblation, or sacrifice, a hog about eighty pounds weight, which had been offered whole, and very nicely roasted. We also saw four or five Ewharre-no-eatua, or houses of God, to which carriage poles were fitted. From hence we proceeded to a long house, where among rolls of cloth, we saw the model of a canoe, about three feet long, to which were fastened eight human jaw-bones: we concluded they were trophies of war: but Tupia affirmed they were the jaw-bones of the natives of this island. Night now advanced with quick paces, but Mr. Banks and the Doctor continued their walk along the shore, and saw another Ewharre-no-eatua, also a tree of the fig kind, the trunk of which, (the nature whereof has been already described) was forty-two paces in circumference.

On the 21st the master was sent to inspect the southern part of the island, and a lieutenant was dispatched in the yawl to sound the harbour where the Endeavour lay. While the Captain went in the pinnace to take a view

view of that part of the island which lay to the northward. Mr. Banks and the gentlemen were again on shore, trading with the natives, and searching after the productions and curiosities of the country. They discovered, however, not one particular worthy of notice.

The hazy weather and brisk gales prevented us from getting under sail, till the 24th, when we put to sea, and steered northward within the reef, towards an opening, at the distance of about five or six leagues, in effecting which we were in great danger of striking on a rock, the man who sounded, crying out on a sudden "Two fathoms," which could not but alarm us greatly; but either the master was mistaken, or the ship went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which in the neighbourhood of these islands as are steep as a wall.

The bay where the Endeavour lay at anchor, called Oopoa, is capacious enough to hold a great number of shipping, and secured from the sea by a reef of rocks. Its situation is off the easternmost part of the island. The provisions consist of cocoa-nuts, yams, plantains, and a few hogs and fowls. The country round about the place where we landed was not so plentiful as at Otaheite or Huaheine. The southernmost opening in the reef, or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the easternmost point of the island, and may be found by a small woody island, which lies to the south-east of it, called Oatara; north-west from which are two other islets called Opururu and Tamou. Between these is the channel through which we went out of the harbour, and it is a full quarter of a mile wide.

On the 25th we were within a league or two of the island of Otoha; but could not get near enough to land, the wind having proved contrary. In the morning, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went in the long-boat with the master, in order to sound a harbour on the east side of the island, which they found safe and convenient. We then went on shore and purchased a large quantity of plantains, and some hogs and fowls. The produce

produce of this island was much the same with that of Ulitea, but it seemed to be more barren. We received the same compliment from the Indians here, as was usual for them to pay their own kings, which was by uncovering their shoulders, and wrapping their cloaths round their bodies. We made sail to the northward, and at eight o'clock on the 29th, we were under the high peaks of Bolabola. We found the island inaccessible in this part, and likewise that it was impossible to weather the south end of it till late at night. On the 30th, we discovered an island which Tupia called Maurua, but said it was small, surrounded by a reef, and without any commodious harbour, but inhabited, and yielded nearly the same produce as the adjacent islands. In the middle is a high round hill, which may be seen at eleven or twelve leagues distance. In the afternoon, finding ourselves to windward of some harbour that lay on the west side of Ulitea, we intended to put into one of them, in order to stop a leak which had sprung in the powder-room, and to take in some additional ballast. The wind being right against us, we plied on and off till the afternoon of the first of August, when we came to an anchor in the entrance of the channel, which led into one of the harbours.

On Wednesday the 2d, in the morning, when the tide turned, we came into a proper place for mooring in 28 fathom. Many of the natives came off, and brought hogs, fowls, and plantains, which were purchased upon very moderate terms. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore, and spent the day very agreeably; the natives shewing them great respect: being conducted to the houses of the chief people, they found those who had ran hastily before them, standing on each side of a long mat spread upon the ground, and the family sitting at the farther end of it. In one house they observed some very young girls dressed in the neatest manner, who kept their places waiting for the strangers to accost them; these girls were the most beautiful the gentlemen had ever seen. One of them, about seven or eight years old, was dressed in a red gown, and her

head

head was decorated with a great quantity of plaited hair; this ornament is called Tamou, and is held in great estimation among them. She was sitting at the upper end of one of their long mats, on which none of the people present presumed to set a foot; and her head was reclined on the arm of a decent looking woman, who appeared to be her nurse; when Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander approached her, she stretched out her hand to receive some beads, which they presented to her, with an air of such dignity and gracefulness, as would have done honour to the first princess in Europe.

In one of the houses we were entertained with a dance, different from any we had seen before. The performer put upon his head a large piece of wicker-work, about four feet long, of a cylindrical form, covered with feathers, and edged round with shark's teeth. With this head-dress, which is called a Whou, he began to dance with a slow motion; frequently moving his head, so as to describe a circle with the top of his wicker cap, and sometimes throwing it so near the faces of the by-standers as to make them jump back: this they considered as an excellent piece of humour, and it always produced a hearty laugh, when practised upon any of the English gentlemen.

On Thursday the 3d, as Mr. Banks and the doctor were going along the shore to the northward, with a design to purchase stock, they met with a company of dancers, who retarded the progress of their excursion. The company was composed of six men and two women dancers, with three drums. They were informed that these dancers were some of the principal people of the island, and though they were an itinerant troop, they did not, like the strolling parties of Otahite, receive any gratuity from the by-standers. The women wore a considerable quantity of tamou, or plaited hair, ornamented with flowers of the cape-jessamine, which were stuck in with taste, and made an elegant head-dress. The womens necks, breasts and arms, were naked; the other parts of their bodies were covered with

plaited
held in
at the
none of
her head
woman,
ks and
out her
nted to
nels, as
in Eu-

with a
. The
wicker-
m, co-
shark's
Whou,
quently
the top
so near
a jump
iece of
, when

e doc-
d, with
pany of
urfion.
wo wo-
ormed
ople of
troop,
ite, re-
women
d hair,
which
head-
were
covered
with

London, Published by Messrs. Hogg at the Kings-Arms, No. 6, Paternoster Row.



CO A DANCE in OTAHEITE. Q

with black cloth, which was fastened close round them, and by the side of each breast, next the arms, was a small plume of black feathers, worn like a nosegay. Thus apparelled, they advanced sideways, keeping time with great exactness to the drums, which beat quick and loud; soon after they began to shake themselves in a very whimsical manner, and put their bodies into a variety of strange postures, sometimes sitting down, and at others falling with their faces to the ground, and resting on their knees and elbows, moving their fingers at the same time with a quickness scarcely to be credited. The chief dexterity, however, of the dancers, as well as the amusement of the spectators, consisted in the lasciviousness of their attitudes and gestures. Between the dances of the women a kind of dramatic interlude was performed by the men, consisting of dialogue as well as dancing; but for want of a sufficient knowledge of their language, we could not learn the subject of this interlude.

Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander and some other gentlemen, were present at a more regular dramatic entertainment the next day. The performers, who were all men, were divided into two parties, one dressed in brown, and the other in white, by way of distinction. Tupia being present, informed them that the party in brown, acted the parts of a master and his servants, and the party in white, a gang of thieves; the master having produced a basket of meat, which he gave in charge to his servants, which party exhibited a variety of expedients, in endeavouring to steal this basket, and the brown as many in preventing the accomplishment of their design. After some time had been spent in this manner, those to whom the basket was intrusted, laying themselves down on the ground round it, pretended to fall asleep; the other party availing themselves of this opportunity, stole gently upon them, and carried off their booty; the servants awaking soon after, discovered their loss, but they made no search after the basket, and began to dance with as much alacrity as before.

On Saturday the 5th, some hogs and fowls, and se-

veral large pieces of cloth, many of them being fifty or sixty yards in length, together with a quantity of plantains and cocoa-nuts, were sent to Captain Cook, as a present from the Earee Rahie of the island of Bolabola, accompanied with a message, importing that he was then on the island, and intended waiting on the captain.

On the 6th, the king of Bolabola did not visit us agreeable to his promise; his absence, however, was not in the least regretted, as he sent three young women to demand something in return for his present. After dinner, we set out to pay the king a visit on shore, since he did not think proper to come on board. As this man was the Earee Rahie of the Bolabola man, who had conquered this, and were the dread of all the neighbouring islands, we were greatly disappointed instead of finding a vigorous enterprising young chief, to see a poor feeble old dotard, half blind, and sinking under the weight of age and infirmities. He received us without either that state or ceremony which we had hitherto met with among the other chiefs.

On Wednesday the 9th, having stopped a leak, and taken on board a fresh stock of provisions, we sailed out of the harbour. Though we were several leagues distant from the island of Bolabola, Tupia earnestly intreated Captain Cook, that a shot might be fired towards it; which, to gratify him, the captain complied with. This was supposed to have been intended by Tupia as a mark of his resentment against the inhabitants of that place, as they had formerly taken from him large possessions which he held in the island of Ulietea, of which island Tupia was a native, and a subordinate chief, but was driven out by these warriors. We had great plenty of provisions, as well of hogs, as of vegetables, during the time we continued in the neighbourhood of these islands, so that we were not obliged to use any considerable quantity of the ship's provisions, and we had flattered ourselves, that the fowls and hogs would have supplied us with fresh provisions during the course of our voyage to the southward,

ward, but in this we were unhappily disappointed, for as the hogs could not be brought to eat any European grain, or any provender whatever, that the ship afforded, we were reduced to the disagreeable necessity of killing them immediately on leaving those islands; and the fowls all died of a disease in their heads, with which they were seized soon after they had been carried on board. Being detained longer at Ulietea in repairing the ship than we expected, we did not go on shore at Bolabola; but after giving the general name of the Society Islands, to the islands of Huaheine, Ulietea, Bolabola, Otaha, and Maurua, which lie between the latitude of 16 deg. 10 min. and 18 deg. 55 min. south, we pursued our course, standing southwardly for an island, to which we were directed by Tupia, at above 100 leagues distant. This we discovered on Sunday the 13th, and were informed by him, that it was called Obiterea.

On the 14th we stood in for land, and saw several of the inhabitants coming along the shore. One of the lieutenants was dispatched in the pinnace to sound for anchorage, and to obtain what intelligence could be got from the natives concerning any land, that might be farther to the south. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, went with the lieutenant in the boat. When they approached the shore, they observed, that the Indians were armed with long lances. A number of them were soon drawn together on the beach, and two jumped into the water, endeavouring to gain the boat; but she soon left them and some others that had made the same attempt, far enough behind her. Having doubled the point where they intended to land, they opened a large bay, and saw another party of the natives standing at the end of it, armed like those whom they had seen before. Preparations were then made for landing, on which a canoe full of Indians came off towards them. Observing this, Tupia received orders to acquaint them that the English did not intend to offer them violence, but meant to traffic with them for nails, which were produced. Thus informed they

came along-side the boat, and took some nails that were given them, being seemingly well pleased with the present. Yet a few minutes after, several of these people boarded the boat, designing to drag her on shore; but some musquets being discharged over their heads they leaped into the sea, and having reached the canoe, put back with all possible expedition, joining their countrymen who stood ready to receive them. The boat immediately pursued the fugitives, but the crew finding the surf extremely violent, did not venture to land there, but coasted along shore to try if they could not find a more convenient place. Soon after the canoe got on shore, a man opposite the boat flourished his weapon, calling out at the same time with a shrill voice, which was a mark of defiance, as Tupia explained it to the English.—Not being able to find a proper landing-place, they returned, with an intention to attempt it where the canoe went on shore; whereupon another warrior repeated the defiance: his appearance was more formidable than that of the other; he had a high cap on made of the tail feathers of a bird, and his body was painted with various colours. When he thought fit to retire, a grave man came forward, who asked Tupia several questions, relating to the place from whence the vessel came, as, Who were the persons on board? Whither they were bound? &c. After this it was proposed that the people in the boat should go on shore and trade with them if they would lay aside their weapons; but the latter would not agree to this, unless the English would do the like. As this proposal was by no means an equal one, when it was considered that the hazard must for many reasons be greater to the boat's crew than the Indians, and as perfidy was dreaded, it was not complied with. Besides, since neither the bay which the Endeavour entered, nor any other part of the island furnished good harbour or anchorage, it was resolved not to attempt landing any more, but to sail from hence to the southward.

The natives are very tall, well proportioned, and have long hair, which, like the inhabitants of the other islands,

islands, they tie in a bunch on the top of their heads, they are likewise tataowed in different parts of their bodies, but not on their posteriors. The isle does not shoot up into high peaks like the others that they visited, but is more level and uniform, and divided into small hillocks, some of which are covered with groves of trees. However, none of those bearing the bread fruit were seen, and not many cocoa-trees, but a great number of those called Etoa, were seen on the sea coast of this island. Both the nature of their cloth, and their manner of wearing it, differed in many respects from what had been observed in the progress of our voyage. All the garments that these people wore, were dyed yellow, and painted with a variety of colours on the outside. One piece formed their whole habit, having a hole in it through which they put their heads. This reached as far as their knees, and was tied close round their bodies with a kind of yellowish sash. Some of them also wore caps of the same kind, as we have already mentioned, and others bound round their heads a piece of cloth which resembled a turban.

On the 15th we sailed from this island with a fine breeze; but on the 16th it was hazy, and we bore away for what resembled several high peaks of land. The weather clearing up, we were convinced of our mistake, and resumed our course accordingly. We saw a comet on the 30th, about four o'clock, which was then about 60 deg. above the horizon. Land was discovered at west by north on Thursday the 7th of October, and in the morning of the 8th, we came to an anchor opposite the mouth of a small river, not above half a league from the coast.

Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and some other gentlemen, having left the pinnace at the mouth of the river, proceeded a little farther up, when we landed, leaving the yawl to the care of some of our boys, and went up to a few small houses in the neighbourhood. Some of the natives that had concealed themselves in the neighbourhood took advantage of our absence from the boat, and rushed out, advancing and brand-

brandishing their long wooden lances. On this our boys dropped down the stream. The cockswain of the pinnace then fired a musketoon over their heads, but it did not prevent them from following the boat, in consequence of which he levelled his piece, and shot one of them dead on the spot. Struck with astonishment at the death of their companion, the others remained motionless for some time, but as soon as they recovered their fright, retreated to the woods with the utmost precipitation. The report of the gun brought the advanced party back to the boats, and both the pinnace and yawl returned immediately to the ship.

On the 9th, a great number of the natives were seen near the place where the gentlemen in the yawl had landed the preceding evening, and the greatest part of them appeared to be unarmed. The long-boat, pinnace, and yawl, being manned with marines and sailors, Capt. Cook, with the rest of the gentlemen, and Tupia, went on shore, and landed on the opposite side of the river, over against a spot where several Indians were sitting on the ground. These immediately started up, and began to handle their weapons, each producing either a long pike, or a kind of truncheon made of stone with a string through the handle of it, which they twisted round their wrists. Tupia was directed to speak to them in his language; and we were agreeably surprized to find that he was well understood, the natives speaking in his language, though in a different dialect. Their intentions at first appeared to be very hostile, brandishing their weapons in the usual threatening manner; upon which a musket was fired at some distance from them: the ball happened to fall into the water, at which they appeared rather terrified, and desisted from their menaces. Having now drawn up the marines, we advanced nearer to the side of the river. Tupia, again speaking, informed them of our desire to traffic with them for provisions: to this they consented, provided we would go over to them to the other side of the river. The proposal was agreed to, upon condition that the natives would quit their weapons; but the
most

most solemn assurances of friendship could not prevail with them to make such a concession. Not thinking it prudent therefore to cross the river, we, in our turn, intreated the Indians to come over to us, and after some time prevailed on one of them so to do. He was presently followed by several others. They did not appear to value the beads and iron which we offered in the way of barter, but proposed to exchange their weapons for ours; which being objected to, they endeavoured several times to snatch our arms from us, but being on our guard, from the information given us by Tupia that they were still our enemies, their attempts were repeatedly frustrated; and Tupia, by our direction gave them to understand, that any further offers of violence would be punished with instant death. One of them, nevertheless, had the audacity to snatch Mr. Green's dagger when his back was turned to them, and retiring a few paces, flourished it over his head; but his temerity cost him his life; for Mr. Monkhouse fired a musquet loaded with ball, and he instantly dropped. Soon after, though not before we had discharged our pieces loaded with small shot only, they retreated slowly up the country, and we returned to our boats.

The behaviour of the Indians, added to our want of fresh water, induced Capt. Cook to continue his voyage round the bay, with a hope of getting some of the natives aboard, that by civil usage he might convey through them a favourable idea of us to their countrymen, and thereby settle a good correspondence with them. An event occurred which, though attended with disagreeable circumstances, promised to facilitate this design. Two canoes appeared, making towards land, and Capt. Cook proposed intercepting them with our boats. One of them got clear off, but the Indians in the other, finding it impossible to escape, began to attack our people in the boats with their paddles. This compelled the Endeavour's people to fire upon them, when four of the Indians were killed, and the other three, who were young men, jumped into the water, and

and endeavoured to swim to shore; they were, however, taken up, and conveyed on board. At first they discovered all the signs of fear and terror, thinking they should be killed; but Tupia, by repeated assurances of friendship, removed their apprehensions, and they afterwards eat heartily of the ship's provisions. Having retired to rest in the evening, they slept very quietly for some hours, but about midnight, their fears returning, they appeared in great agitation, frequently making loud and dismal groans. Again the kind caresses and friendly promises of Tupia operated so effectually, that they became calm, and sung a song, which at the dead of night had a pleasing effect. The next morning, after they were dressed according to the mode of their own country, and were ornamented with necklaces and bracelets, preparations were made for sending them to their countrymen, at which they expressed great satisfaction; but finding the boat approaching Capt. Cook's first landing place, they intimated that the inhabitants were foes, and that after killing their enemies, they always eat them. The captain, nevertheless, judged it expedient to land near the same spot, which he accordingly did with Mr. Banks, Doctor Solander, and Tupia, resolving at the same time to protect the youths from any injury that might be offered them. These had scarcely departed on their return to their friends, when two large parties of Indians advanced hastily towards them, upon which they again flew to us for protection. When the Indians drew near, one of the boys discovered his uncle among them, and a conversation ensued across the river, in which the boy gave a just account of our hospitality, and took great pains to display his finery. A short time after this conversation the uncle swam across the river, bringing with him a green bough, a token of friendship, which we received as such, and several presents were made him. Notwithstanding the presence of this relation, all three of the boys, by their own desire, returned to the ship, but as the captain intended to sail the next morning, he sent them ashore in the evening,
though

though much against their inclination. The names of these boys were Toahowrange, Koikerange, and Maragovete. They informed us of a particular kind of deer upon the island, and that there were likewise tars, capers, romara, yams; a kind of long pepper, bald coote, and black birds.

On the 11th at six o'clock in the morning, we weighed, and set sail, in hopes of finding a better anchoring place, Capt. Cook having given the bay (called by the natives Toaneora) the name of Poverty Bay; and the south-west point he called young Nick's Head, on account of its first having been perceived by a lad on board, named Nicholas Young. In the afternoon we were becalmed; and several canoes full of Indians came off from the shore, who received many presents, and afterwards bartered even their cloaths, and some of their paddles, so eager were they to be possessed of European commodities. A single tree formed the bottom of their canoes, and the upper part consisted of two planks sewed together; these were painted red, representing many uncommon figures, and very curiously wrought. The Indians were armed with bludgeons, made of wood, and of the bone of a large animal: they called them Patoo-Patoo; and they were well contrived for close fighting.

Having finished their traffic, they set off in such a hurry, that they forgot three of their companions, who remained on board all night. These testified their fears and apprehensions, notwithstanding Tupia took great pains to convince them they were in no danger; and about seven o'clock the next morning a canoe came off, with four Indians on board. It was at first with difficulty the Indians in the ship could prevail on those in the canoe to come near them, and not till after the former had assured them, that the English did not eat men. The chief came on board, whose face was tattooed, with a remarkable patoo in his hand, and in this canoe the three Indians left the ship. Capt. Cook gave the name of Cape Table to a point of land about seven leagues to the south of Poverty Bay: its figure

greatly resembling a table, and the island, called by the natives Teahowry, he named Portland Island, it being very similar to that of the same name in the British Channel. It is joined to the main by a chain of rocks near a mile in length, partly above water. There are several shoals, called shambles, about three miles to the north-east of Portland, one of which the Endeavour narrowly escaped; there is, however, a passage between them with twenty fathom water. Some parts of Portland Island, as well as the main, were cultivated; and pumice stone in great quantities lying along the shore, within the bay, indicated that there was a volcano in the island. High palings upon the ridges of hills were also visible in two places, which were judged to be designed for religious purposes.

On the 12th several Indians came off in a canoe; they were disfigured in a strange manner, danced and sang, and at times appeared to be peaceably inclined, but at others to menace hostilities. Notwithstanding Tupia strongly invited them to come on board, none of them would quit the canoe. Whilst the Endeavour was getting clear of the shambles, five canoes full of Indians came off, and seemed to threaten the people on board, by brandishing their lances, and other hostile gestures. A four-pounder, loaded with grape-shot, was therefore ordered to be fired, but not pointed at them. This had the desired effect, and made them drop a-stern. Two more canoes came off whilst the Endeavour lay at anchor, but the Indians on board behaved very peaceably and quiet, and received several presents, but would not come on board.

On Friday the 13th in the morning, we made for an inlet, but finding it not sheltered, stood out again; and were chased by a canoe filled with Indians, but the Endeavour out-sailed them. She pursued her course round the bay, but did not find an opening. The next morning we had a view of the inland country. It was mountainous, and covered with snow in the interior parts, but the land towards the sea was flat and uncultivated, and in many places there were groves of high trees.

trees. Nine canoes full of Indians came from the shore, and five of them, after having consulted together, pursued the Endeavour, apparently with a hostile design. Tupia was desired to acquaint them that immediate destruction would ensue if they persevered in their attempts; but words had no influence, and a four-pounder, with grape-shot was fired, to give them some notion of the arms of their opponents. They were terrified at this kind of reasoning, and paddled away faster than they came. Tupia then hailed the fugitives and acquainted them that if they came in a peaceable manner, and left their arms behind, no annoyance would be offered them; one of the canoes submitting to the terms, came along-side the ship, and received many presents; but the other canoes returning, and persisting in the same menacing behaviour, interrupted this friendly intercourse.

On the 15th we were visited by some fishing-boats, the people in which, conducted themselves in an amicable manner. Though the fish which they had on board had been caught so long that they were not eatable, Capt. Cook purchased them merely for the sake of promoting a trade with the natives. In the afternoon a canoe with a number of armed Indians came up, and one of them, who was remarkably cloathed, with a black skin, found means to defraud the captain of a piece of red baize, under pretence of bartering the skin he had on for it. As soon as he had got the baize into his possession, instead of giving the skin in return, agreeable to his bargain, he rolled them up together, and ordered the canoe to put off from the ship, turning a deaf ear to the repeated remonstrance of the captain against his unjust behaviour. After a short time this canoe, together with the fishing boats which had put off at the same time, came back to the ship, and trade was again begun. During this second traffic with the Indians, one of them unexpectedly seized Tupia's little boy Taiyota, and pulling him into his canoe, instantly put off, and paddled away with the utmost speed; several musquets were immediately discharged at the people in

the canoe, and one of them receiving a wound, they all let go the boy, who before was held down in the bottom of the canoe. Taiyota taking the advantage of their consternation, immediately jumped into the sea, and swam back towards the Endeavour; he was taken on board without receiving any harm; but his strength was so much exhausted with the weight of his cloaths, that it was with great difficulty he reached the ship. In consequence of this attempt to carry off Taiyota, Capt. Cook called the cape off which it happened, Cape Kidnappers, lying in latitude 39 deg. 43 min. south, and longitude 182 deg. 24 min. west, and is very distinguishable by the high cliffs and white rocks that surrounded it. The distance of this cape from Portland Island is about 13 leagues, and it forms the south point of a bay which was denominated Hawke's Bay, in honour of Admiral Hawke.

Taiyota, having recovered from his fright, produced a fish and informed Tupia that he intended to offer it to his Eatua or God, in gratitude for his happy escape; this being approved of by the other Indian, the fish was cast into the sea. Capt. Cook now passed by a small island which was supposed to be inhabited only by fishermen, as it seemed to be barren, and Bare Island was the name given to it, and to a head-land in latitude 40 deg. 34 min. south, and longitude 182 deg. 55 min. west, because the Endeavour turned, he gave the name of Cape Turnagain. It was never certainly known whether New Zealand was an island before this vessel touched there: on this account, the lords of the admiralty had instructed Capt. Cook to sail along the coasts as far as 40 degrees south, and if the land extended farther, to return to the northward again. It was for this reason that the captain altered his course, when he arrived at the cape above-mentioned: the wind having likewise veered about to the south, he returned, sailing along the coast nearly in his former track. Between this and Cape Kidnappers Bay, the land is unequal, and somewhat resembles our downs and small villages, and many inhabitants were observed. The ship came
abreast

abreast of a peninsula, in Portland Island, named Terakako, on Wednesday the 19th. At this time a canoe with five Indians came up to the vessel. There were two chiefs among them, who came on board, and staid all night. One of these was a very comely person, and had an open and agreeable countenance. They were extremely grateful for the presents which they received, and displayed no small degree of curiosity. They would not eat or drink, but the servants devoured the victuals set before them with a most voracious appetite.

We gave the name of Gable End Foreland to a remarkable head-land, which we passed on the 19th. Three canoes appeared here, and one Indian came on board to whom we gave small presents before he withdrew.

Many of these Indians wore pieces of green-stone round their necks which were transparent, and resembled an emerald. These being examined, appeared to be a species of the nephritic stone. Several pieces of it were procured by Mr. Banks, and it appeared that this furnished the islanders with their principal ornaments. The form of some of their faces was agreeable; their noses were rather prominent than flat. Their dialect was not so guttural as that of others, and their language nearly resembled that of Otaheite.

On Friday the 20th we anchored in a bay two leagues to the north of the Foreland. To this bay we were invited by the natives in canoes, who behaved very amicably, and pointed to a place where they said we should find plenty of fresh water. We determined here to get some knowledge of the country, though the harbour was not so good a shelter from the weather as we expected. Two chiefs, whom we saw in the canoes, came on board, they were dressed in jackets, the one ornamented with tufts of red feathers, the other with dogs-skin. We presented to them linen and some spike nails, but they did not value the last so much as the inhabitants of the other islands. The rest of the Indians traded with us without the least imposition, and we directed Tupia to acquaint them of our views in coming thither; and

promise,

promise, that they should receive no injury, if they offered none to us. In the afternoon the chief returned; and towards the evening we went on shore, accompanied by the Captain, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Banks. We were courteously received by the inhabitants, who did not appear in numerous bodies, and in other instances were scrupulously attentive not to give offence. We made them several small presents, and in this agreeable tour round the bay, we had the pleasure of finding two streams of fresh water. We remained on shore all night, and the next day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander discovered several birds, among which were quails and large pigeons. Many stages for drying fish were observed near where we landed, and some houses with fences. We saw dogs with pointed ears, and very ugly. Sweet potatoes, like those which grow in America were found. The cloth plant grew spontaneous. In the neighbouring valleys the lands were laid out in regular plantations; and in the bay we caught plenty of crabs, cray-fish, and horse-mackarel, larger than those upon the English coasts. The low lands were planted with cacaoes; the hollows with gourds; but as to the woods they were almost impassable, on account of the number of supple-jacks which grew there. We went into several of the houses belonging to the natives, and met with a very civil reception; and, without the least reserve, they shewed us whatever we desired to see. At times we found them at their meals, which our presence never interrupted. At this season fish constituted their chief food; with which they eat, instead of bread, roots of a kind of fern; these when roasted upon a fire are sweet and clammy: in taste not disagreeable, though rather unpleasant from the number of their fibres. They have doubtless in other seasons of the year an abundance of excellent vegetables.

The women of this place paint their faces with a mixture of red ocre and oil, which, as they are very plain, renders them in appearance more homely. This kind of daubing being generally wet upon their cheeks and foreheads,

foreheads, was easily transferred to those who saluted them, as was frequently visible upon the noses of our people. The young ones, who were complete coquets, wore a petticoat, under which was a girdle, made of the blades of grass strongly perfumed, to which was pendant a small bunch of the leaves of some fragrant plant. The faces of the men were not in general painted; but they were daubed with dry red ocre from head to foot, their apparel not excepted. Though in personal cleanliness they were not equal to our friends at Otaheite, yet in some particulars they surpassed them; for their dwellings were furnished with privies, and they had dunghills upon which their offals and filth were deposited. Among the females chastity was lightly esteemed. They resorted frequently to the watering place, where they freely bestowed every favour that was requested. An officer meeting with an elderly woman, he accompanied her to her house, and having presented her with some cloth and beads, a young girl was singled out, with whom he was given to understand he might retire. Soon after an elderly man, with two women came in as visitors, who with much formality saluted the whole company, after the custom of the place, which is by gently joining the tips of their noses together. On his return, which was on Saturday the 21st, he was furnished with a guide, who whenever they came to a brook or rivulet took him on his back to prevent his being wet. Many of the natives were curiously tataowed, an old man in particular, was marked on the breast with curious figures. One of them had an axe made of the green stone, which we could not purchase, though sundry things were offered in exchange. These Indians at night dance in a very uncouth manner, with antic gestures, lolling out their tongues and making strange grimaces. In their dances old men as well as the young ones are capital performers.

In the evening, Mr. Banks, being apprehensive that we might be left on shore after it was dark, applied to the Indians for one of their canoes to convey us on board the ship. This they granted with an obliging manner.

manner. We were eight in number, and not being used to a vessel that required a nice balance, we overfet her in the surf. No one however was drowned, but it was concluded, to prevent a similar accident, that half our number should go at one time. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and Taiyota, were the first party who embarked again, and arrived safe at the ship, as did the remainder of our company, all not a little pleased with the good nature of our Indian friends, who cheerfully contributed their assistance, upon our second trip. During our stay on shore, several of them went out in their canoes and trafficked with the ship's company. At first they preferred the cloth of Otaheite to that of Europe, but in the course of a day it decreased in its value five hundred per cent. These people expressed strong marks of astonishment when shewn the bark and her apparatus. This bay, which we now determined to quit, the natives call Tegadoo, and it is situated in 38 deg. 10 min. south latitude.

On the 22^d in the evening, being Sunday, we weighed anchor and put to sea, but the wind being contrary we stood for another bay a little to the south, called by the natives Tolaga, in order to complete our wood and water, and to extend our correspondence with the natives. In this bay we came to an anchor, in about eleven fathom water, with a good sandy bottom, the north point of the bay bearing north by east, and the south point south east. We found a watering-place in a small cove a little within the south-point of the bay, which bore south by east, distant about a mile. Several canoes with Indians on board, trafficked with us very fairly for glass bottles.

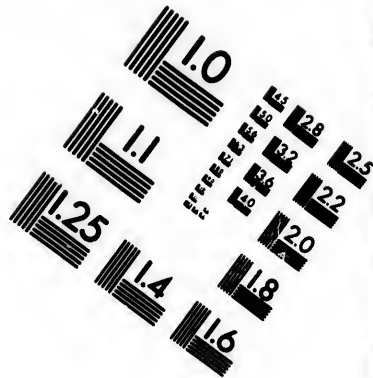
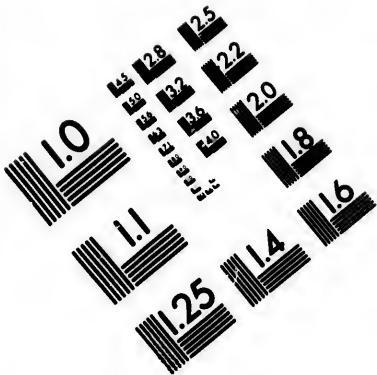
On Monday the 23^d in the afternoon, we went on shore accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the captain. We examined and found the water extremely good; also plenty of wood; and the natives shewed us as much civility as those from whom we had lately departed. At this watering-place we set up an astronomical quadrant, and took several solar and lunar observations. In the morning of the 24th, Mr.

Gore

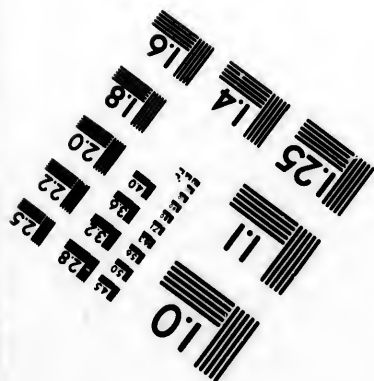
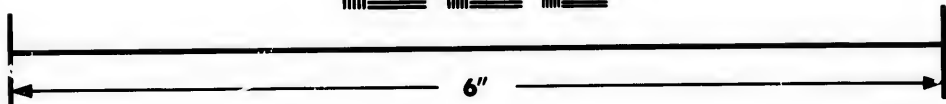
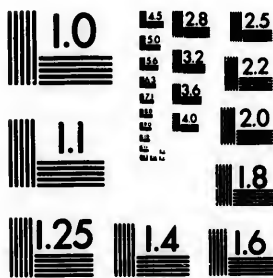
Gore and the marines were sent on shore to guard the people employed in cutting wood and filling the casks with water. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and the doctor also went on shore: the latter were employed in collecting plants. In our walks through the vales we saw many houses uninhabited, the natives residing chiefly in sheds, on the ridges of the hills, which are very steep. In a valley between two very high hills, we saw a curious rock that formed a large arch, opposite the sea. This cavern was in length about seventy feet, in breadth thirty, and near fifty in height, commanding a view of the bay and hills on the other side, which had a very pleasing effect. Indeed the whole country about the bay is agreeable beyond description, and, if properly cultivated, would be a most fertile spot. The hills are clothed with beautiful flowering shrubs, intermixed with a number of tall, stately palms, which perfume the air, making it perfectly odoriferous. Mr. Banks and the doctor, among other trees that yielded a fine transparent gum, discovered the cabbage-tree, the produce whereof when boiled, was very good. We met with various kinds of edible herbage in great abundance, and many trees that produced fruit fit to eat. The plant from which the cloth is made, is a kind of *Hemerocallis*; its leaves afford a strong glossy flax, equally adapted to cloathing, and making of ropes. Sweet potatoes and plantains are cultivated near the houses.

On our return we met an old man who entertained us with the military exercises of the natives, which are performed with the Patoo-Patoo and the lance. The former has been already mentioned, and is used as a battle-axe: the latter is eighteen or twenty feet in length, made of extreme hard wood, and sharpened at each end. A stake was substituted for a supposed enemy. The old warrior first attacked him with his lance, advancing with a most furious aspect. Having pierced him, the patoo-patoo was used to demolish his head, at which he struck with a force which would at one blow have split any man's skull: from whence we





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25

10
11

concluded no quarter was given by these people to their foes in time of action.

The natives in this part are not very numerous. They are tolerably well shaped, but lean and tall. Their faces resemble those of the Europeans. Their noses are aquiline, their eyes dark coloured, their hair black, which is tied upon the top of their heads, and the mens beards are of a moderate length. Their tataowing is done very curiously, in various figures, which makes their skin resemble carving; it is confined to the principal men, the females and servants using only red paint, with which they daub their faces, that otherwise would not be disagreeable. Their cloth is white, glossy, and very even; it is worn principally by the men, though it is wrought by the women, who, indeed, are condemned to all drudgery and labour.

On the 25th we set up the armourers forge on shore for necessary uses, and got our wood and water without the least molestation from the natives, with whom we exchanged glass bottles and beads for different sorts of fish. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again in search of plants. Tupia, who was with them, engaged in a conversation with one of the priests, and they seemed to agree in their opinions upon the subject of religion. Tupia, in the course of this conference, enquired whether the report of their eating men was founded in truth, to which the priest answered, it was, but that they eat none but declared foes, after they were killed in war. This idea so savage and barbarous, proved, however, that they carried their resentment even beyond death.

On the 17th, Capt. Cook and Dr. Solander went to inspect the bay, when the doctor was not a little surprised to find the natives in the possession of a boy's top, which they knew how to spin by whipping it, and he purchased it out of curiosity. Mr. Banks was during this time employed in attaining the summit of a steep hill, that had previously engaged their attention, and near it he found many inhabited houses. There were two rows of poles about fourteen or fifteen feet high,

high, covered over with sticks, which made an avenue of about five feet in width, extending near a hundred yards down the hill, in an irregular line: the intent of this erection was not discovered. When the gentlemen met at the watering place, the Indians sang their war song, which was a strange medley of shouting, sighing, and grimace, at which the women assisted. The next day Capt. Cook and other gentlemen went upon the island at the entrance of the bay, and met with a canoe that was 67 feet in length, six in breadth, and four in height; her bottom, which was sharp, consisted of three trunks of trees, and the sides and head were curiously carved.

We also came to a large unfinished house. The posts which supported it were ornamented with carvings, that did not appear to be done upon the spot, and as the inhabitants seemed to set great value upon works of this kind, future navigators might find their advantage in carrying such articles to trade with. Though the posts of this house were judged to be brought here, the people seemed to have a taste for carving; as their boats, paddles, and tops of walking sticks evince. Their favourite figure is a volute or spiral, which is sometimes single, double, and triple, and is done with great exactness, though the only instruments we saw were an axe made of stone, and a chissel. Their taste, however, is extremely whimsical and extravagant, scarcely ever imitating nature. Their huts are built under trees, their form is an oblong square: the door low on the side, and the windows are at the ends; reeds covered with thatch compose the walls; the beams of the eaves, which come to the ground, are covered with thatch; most of the houses had been deserted, through fear of the English, upon their landing. There are many beautiful parrots, and great numbers of birds of different kinds, particularly one whose note resembles the European black-bird; but here is no ground fowl or poultry, nor any quadrupedes, excepts rats and dogs, and these were not numerous. The dogs are considered as delicate food, and their skins serve for ornaments

ornaments to their apparel. There is a great variety of fish in the bay, shell and cray fish are very plentiful, some of the latter weigh near 12 pounds.

Sunday, October the 29th, we set sail from this bay. It is situate in latitude 38 deg. 22 min. south, four leagues to the north of Gable End Foreland; there are two high rocks at the entrance of the bay, which form a cove very good for procuring wood and water. There is a high rocky island off the north point of the bay, which affords good anchorage, having a fine sandy bottom, and from seven to thirteen fathom water, and is likewise sheltered from all but the north-east wind. We obtained nothing here in trade but some sweet potatoes, and a little fish. This is a very hilly country, though it presents the eye with an agreeable verdure, various woods and many small plantations. Mr. Banks found a great number of trees in the woods, quite unknown to Europeans, the fire wood resembled the maple-tree, and produced a gum of whitish colour; other trees yielded a gum of a deep yellow green. The only roots were yams and sweet potatoes, though the soil appears very proper for producing every species of vegetables.

On Monday the 30th, sailing to the northward, we fell in with a small island about a mile distant from the north-east point of the main, and this being the most eastern part of it, the captain named it East Cape, and the island East Island; it was but small, and appeared barren. The cape is in latitude 37 deg. 42 min. 30 sec. south. There are many small bays from Tolaga Bay to East Cape. Having doubled the cape, many villages presented themselves to view, and the adjacent land appeared cultivated. In the evening of the 30th, Lieutenant Hicks discovered a bay to which his name was given. Next morning, about nine, several canoes came off from shore with a number of armed men, who appeared to have hostile intentions. Before these had reached the ship, another canoe, larger than any that had yet been seen, full of armed Indians, came off, and made towards the Endeavour with great expedition.

pedition. The captain now judging it expedient to prevent, if possible, their attacking him, ordered a gun to be fired over their heads. This not producing the desired effect, another gun was fired with ball, which threw them into such consternation that they immediately returned much faster than they came. This precipitate retreat, induced the captain to give the cape, off which it happened, the name of Cape Runaway; it lies in latitude 37 deg. 32 min. south, and longitude 181 deg. 48 min. west.

On the 31st, we found that the land, which during this day's run appeared like an island, was one, and we named the same White Island.

On the 1st of November, at day-break, not less than between 40 and 50 canoes were seen, several of which came off as before, threatening to attack the English. One of their chiefs flourished his pike, and made several harangues, seeming to bid defiance to those on board the vessel. At last, after repeated invitations, they came close along-side; but instead of shewing a disposition to trade, the haranguing chief uttered a sentence, and took up a stone which he threw against the ship, and immediately after they seized their arms. They were informed by Tupia, of the dreadful consequences of commencing hostilities; but this admonition they seemed little to regard. A piece of cloth, however, happening to attract their eyes, they began to be more mild and reasonable. A quantity of cray fish, muscles, and conger eels was now purchased. No fraud was attempted by this company of Indians, but some others that came after them, took goods from the vessel without making proper returns. As one of them that had rendered himself remarkable for these practices, and seemed proud of his skill in them, was putting off with his canoe, a musquet was fired over his head, which circumstance produced good order for the present. Yet when these savages began to traffic with the sailors, they renewed their frauds; and one of them was bold enough to seize some linen that was hung to dry, and run away with it. In order to induce him to return,

return, a musquet was first fired over his head, but this not answering the end, he was shot in the back with small shot, yet he still persevered in his design. This being perceived by his countrymen, they dropped a-stern, and set up the song of defiance. In consequence of their behaviour, though they made no preparations to attack the vessel, the captain gave orders to fire a four pounder, which passed over them; but its effect on the water terrified them so much, that they retreated with precipitation to the shore.

In the afternoon, about two o'clock, we discovered a pretty high island to the westward. Some time after perceiving other rocks and islands in the same quarter, but not being able to weather them before night came on, we bore up between them and the main land. In the evening a double canoe, built after the same fashion as those of Otaheite, came up, when Tupia entered into a friendly conversation with the Indians, and was told that the island, close to which we lay, was called Mowtohora. It was but a few miles from the main land, pretty high, but of no great extent. We imagined the disposition of the Indians, from their talk with Tupia, to be in our favour, but, when it was dark they began their usual salute, by pouring a volley of stones into the ship and then retreated. South-west by west of this island, upon the main land, and in the center of a large plain, is a high circular mountain, to which we gave the name of Mount Edgecombe. It is very conspicuous, and is seated in latitude 37 deg. 59 min. longitude 193 deg. 7 min.

The next morning, being the 2nd, a number of canoes appeared, and one, which proved to be the same that had pelted us the night before, came up. After conversing with Tupia, and behaving peaceably about an hour, they complimented us with another volley of stones. We returned the salute by firing a musket, which made them instantly take to their paddles. Between ten and eleven we sailed between a low flat island and the main land. The last appeared to be of a moderate height, but level, full of plantations and villages.

ages. The villages were upon the high land next the sea, more extensive than any we had seen, and surrounded by a ditch, and a bank with rails on the top of it. There were some inclosures that resembled forts, and the whole had the appearance of places calculated for defence.

On the 3d, we passed the night near a small island, which Capt. Cook named the Mayor; and at seven in the morning, distant from hence about six leagues, we discovered a cluster of small islands, which we called the Court of Aldermen. These were twelve miles from the main, between which were other small islands, mostly barren, but very high. The aspect of the main land was now much changed, the soil appearing to be barren, and the country very thinly inhabited. The chief who governed the district from Cape Turnagain to this coast was named Teratu. In the afternoon three canoes, built differently from those already mentioned, came along-side the Endeavour. They were formed of the trunks of whole trees, rendered hollow by burning; but they were not carved, nor in any manner ornamented. We now sailed towards an inlet that had been discovered, and having anchored in seven fathom water, the ship was soon surrounded by a number of canoes, and the people on board them did not seem disposed for some time to commit any acts of hostility. A bird being shot by one of our crew, some Indians, without shewing any surprise brought it on board; and for their civility the captain gave them a piece of cloth. But this favour operated upon them in a different manner than was expected; for when it was dark, they begun a song of defiance, and endeavoured to carry off the buoy of the anchor; and notwithstanding some musquets were fired at them, they seemed rather to be irritated than frightened. They even threatened to return the next morning; but on Sunday night eleven of them were to be seen, and these retired when they found the ship's crew were upon their guard.

On the 4th at day break no less than twelve canoes
made

made their appearance, containing near two hundred men, armed with spears, lances, and stones, who seemed determined to attack the ship, and would have boarded her, had they known on what quarter they could best have made their attack. While they were paddling round her, which kept the crew upon the watch in the rain, Tupia, at the request of the captain, used a number of dissuasive arguments, to prevent their carrying their apparent designs into execution; but we could not pacify them by the fire of our musquets: they then laid aside their hostile intentions, and began to trade; yet they could not refrain from their fraudulent practices; for after they had fairly bartered two of their weapons, they would not deliver up a third, for which they had received cloth, and only laughed at those who demanded an equivalent. The offender was wounded with small shot; but his countrymen took not the least notice of him, and continued to trade without any discomposure. When another canoe was struck for their mal-practices, the natives behaved in the same manner; but if a round was fired over or near them, they all paddled away. Thus we found, that theft and chicane, were as prevalent among the inhabitants of New Zealand, as those of Otaheite. In searching for an anchoring place, the captain saw a fortified village upon a high point, and having fixed upon a proper spot, he returned; upon which we weighed, run in nearer to the shore, and cast anchor upon a sandy bottom, in four fathom and a half water. The south point of the bay bore due east, distant one mile, and a river which the boats can enter at low water south south-east, distant a mile and an half.

On the 5th, in the morning, the Indians came off to the ship again, who behaved much better than they had done the preceding day. An old man in particular named Tojava, testified his prudence and honesty, to whom and a friend with him, the captain presented some nails, and two pieces of English cloth. Tojava informed us, that they were often visited by free-booters from the north, who stripped them of all they could lay their

their hands on, and at times made captives of their wives and children; and that being ignorant who the English were upon their first arrival, the natives had been much alarmed, but were now satisfied of their good intentions. He added, that for their security against those plunderers, their houses were built contiguous to the tops of the rocks, where they could better defend themselves. Probably their poverty and misery may be ascribed to the ravages of those who frequently stript them of every necessary of life. Having dispatched the long-boat and pinnace into the bay to haul and dredge for fish, but with little success, the Indians on the banks testified their friendship by every possible means. They brought us great quantities of fish dressed and dried, which though indifferent, we purchased, that trade might not be discouraged. They also supplied us with wood and good water. While we were out with our guns, the people who staid by the boats saw two of the natives fight. The battle was begun with their lances; but some old men taking these away, they were obliged to decide the quarrel, like Englishmen, with their fists. For some time they boxed with great vigour and perseverance, but at length they all retired behind a little hill, so that our people were prevented from seeing the issue of the combat. At this time the Endeavour being very foul, she was heeled, and her bottom scrubbed in the bay.

On the 8th, we were visited by several canoes, in one of which was Tojava, who, descrying two canoes, hastened back again to the shore, apprehending they were freebooters; but finding his mistake, he soon returned; and the Indians supplied us with as much excellent fish as served the whole ship's company. This day a variety of plants were collected by Mr. Banks and Doctor Solander, who had never observed any of the kind before. They staid on shore till near dark, when they observed how the natives disposed of themselves during the night. They had no shelter but a few shrubs. The men lay nearest the sea in a semicircular form; and the women and children most distant from it. They had no king whose sovereignty they acknow-

ledged, a circumstance not to be paralleled on any other parts of the coast.

Early in the morning of the 9th the Indians brought in their canoes a prodigious quantity of mackarel, of which one sort were exactly the same with those caught in England. They sold them at a low rate, and they were not less welcome to us on that account. These canoes were succeeded by others equally loaded with the same sort of fish; and the cargoes purchased were so great, that every one of the ship's company who could get salt, cured as many as would serve him for a month's provision. The Indians frequently resort to the bay in parties to gather shell-fish, of which it affords an incredible plenty. Indeed wherever we went, whether on the hills, or through the vales, in the woods or on the plains, we saw many waggon loads of shells in heaps, some of which appeared fresh, others very old.

This being a very clear day, Mr. Green, the astronomer, landed with other gentlemen to observe the transit of Mercury. The observation of the ingress was made by Mr. Green alone, and Capt. Cook took the sun's altitude to ascertain the time. While the observation was making, a canoe, with various commodities on board, came along-side the ship; and Mr. Gore, the officer who had then the command, being desirous of encouraging them to traffic, produced a piece of Otaheitean cloth, of more value than any they had yet seen, which was immediately seized by one of the Indians, who obstinately refused either to return it, or give any thing in exchange: he paid dearly however for his temerity, being shot dead upon the spot. The death of this young Indian alarmed all the rest; they fled with great precipitancy, and, for the present, could not be induced to renew their traffic with the English. But when the Indians on shore had heard the particulars related by Tojava, who greatly condemned the conduct of the deceased, they seemed to think that he had merited his fate. His name was Otirreeonooe. This transaction happened, as has been mentioned, whilst the observation was making of the transit of Mercury, when the

the weather was so favourable, that the whole transit was viewed, without a cloud intervening. The transit commenced seven hours, 20 min. 58 sec. By Mr. Green's observation the internal contact was at 12 hours, eight min. 57 sec. the external at 12 hours nine min. 55 sec. the latitude 30 deg. 48 min. five sec. In consequence of this observation having been made here, this bay was called Mercury Bay.

On the 10th, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the captain went in boats to inspect a large river that runs into the bay. They found it broader some miles within than at the mouth, and intersected into a number of streams, by several small islands, which were covered with trees. On the east side of the river, the gentlemen shot some shags, which proved very good eating. The shore abounded with fish of various kinds, such as cockles, clams, and oysters; and here were also ducks, shags, and curlews, with other wild fowl in great plenty. At the mouth of the river there was good anchorage in five fathom water. The gentlemen were received with great hospitality by the inhabitants of a little village on the east side of the river. There are there the remains of a fort called Eppah, on a peninsula that projects into the river, and it was calculated for defending a small number against a greater force. From the remains, it nevertheless seemed to have been taken and partly destroyed. The Indians sup before sun-set, when they eat fish and birds baked or roasted; they roast them upon a stick, stuck in the ground near the fire, and bake them in the manner the dog was baked, which the gentlemen eat at George's Island. A female mourner was present at one of their suppers; she was seated upon the ground, and wept incessantly, at the same time repeating some sentences in a doleful manner, but which Tupia could not explain; at the termination of each period she cut herself with a shell upon her breast, her hands, or her face; notwithstanding this bloody spectacle greatly affected the gentlemen present, yet all the Indians who sat by her, except one, were quite unmoved. The gentlemen saw some, who from the depth of their scars

must, upon these occasions, have wounded themselves more violently.

Great plenty of oysters were procured from a bed which had been discovered, and they proved exceedingly good. Next day the ship was visited by two canoes, with unknown Indians; after some invitation they came on board, and they all trafficked without any fraud. Two fortified villages being deserted, the Captain, with Mr. Bank, and Dr. Solander, went to examine them. The smallest was romantically situated upon a rock, which was arched; this village did not consist of above five or six houses, fenced round. There was but one path, which was very narrow, that conducted to it. The gentlemen were invited by the inhabitants to pay them a visit, but not having time to spare, took another route, after having made presents to the females. A body of men, women, and children now approached the gentlemen; these proved to be the inhabitants of another town, which they proposed visiting. They gave many testimonies of their friendly dispositions; among others they uttered the word Heromai, which according to Tupia's interpretation, implied peace, and appeared much satisfied, when informed the gentlemen intended visiting their habitations. Their town was named Wharretouwa. It is seated on a point of land over the sea, on the north side of the bay, and was piled round, and defended by a double ditch. Within the ditch a stage is erected for defending the place in case of an attack; near this stage, quantities of darts and stones are deposited that they may always be in readiness to repel the assailants. There is another stage to command the path that leads to the town; and there were some out-works. The place seemed calculated to hold out a considerable time against an enemy armed with no other weapons than those of the Indians. It appeared however deficient in water for holding out a siege. Instead of bread, they had fern root, which was here in great plenty, with dried fish. Very little of the land was cultivated, and sweet potatoes and yams were the only vegetables to be found. There are two rocks near the fort of this fortification,

fortification, both separated from the main land; they are very small, nevertheless they are not without dwelling-houses and little fortifications. In their engagements, these Indians throw stones with their hands, being destitute of a sling, and those and lances are their only missible weapons; they have, besides the patoopatoo, already described, a staff about five feet in length and another shorter. We sailed from this bay, after having taken possession of it in the name of the king of Great Britain, on the 15th of November. Tojava, who visited us in his canoe just before our departure, said, he should prepare to retire to his fort as soon as the English were gone, as the relations of Otirreonooe had threatened to take his life, as a forfeit for that of the deceased, Tojava being judged partial in this affair to the English.

Towards the north-west, a number of islands of different sizes appeared, which were named Mercury Islands; Mercury Bay lies in latitude 36 deg. 47 min. south; longitude 184 deg. 4 min. west, and has a small entrance at its mouth. On account of the number of oysters found in the river, the captain gave it the name of Oyster River: Mangrove River (which the captain so called from the great number of those trees that grew near it) is the most secure place for shipping, being at the head of the bay. The north-west side of this bay and river appeared much more fertile than the east side. The inhabitants, though numerous, have no plantations. Their canoes are very indifferently constructed, and are not ornamented at all. They lie under continual apprehensions of Terratu, being considered by him as rebels. Shore iron sand is to be found in plenty on this coast, which proves that there are mines of metal up the country, it being brought down from thence by a rivulet.

On the 18th in the morning, we steered between the main, and an island which seemed very fertile, and as extensive as Ulietea. Several canoes filled with Indians, came along-side here, and the Indians sang their war song, but the Endeavour's people paying them no attention, they threw a volley of stones, and then paddled

dled away; however they presently returned their insults. Tupia spoke to them, making use of his old arguments, that inevitable destruction would ensue if they persisted; they answered by brandishing their weapons, intimating, that if the English durst come on shore, they would destroy them all. Tupia still continued in expostulating with them, but to no purpose: and they soon gave another volley of stones; but upon a musquet being fired at one of their boats, they made a precipitate retreat. We cast anchor in 23 fathom water in the evening, and early the next morning sailed up an inlet. Soon after two canoes came off, and some of the Indians came on board: they knew Tojava very well, and called Tupia by his name. Having received from us some presents, they retired peaceably, and apparently highly gratified.

On Monday the 20th, after having run five leagues from the place where we had anchored the night before, we came to an anchor in a bay called by the natives Ooahaouragee. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and others set off in the pinnace to examine the bottom of the bay, and found the inlet end of a river, about nine miles above the ship. We entered into the same with the first of the flood, and before we had proceeded three miles, the water was perfectly fresh. Here we saw an Indian town, built upon a small dry sand-bank, and entirely surrounded by a deep mud; the inhabitants of which with much cordiality invited us to land, and gave us a most friendly reception. We were now fourteen miles up the river, and finding little alteration in the face of the country, we landed on the west side to examine the lofty trees which adorned its banks, and were of a kind that we had not seen before. At the entrance of a wood we met with one ninety-eight feet high from the ground, quite strait, and nineteen feet in circumference; and as we advanced we found others still larger. The wood of these trees is very heavy, not fit for masts but would make exceeding fine planks. Our carpenter, who was with us, observed, that the timber resembled that of the pitch pine which is lightened by tapping. There were also trees
of

of other kinds, all unknown to us, specimens of which we brought away. We reembarked about three o'clock with the first of the ebb, and Capt. Cook gave to the river the name of the Thames, it having a resemblance to the river of that name in England. It is not so deep, but it is as broad as the Thames is at Greenwich, and the tide of flood is as strong. On the evening of the 21st we reached the ship, all extremely tired, but happy at being on board.

On the 22d, early in the morning, we made sail, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. The captain and Dr. Solander went on shore to the west, but made no observations worth relating. After these gentlemen departed, the ship was surrounded with canoes, which kept Mr. Banks on board, that he might trade with the Indians, who bartered their arms and cloaths for paper, taking no unfair advantages. But though they were in general honest in their dealings, one of them took a fancy to a half minute glass, and being detected in secreting the same, it was resolved to give him a smatch of the cat-o'nine-tails. The Indians interfered to stop the current of justice; but being opposed they got their arms from their canoes, and some of the people in them attempted to get on board. Mr. Banks and Tupia now coming upon deck, the Indians applied to Tupia, who informed them of the nature of the offender's intended punishment, and that he had no influence over Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer. They appeared pacified, and the criminal received not only a dozen, but afterwards a good drubbing from an old man, who was thought to be his father. The canoes immediately went off, the Indians saying, they should be afraid to return again on board. Tupia, however, brought them back, but they seemed to have lost that confidence which they before reposed in us. Their stay was short, and after their departure we saw them not again, though they had promised to return with some fish.

On the 23d, the weather still continuing unfavourable, and the wind contrary, we kept plying down the river,

river, anchoring between the tides; and at the north west extremity of the Thames, we passed a point of land which the captain called Point Rodney; and another, at the north east extremity, when we entered the bay, he named Cape Colville, in honour of Lord Colville. Not being able to approach land, we had but a distant view of the main for a course of near thirty miles. Under the name of the river Thames, the captain comprehended the whole bay. Cape Colville is to be distinguished by a high rock, and lies in 36 deg. 26 min. of south latitude, and 194 deg. 27 min. west longitude. The Thames runs south by east from the southern point of the cape. In some parts it is three leagues over, for about fourteen leagues, after which it becomes narrow. In some parts of the bay the water is 26 fathoms deep; the depth diminishes gradually, and in general the anchorage is good. To some islands that shelter it from the sea Captain Cook gave the name of Barrier Islands; they stretch north-west and south-east ten leagues. The country seemed to be thinly inhabited; the natives are well made, strong, and active; their bodies are painted with red ocre, and their canoes, which are well constructed, were ornamented with carved work.

On the 24th, we continued steering along the shore between the islands and the main; and in the evening anchored in an open bay, in about fourteen fathom water. Here we caught a large number of fish of the sciennie, or bream kind, enough to supply the whole ship's company with provision for two days. From our success Capt. Cook named this place Bream Bay, and the extreme points at the north end of the bay he called Bream Head. Several pointed rocks stand in a range upon the top of it, and some small islands which lie before it were called the Hen and Chickens. It is situated in latitude 35 deg. 46 min. seventeen leagues north-west of Cape Colville. There is an extent of land, of about thirty miles, between Point Rodney and Bream Head, woody and low. No inhabitants were visible; but from the fires perceived at night, we concluded it was inhabited.

On the 25th, early in the morning, we left the bay, and continued our course slowly to the northward; at noon our latitude was 36 deg. 36 min. south, and we saw some islands which we named the Poor Knights, at north-east by north, distant three leagues; the northernmost land in sight bore N. N. W. we were now at the distance of two miles from the shore, and had twenty-six fathom water. Upon the islands were a few towns that appeared fortified, and the land round them seemed well inhabited.

On the 26th, towards night, seven large canoes came off to us, with about two hundred men. Some of the Indians came on board, and let us know, that they had an account of our arrival. These were followed by two larger canoes, adorned with carving. The Indians, after having held a conference, came a-long side of the vessel. They were armed with various weapons, and seemed to be of the higher order. Their patoo-patoos were made of stone and whale-bone, ornamented with dog's hair, and were held in high estimation. Their complexion was darker than that of those to the south, and their faces were stained with amoco. They were given to pilfering, of which one of them gave an instance pretending to barter a piece of talc, wrought into the shape of an axe, for a piece of cloth; nor was he disposed to fulfil his agreement, till we compelled him to do it, by firing a musquet over his head, which brought him back to the ship, and he returned the cloth. At three in the afternoon we passed a remarkable high point of land, bearing west, and it was called Cape Brett, in honour of Sir Piercy Brett. At the point of this cape is a round high hillock, and north-east by north, distant about a mile, is a curious arched rock, like that which has been already described. This cape, or at least part of it, is called by the natives Motugogo, and lies in 35 deg. 10 min. 30 sec. south latitude, and in 185 deg. 23 min. west longitude. To the south-west by west is a bay, in which is many small islands, and the point at the north-west entrance the captain named Point Pococke. There are many villages on the main, as well as on the islands, which appeared

well inhabited, and several canoes filled with Indians made to the ship, and in the course of bartering shewed the same inclination to defraud as their neighbours. These Indians were strong and well proportioned; their hair black, and tied up in a bunch stuck with feathers: their chiefs had garments made of fine cloth, decorated with dog's skin; and they were tataowed like those who had last appeared.

On the 27th. at eight in the morning, we found ourselves within a mile of many small islands, laying close under the main, at the distance of twenty-two miles from Cape Brett. Here we lay about two hours, during which time several canoes came off from the islands, which we called Cavalles, the name of some fish which we purchased of the Indians. These people were very insolent, using many frantic gestures, and pelting us with stones. Nor did they give over their insults, till some small shot hit one who had a stone in his hand. A general terror was now spread among them, and they all made a very precipitate retreat. For several days the wind was so very unfavourable, that the vessel rather lost than gained ground.

On the 29th, having weathered Cape Brett, we bore away to leeward, and got into a large bay, where we anchored on the south-west side of several islands, and suddenly came into four fathoms and a half water. Upon sounding, we found we had got upon a bank, and accordingly weighed and dropped over it, and anchored again in ten fathoms and a half, after which we were surrounded by thirty-three large canoes, containing near three hundred Indians all armed. Some of them were admitted on board, and Captain Cook gave a piece of broad cloth to one of the chiefs, and some small presents to the other. They traded peaceably for some time, being terrified at the fire-arms, with the effects of which they were not unacquainted; but whilst the captain was at dinner, on a signal given by one of the chiefs, all the Indians quitted the ship, and attempted to tow away the buoy; a musquet was now fired over them, but it produced no effect; small shot was then fired at them, but it did not reach them. A musquet

musquet loaded with ball, was therefore ordered to be fired, and Otegoowgoow (son of one of the chiefs) was wounded in the thigh by it, which induced them immediately to throw the buoy overboard. To complete their confusion, a round shot was fired, which reached the shore, and as soon as they landed, they ran in search of it. If these Indians had been under any kind of military discipline, they might have proved a much more formidable enemy; but acting thus, without any plan or regulation, they only exposed themselves to the annoyance of the fire-arms, whilst they could not possibly succeed in any of their designs. The Captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, landed upon the island, and the Indians in the canoes soon after came on shore. The gentlemen were in a small cove, and were presently surrounded by near 400 armed Indians; but the captain not suspecting any hostile design on the part of the natives, remained peaceably disposed. The gentlemen, marching towards them, drew a line, intimating that they were not to pass it: they did not infringe upon this boundary for some time; but at length, they sang the song of defiance, and began to dance, whilst a party attempted to draw the Endeavour's boat on shore; these signals for an attack being immediately followed by the Indians breaking in upon the line, the gentlemen judged it time to defend themselves, and accordingly the captain fired his musquet, loaded with small shot, which was seconded by Mr. Banks's discharging his piece, and two of the men followed his example. This threw the Indians into confusion, and they retreated, but were rallied again by one of the chiefs, who shouted and waved his patoo-patoo. The Doctor now pointed his musquet at this hero, and hit him: this stopped his career, and he took to flight with the other Indians. They retired to an eminence in a collected body, and seemed dubious whether they should return to the charge. They were now at too great a distance for a ball to reach them, but these operations being observed from the ship, she brought her broadside to bear, and by firing over them, soon dispersed them. The Indians had in their skirmish two of their

people wounded, but none killed: peace being thus restored, the gentlemen began to gather celery and other herbs, but suspecting that some of the natives were lurking about with evil designs, they repaired to a cave, which was at a small distance. Here they found the chief, who had that day received a present from the captain; he came forth with his wife and brother, and solicited their clemency. It appeared, that one of the wounded Indians was a brother of this chief, who was under great anxiety lest the wound should prove mortal; but his grief was in a great degree alleviated, when he was made acquainted with the different effects of small shot and ball; he was at the same time assured, that upon any farther hostilities being committed, ball would be used. This interview terminated very cordially, after some trifling presents were made to the chief and his companions. The prudence of the gentlemen cannot be much commended: for had these 400 Indians bodily rushed in upon them at once with their weapons, the musquetry could have done very little execution; but supposing twenty or thirty of the Indians had been wounded, as it does not appear their pieces were loaded with ball, but only small shot, there would have remained a sufficient number to have massacred them, as it appears they do not give any quarter, and none could have been expected upon this occasion. It is true, when the ship brought her broadside to bear, she might have made great havock amongst the Indians; but this would have been too late to save the party on shore.— Being in their boats, the English rowed to another part of the same island, when landing and gaining an eminence, they had a very agreeable and romantic view of a great number of small islands, well inhabited and cultivated. The inhabitants of an adjacent town approached unarmed, and testified great humility and submission. Some of the party on shore who had been very violent for having the Indians punished for their fraudulent conduct, were now guilty of trespasses equally reprehensible, having forced into some of the plantations, and dug up potatoes. The captain, upon this occasion shewed strict justice in punishing each of the offenders

offenders with twelve lashes: one of them being very refractory upon this occasion, and complaining of the hardship, thinking an Englishman had a right to plunder an Indian with impunity, received six additional lashes for his reward.

On the 30th, it being a dead calm, two boats were sent to sound the harbour; when many canoes came up and traded with great probity; the gentlemen went again on shore and met with a very civil reception from the natives; and this friendly intercourse continued all the time they remained in the bay, which was several days. Being upon a visit to the old chief, he shewed them the instruments used in tataowing, which were very like those employed at Otaheite upon the like occasion. They saw the man who had been wounded by the ball, when the attempt was made to carry off the ship's buoy; and though it had gone through the fleshy part of his arm, it did not seem to give him the least pain or uneasiness.

On Tuesday the 5th of December in the morning, we weighed anchor, but were soon becalmed, and a strong current setting towards the shore, we were driven in with such rapidity, that we expected every moment to be run upon the breakers, which appeared above water not more than a cable's length distance, and we were so near the land, that Tupia, who was totally ignorant of the danger, held a conversation with the Indians, who were standing on the beach. We were happily relieved however from this alarming situation by a fresh breeze suddenly springing up from the shore. The bay which we had left was called the Bay of Islands, on account of the numerous islands it contains; we caught but few fish while we lay there, but procured great plenty from the natives, who were extremely expert in fishing, and displayed great ingenuity in the form of their nets, which were made of a kind of grass; they were two or three hundred fathoms in length, and remarkably strong, and they have them in such plenty that it is scarcely possible to go a hundred yards without meeting with numbers lying in heaps. These people did not appear to be under the government

ment of any particular chief or sovereign, and they seemed to live in a perfect state of friendship, notwithstanding their villages were fortified. According to their observations upon the tides, the flood comes from the south, and there is a current from the west.

On the 7th of December, being Thursday, several observations of the sun and moon were made, whereby we found our latitude to be 185 deg. 36 min. west. In the afternoon we were close under the Cavalles. Several canoes put off and followed the Endeavour, but a light breeze springing up, we did not wait for them. The next morning, being the 8th, at ten o'clock we tacked and stood in for the shore, from which we were distant nearly six leagues. By day-light on the 9th we were in with the land, about seven leagues to the westward of the Cavalles; and soon after came to a deep bay, which was named Doubtless Bay. The entrance thereto is formed by two points, distant from each other five miles, and which lie west north-west and east south-east. The wind preventing us putting in here, we steered for the westernmost land in sight, and before we got the length of it, we were becalmed. During the calm we were visited by several canoes; but the Indians having heard of our guns, were afraid to come on board; however we bought some of their fish, and learned from them, by the assistance of Tupia, that we were about two days sail from a place called Moore Whennua, where the land changed its shape, and turning to the south extended no more westward. This place was concluded to be the land discovered by Tasman, which he called Cape Maria Van Diemen. They also informed us, that to the north-north-west there was an extensive country discovered by their ancestors, which they named Ulimaroa, where the inhabitants lived upon hogs, called in their language Booh, the very name given them, by those who inhabited the South-sea Islands.

On Sunday the 10th, a breeze springing up, we stood off to the north, and found by observation our latitude to be 34 deg. 44 min. south. On the 11th, early in the morning the land, with which we stood in, appeared
low

low and barren, but not destitute of inhabitants. It forms a peninsula, which the captain called Knuckle Point, and the bay that lies contiguous thereto he named Sandy Bay. In the middle of this is a high mountain, which we called Mount Camel, on account of its resemblance to that animal. We saw one village on the west side of this mount, and another on the east side. Several canoes put off but could not reach the ship, which tacked, and stood to the northward, till the afternoon of the 12th, when she stood to the north-east. Towards night we were brought under double reefed topsails; and in the morning it was so tempestuous as to split the main top-sail and the fore mizen-top sails. Early in the morning of the 14th we saw land to the southward, at the distance of eight or nine leagues; and on the 15th we tacked and stood to the westward. On the 16th we discovered land from the mast head, bearing south-south-west. On Sunday the 17th we tacked in thirty five fathom, and found we had not gained one inch to windward the last twenty-four hours. We saw a point of land, the northern extremity of New Zealand, which Capt. Cook named North Cape. It lies in latitude 34 deg. 22 min. south, and in 185 deg. 55 min. west longitude; we continued standing off and on till the 23d, when about seven o'clock we discovered land bearing south half east.

On the 24th we saw the same land south-east by south four leagues distant, which we judged to be the Islands of the Three Kings. The chief of these is in latitude 34 deg. 12 min. south, and 187 deg. 48 min. west longitude, and distant about 14 or 15 leagues from North Cape. Mr. Banks went out in the long-boat and shot some birds that nearly resembled geese, and they were very good eating. On Christmas-day, December the 25th, we tacked, and stood to the southward. On the 26th we had no land in sight, and were twenty leagues to the westward of North Cape. At mid-night we tacked and stood to the northward. On the 27th it blew a storm from the east, accompanied with heavy showers of rain, which compelled us to bring the ship to, under her main-sail. The gale continued till Thursday

day

day the 28th, when it fell about two o'clock in the morning; but at eight encreased to a hurricane, with a prodigious sea. At noon the gale somewhat abated, but we had still heavy squalls. On the 29th in the evening, we wore and stood to the north-west. On Saturday the 30th, we saw land bearing north-east, which we concluded to be Maria van Diemen; and it corresponded with the account we had received of it from the Indians. We wore at mid-night, and stood to the south-east. On the 31st we tacked at seven in the evening, and stood to the westward. We were now distant from the nearest land about three leagues, and had somewhat more than forty fathom water.

C H A P. VII.

The Endeavour continues her Voyage, January the 1st 1770, round North Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound—That part of the Coast described—Transactions in the Sound—She sails between two Islands, and returns to Cape Turnagain—A shocking Custom of the Inhabitants—A Visit to a Hippah, and other remarkable Particulars—The Circum-navigation of this Country completed—The Coast and Admiralty Bay described—The Departure of the Endeavour from New Zealand, and other remarkable Particulars—A descriptive Account of New Zealand—Its first Discovery by Tasman—Situation and Productions—An Account of the Inhabitants—Their Dress, Ornaments, and Manner of Life—Their canoes, Navigation, Tillage, Weapons, Music, Government, Religion, and Language—The Arguments in Favour of a Southern Continent controverted.

A. D. 1770. **J**anuary the 1st, on Monday at six in the morning, being New Year's Day, we tacked, and stood to the eastward. At noon we stood to the westward; found our latitude to be 34 deg. 37 min. south; our distance from the Three Kings ten or eleven leagues; and from Cape Maria van Diemen about

about four leagues and an half, in fifty-four fathom water. On the third we saw land; it was high and flat, trending away to the south-east, beyond the reach of the naked eye. It is remarkable, that at midsummer we met with a violent gale of wind, in latitude 35 south; and that we were three weeks in getting ten leagues to the westward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues, for at this time it was so long since we passed Cape Brett.

On the morning of the 4th we stood along shore. The coast appeared sandy, barren, dreary, and inhospitable. Steering northward on the 6th we saw land again, which we supposed to be Cape Maria. On the 7th we had light breezes, and were at times becalmed, when we saw a sun-fish, short and thick, with two large fins, but scarcely any tail, resembling a shark in colour and size. We continued steering east till the 9th, when we were off a point of land, which Capt. Cook named Woody Head. From the south-west we also saw a small island, and called it Gannet Island. Another point, remarkably high to the east-north-east, the captain named Albetros Point; on the north side whereof a bay is formed, promising good anchorage. At about two or three leagues distance from Albetros Point, to the north-east we discovered a remarkable high mountain, the peak of which is equal in height to that of Teneriffe. Its summit was covered with snow, and we gave it the name of mount Egmont, in honour of the earl of that name. It lies in latitude 39 deg. 16 min. south, and 185 deg. 15 min. west longitude. The country round it is exceeding pleasant, having an agreeable verdure intersected with woods, and the coast forms an extensive cape which Capt. Cook named Cape Egmont. To the north of this are two small islands, in the form of a sugar-loaf. This day being the 13th we had heavy showers of rain, accompanied with thunder and lightening. We continued to steer along the shore at the distance of between two and three leagues, and between seven and eight had a transient view of Mount Edgcombe, which bore north-west distant about ten leagues.

On the 14th when sailing south-east by south, the coast ran more southerly, and soon after five in the morning we saw land, for which we hauled up. At noon the north-west extremity bore south 63 west; and some high land, in appearance an island, bore south-south-east, distant five leagues. We were now in a bay, and by observation in latitude 40 deg. 27 min. south. longitude 184 deg. 39 min. west. In the evening at eight o'clock, the land that bore south 63 west, now bore north 59 west, distant seven leagues, and appeared like an island. Between this land and Cape Egmont lies the bay, on the west-side of which we were at this time. The land here is high and beautifully variegated with hills and vales. At this place Capt. Cook proposed to careen the ship, and to take a fresh supply of wood and water. Accordingly,

On the 15th at day-break, we steered for an inlet, when, it being almost a calm, the ship was carried by a current, or the tide, within a cable's length of the shore; but by the assistance of the boats she got clear. While effecting this, we saw a sea-lion, answering the description given of a male one in Commodore Anson's voyages. About one o'clock in the afternoon we hauled round the south-west point of the island, and the inhabitants of a village were immediately upon seeing us up in arms. At two we anchored in a very safe cove on the north-west side of the bay, and moored in eleven fathom water, with a soft ground. In passing the point of the bay we had observed an armed centinel on duty, who was twice relieved; and now four canoes came off, for purpose, as we imagined, of reconnoitring; for none of the Indians would venture on board, except an old man who seemed of elevated rank. His countrymen expostulated with him, laid hold of him, and took great pains to prevent his coming aboard, but they could not divert him from his purpose. We received him with the utmost civility and hospitality. Tupia and the old man joined noses, according to the custom of the country, and having received several presents, he retired to his associates, who began to dance and laugh, and then retired to their fortified village. Whether their expressions

sions of joy were tokens of enmity or friendship we could not determine, having seen them dance when inclined both to war and peace. Capt. Cook and other gentlemen now went on shore, at the bottom of the cove, where they met with plenty of wood, and a fine stream of excellent water, and on hauling the seine were very successful, having caught three hundred weight of fish in a short time, which was equally distributed among the ship's company.

On the 16th, at day-break, we were employed in careening the bark, when three canoes came off with a great number of Indians, who brought several of their women with them, which circumstance was thought to be a favourable presage of their peaceable disposition; but they soon convinced us of our mistake, by attempting to stop the long boat; upon which Captain Cook had recourse to the old expedient of firing shot over their heads, which intimidated them for the present; they soon gave fresh proofs of treacherous designs; for one of them snatched at some paper from our market-man, and missing it, put himself in a threatening attitude; whereupon some shot was fired, which wounded him in the knee; but Tupia still continued conversing with his companions, making enquiries concerning their traditions respecting the antiquities of their country. He also asked them, if they had ever before seen a ship as large as the Endeavour? to which they replied, that they had not, nor ever heard, that such a vessel had been on their coast, though Tasman certainly touched here, it being only four miles south of Murderer's Bay. In all the coves of this bay we found plenty of cuttle fish, breams, barracootas, gurnat, mackarel, dog-fish, soles, dabs, mullets, drums, scorpenas, or rock-fish, cole-fish, shags, chimeras, &c. The inhabitants catch their fish in the following manner. Their net is cylindrical, extended by several hoops at the bottom, and contracted at the top. The fish going in to feed upon the bait are caught in great abundance. In this island are birds of various kinds, and in great numbers, particularly parrots, wood-pigeons, water hens, hawks, and many different singing birds.

birds. An herb, a species of *Philadelphus*, was used here instead of tea, and a plant called *Tecoomme*, resembling rug-cloaks, served the natives for garments. The environs of the cove where the *Endeavour* lay is covered entirely with wood, and the supple jacks are so numerous, that it is with difficulty that passengers can pursue their way; here is a numerous sand-fly, that is very disagreeable. The tops of many hills were covered with fern. The air of the country is very moist, and has some qualities that promote putrefaction, as birds that had been shot but a few hours were found with maggots in them. The women who accompanied the men in their canoes, wore a head-dress, which we had no where met with before; it was composed of black feathers, tied in a bunch on the top of the head, which greatly increased its height. The manner of their disposing of their dead is very different to what is practised in their southern islands, they tie a large stone to the body, and throw it into the sea. We saw the body of a woman who had been disposed of this way, but which, by some accident had disengaged itself from the stone, and was floating upon the water. The captain, Mr. Banks, and the doctor visited another cove, about two miles from the ship. There was a family of Indians who were greatly alarmed at the approach of these gentlemen, all running away except one; but upon Tupia's conversing with him, the others returned. They found, by the provisions of this family, that they were cannibals, here being several human bones that had been lately dressed and picked, and it appeared that a short time before, six of their enemies having fallen into their hands, they had killed four and eaten them, and that the other two were drowned in endeavouring to make their escape. They made no secret of this abominable custom, but answered Tupia, who was desirous to ascertain the fact, with great composure, that his conjectures were just, that they were the bones of a man, and testified by signs, that they thought human flesh delicious food. Upon being asked, Why they had not eaten the body of the woman that had been floating upon the water? they answered,
She

She died of a disorder, and that moreover she was related to them, and they never ate any but their enemies. Upon Mr. Banks still testifying some doubts concerning the fact, one of the Indians drew the bone of a man's arm through his mouth, and this gentleman had the curiosity to bring it away with him. There was a woman in this family whose arms and legs were cut in a shocking manner, and it appeared she had thus wounded herself because her husband had lately been killed and eaten by the enemy. Some of the Indians brought four skulls one day to sell, which they rated at a very high price. The brains had been taken out, and probably eaten, but the skull and hair remained. They seemed to have been dried by fire, in order to preserve them from putrefaction. The gentlemen likewise saw the bail of a canoe, which was made of a human skull. On the whole their ideas were so horrid and brutish, that they seemed to pride themselves upon their cruelty and barbarity, and took a particular pleasure in shewing the manner in which they killed their enemies, it being considered as very meritorious to be expert at this destruction. The method used was to knock them down with their patoo-patoos, and then rip up their bellies.

Great numbers of birds usually begun their melody about two o'clock in the morning, and serenaded us till the time of their rising. This harmony was very agreeable, as the ship lay at a convenient distance from the shore to hear it. These feathered choristers, like the English nightingales, never sing in the day-time.

On the 17th, the ship was visited by a canoe from the hippah, or village; it contained, among others, the aged Indian, of superior distinction, who had first visited the English upon their arrival. In a conference which Tupia had with him, he testified his apprehensions, that their enemies would very soon visit them, and repay the compliment, for killing and eating the four men. On the 18th we received no visit from the Indians; but going out in the pinnace to inspect the bay, we saw a single man in a canoe fishing, in the manner already described. It was remarkable, that this

this man did not pay the least attention to the people in the pinnace, but continued to pursue his employment even when we came along-side of him, without once looking at us. Some of the Endeavour's people being on shore, found three human hip bones, close to an oven; these were brought on board, as well as the hair of a man's head, which was found in a tree. The next day a forge was set up to repair the iron-work; and some Indians visited the ship with plenty of fish which they bartered very fairly for nails.

On the 20th, in the morning, Mr. Banks purchased of the old Indian a man's head, which he seemed very unwilling to part with; the skull had been fractured by a blow, and the brains were extracted, and like the others, it was preserved from putrefaction. From the care with which they kept these skulls, and the reluctance with which they bartered any, it was imagined they were considered as trophies of war, and testimonials of their valour. In this day's excursion, we did not meet with a single native; the ground on every side was quite uncultivated; but we discovered a very good harbour. The succeeding day the ship's company were allowed to go on shore for their amusement, and the gentlemen employed themselves in fishing, in which they were very successful. Some of the company in their excursion met with fortifications that had not the advantage of an elevated situation, but were surrounded by two or three wide ditches, with a draw-bridge, such as, though simple in its structure, was capable of answering every purpose against the arms of the natives. Within these ditches is a fence, made with stakes, fixed in the earth. A decisive conquest or victory over the besieged, occasions an entire depopulation of that district, as the vanquished, not only those who are killed, but the prisoners likewise are devoured by the victors.

The 22d was employed by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in collecting of plants, whilst Capt. Cook made some observations on the main land on the south-east side of the inlet, which consisted of a chain of high hills, and formed part of the south-west side of the

the

to the people
his employ-
im, without
our's people
nes, close to
s well as the
a tree. The
e iron-work;
plenty of fish

ks purchased
e seemed very
fractured by
and like the
. From the
d the reluct-
was imagined
and testimo-
fion, we did
on every side
d a very good
o's company
nfement, and
ing, in which
company in
at had not the
ere surround-
draw-bridge,
was capable of
ns of the na-
made with
nquest or vic-
ire depopula-
ot only those
are devoured

and Dr. So-
Capt. Cook
on the south-
of a chain of
west side of
the



f
t
t
e
t
th
ev
w

the freight; the opposite side extended far to the east. He also discovered a village, and many houses that had been deserted, and another village that appeared to be inhabited. There were many small islands round the coast, that seemed intirely barren, and what few inhabitants were upon them lived principally upon fish. On the 24th, we visited a hippah, which was situated on a very high rock, hollow underneath, forming a fine natural arch, one side of which joined to the land, and the other rose out of the sea. The inhabitants received us with great civility, and very readily shewed us every thing that was curious. This hippah was partly surrounded with palisadoes, and it had a fighting stage, like that already described. Here we met with a cross resembling a crucifix, which was erected as a monument for a deceased person; but could not learn how his body was disposed of. From a conversation that Tupia had with these people, a discovery was made that an officer being in a boat near this village, and some canoes coming off, made him imagine they had hostile designs, and he fired upon them with ball, which made them retire with much precipitation, but they could not effect their retreat, before one of them was wounded. What made this rash action the more to be lamented was, that the Indians gave afterwards every possible assurance that their intentions upon this occasion were entirely friendly.

On the 25th, the Captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on shore to shoot, when they met with a numerous family, who were among the creeks catching fish: they behaved very civil, and received some trifling presents from the gentlemen, who were loaded by way of return with the kisses and embraces of both sexes, young and old. The next day, being the 26th, they made another excursion in the boat, in order to take a view of the freight, that passes between the eastern and western seas. To this end they attained the summit of a hill, but it being hazy in the horizon, they could see but to a small distance to the east; however, it was resolved to explore the passage in the ship when they should put to sea. Before their departure
from

from this hill, they erected a pyramid with stones, and left some musket balls, small shot and beads, that were likely to stand the test of time, and would be memorials, that this place had been visited by Europeans. On our return, having descended the hill, we made a hearty meal of the shaggs and fish, procured by our guns and lines; and which were dressed by the boat's crew in the place we had appointed. Here we were respectfully received by another Indian family, who added to their civilities strong expressions of kindness and pleasure. They shewed us where to get water, with every other office as was in their power. From hence we visited another hippah, seated on a rock almost inaccessible: it consisted of about one hundred houses and a fighting stage. We made the friendly inhabitants some small presents of paper, beads, and nails, and they in return furnished us with dried fish. On the 27th and 28th our company were engaged in making necessary repairs, catching fish, and getting the Endeavour ready to continue her voyage.

On Monday the 29th, we were visited by our old friend Topoa in company with other Indians, from whom we heard, that the man who had received a wound near the hippah, was dead; but this report proved afterwards groundless; and we found that Topoa's discourses were not always to be taken literally. During the time the bark was preparing for sea, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander often went on shore; but their walks were circumscribed by the luxuriant climbers which filled up the space between the trees, and rendered the woods impassable. Capt. Cook also made several observations on the coast to the north-west, and perceived many islands, forming bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage for shipping. He also erected another pyramid of stones, in which he put some bullets, &c. as before, with the addition of a piece of our silver coin, and placed part of an old pendant on the top, to distinguish it. Returning to the ship he met with many of the natives, of whom he purchased a small quantity of fish.

On Tuesday, the 30th, some of our people, who

were sent out early in the morning to gather celery, met with about twenty Indians, among whom were five or six women, whose husbands had lately been made captives. They sat down upon the ground together, and cut many parts of their bodies in a most shocking manner, with shells, and sharp pieces of talc or jasper, in testimony of their excessive grief. But what made the horrid spectacle more terrible, was, that the male Indians who were with them, paid not the least attention to it, but with the greatest unconcern imaginable, employed themselves in repairing their huts. This day the carpenter having prepared two posts, they were set up as memorials, being inscribed with the date of the year, the month, and the ship's name. One of them we erected at the watering place, with the union-flag hoisted upon the top; and the other in the island that lies nearest the sea, called by the natives Motuara; and the inhabitants being informed, that those posts were set up to acquaint other adventurers that the Endeavour had touched at this place, they promised never to destroy them. Capt. Cook then gave something to every one present, and to Topoa our old friend, he presented a silver three-pence, dated 1736, and some spike nails which had the king's broad arrow cut deep upon them. After which he honoured this inlet with the name of Queen Charlotte's Sound; and at the same time took possession of it in the name and for the use of his present majesty. The whole of this day's business concluded with drinking a bottle of wine to the queen's health. The bottle was given to the old man, who received the present with strong signs of joy. We must not omit here to observe, that Topoa being questioned concerning a passage into the eastern-sea, answered, that there was certainly such a passage. He also said, that the land to the south-west of the stright, where we then were, consisted of two whennuas or islands, named Tovy Poenamoo, which signifies "the water of green talc;" which might probably be the name of a place where the Indians got their green talc, or stone, of which they make their ornaments and cutting tools. He also told us, there was

a third whiennua, eastward of the streight, called Eahinomauwee, of considerable extent; the circumnavigation of which would take up many moons: he added, that the land on the borders of the streight, contiguous to this inlet, was called Tiera Witte. Having procured this intelligence, and concluded the ceremonies at fixing up the monumental memorial, we returned to the ship. The old man attended us in his canoe, and returned home after dinner.

Wednesday the 31st, having taken in our wood and water, we dispatched one party to make brooms, and another to catch fish. Toward the close of the evening we had a strong gale from the north-west, with such heavy showers, that our sweet little warblers on shore suspended their wild notes, with which till now they had constantly serenaded us during the night, affording us a pleasure not to be expressed, and the loss of which we could not at this time refrain from regretting.

On the 1st of February the gale increased to a storm, with heavy gusts from the main land, which obliged us to let go another anchor. Towards night they became more moderate, but the rain poured down with impetuosity, that the brook at our watering place overflowed its banks, and carried away to our loss ten casks full of water.

On Saturday the 3d, we went over to the hippah on the east-side of Charlotte's Sound, and procured a considerable quantity of fish. The people here confirmed all that Topoa had told us respecting the streight, and the unknown country. At noon when we took leave of them, some shewed signs of sorrow, others of joy that we were going. When returning to the ship some of our company made an excursion along the shore northward, to traffic for a further supply of fish, but without success. Sunday the 4th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were engaged in collecting shells, and different kinds of seeds.

On the 5th we got under sail, but the wind soon falling, we came again to anchor a little above Motuara. Topoa here paid us a visit to bid us farewell. Being questioned whether he had ever heard, that such a vessel

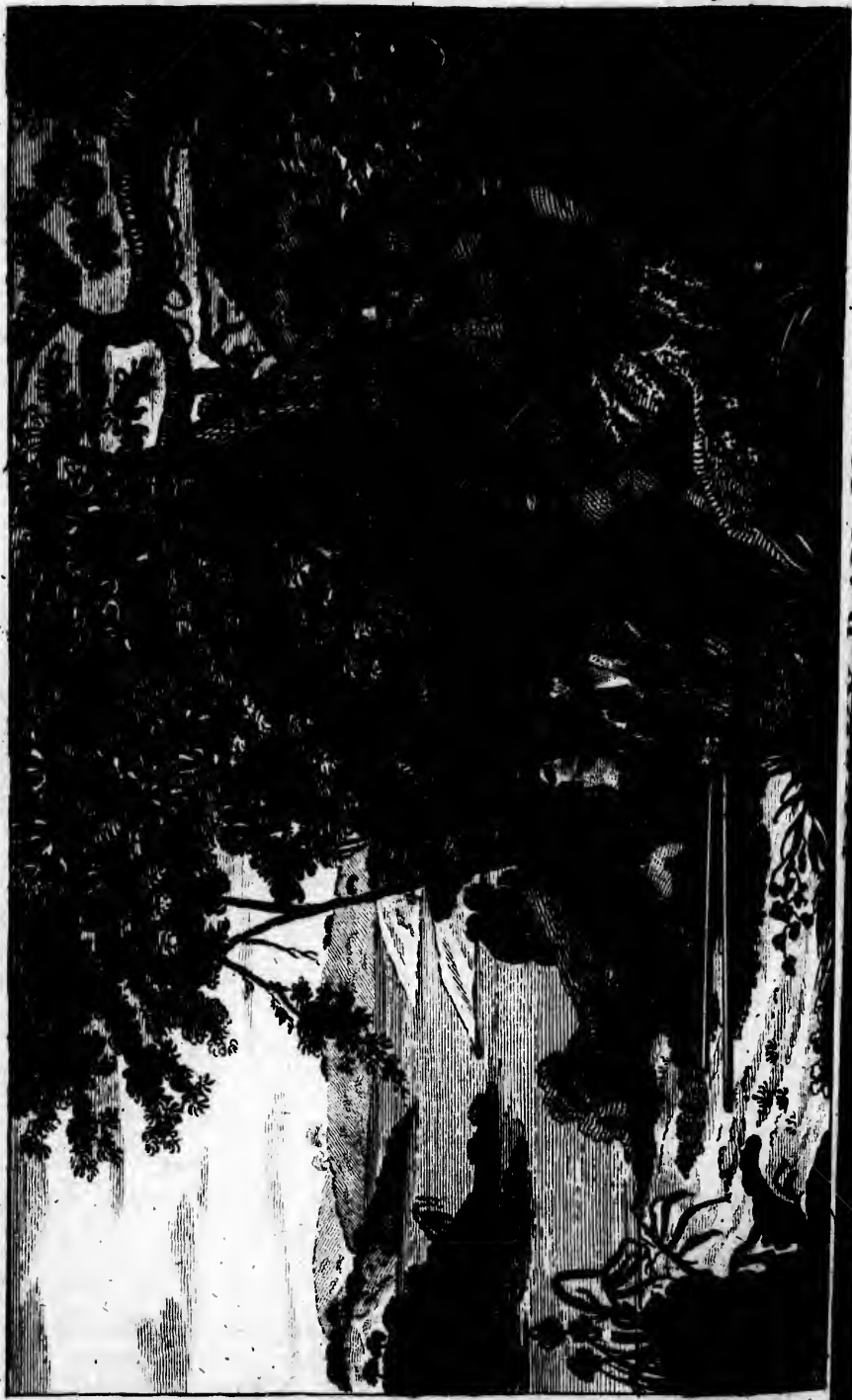
21.
t, called Ea-
circumnavi-
ns: he added,
t, contiguous
ing procured
nies at fixing
d to the ship.
and returned

ur wood and
brooms, and
f the evening
ft, with such
lers on shore
till now they
ght, affording
lofs of which
gretting.

ed to a storm,
ch obliged us
they became
wn with im-
g place over-
lofs ten calks

o the hippah
and procured
ple here con-
g the freight,
hen we took
ow, others of
g to the ship
on along the
upply of fish,
r. Banks and
hells, and dif-

ind soon fall-
ove Motuara.
well. Being
at such a vet,
fel



felas ours had ever visited the country, he replied in the negative; but said, there was a tradition of a small vessel having come from Ulimora, a distant country in the north, in which were only four men, who on their landing, were all put to death. The people of the Bay of Islands and Tupia had some confused traditional notions about Ulimora, but from their accounts we could draw no certain conclusion. This day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again on shore in search of natural curiosities, and by accident met with a very amiable Indian family, among whom was a widow, and a pretty youth about ten years of age. The woman mourned for her husband, according to the custom of the country, with tears of blood; and the child, by the death of his father, was the proprietor of the land where we had cut our wood. The mother and son were sitting upon mats, the rest of the family of both sexes, about seventeen in number, sat round them. They behaved with the utmost hospitality and courtesy, and endeavoured to prevail with us to stay all night; but expecting the ship to sail, we could not accept of their pressing invitation. This family seemed the most intelligent of any Indians we had hitherto conversed with, which made us regret our late acquaintance with them; for had we fallen into their company before, we should probably have gained more information from them in one day, than we had been able to acquire during our whole stay upon the coast.

Monday the 6th, in the morning the Endeavour sailed out of the bay, which, from the savage custom of eating human flesh, we called Cannibal Bay. We bent our course to an opening in the east; and when in the mouth of the strait were becalmed in latitude 41° 9' south, and 184 deg. 45 min. west longitude. The two points that form the entrance we called Cape Koamaro, and Point Jackson. The land forming the harbour or cove in which we lay is called by the Indians Totarranue; the harbour itself, named by the captain Ship Cove, is very convenient and safe. It is situated on the west-side of the cove, and is the southermost of the three coves within the island of Motuara, between which

and the island of Hamote, or between Motuara or western-shore is the entrance. In the last of these inlets are two ledges of rocks, three fathom under water, which may easily be known by the sea-weed that grows upon them. Attention must also be paid to the tides, which, when there is little wind, flow about nine or ten o'clock at the full and change of the moon, and rise and fall about seven feet and a half, passing through the streight from the south-east. The land about this sound, which we saw at the distance of twenty leagues, consists entirely of high hills, and deep valleys, well stored with a variety of excellent timber, fit for all purposes except masts, for which it is too hard and heavy. On the shore we found plenty of shags, and a few other species of wild fowl, that are very acceptable food to those who have lived long upon salt provisions. The number of inhabitants is not greater than four hundred, who are scattered along the coast, and upon any appearance of danger retire to their Hippahs or forts, in which situation we found them. They are poor, and their canoes without ornaments. The traffic we had with them was wholly for fish; but they had some knowledge of iron, which the natives of other parts had not. On our arrival they were much pleased with our paper; but when they knew it would be spoiled by the wet, they would not have it. English broad-cloth, and red Kersey they highly esteemed.

Leaving the sound we stood over to the eastward, and were carried by the rapidity of the current very close to one of the two islands that lie off Cape Koamaroo, at the entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound. At this time we were every moment in danger of being dashed to pieces against the rocks, but after having veered out 150 fathoms of cable, the ship was brought up, when the rocks were not more than two cables length from us. Thus we remained, being obliged to wait for the tide's ebbing, which did not take place till after midnight.

On the 7th, at eight o'clock in the morning we weighed anchor, and a fresh breeze with a tide of ebb hurried us through the streight with great swiftness.

The

tuara or
 of these
 der water,
 hat grows
 the tides,
 ine or ten
 nd rise and
 rough the
 his found,
 es, consists
 stored with
 oses except
 n the shore
 r species of
 those who
 number of
 d, who are
 pearance of
 which situa-
 their canoes
 th them was
 dge of iron,
 On our ar-
 r; but when
 ey would not
 Kersey they

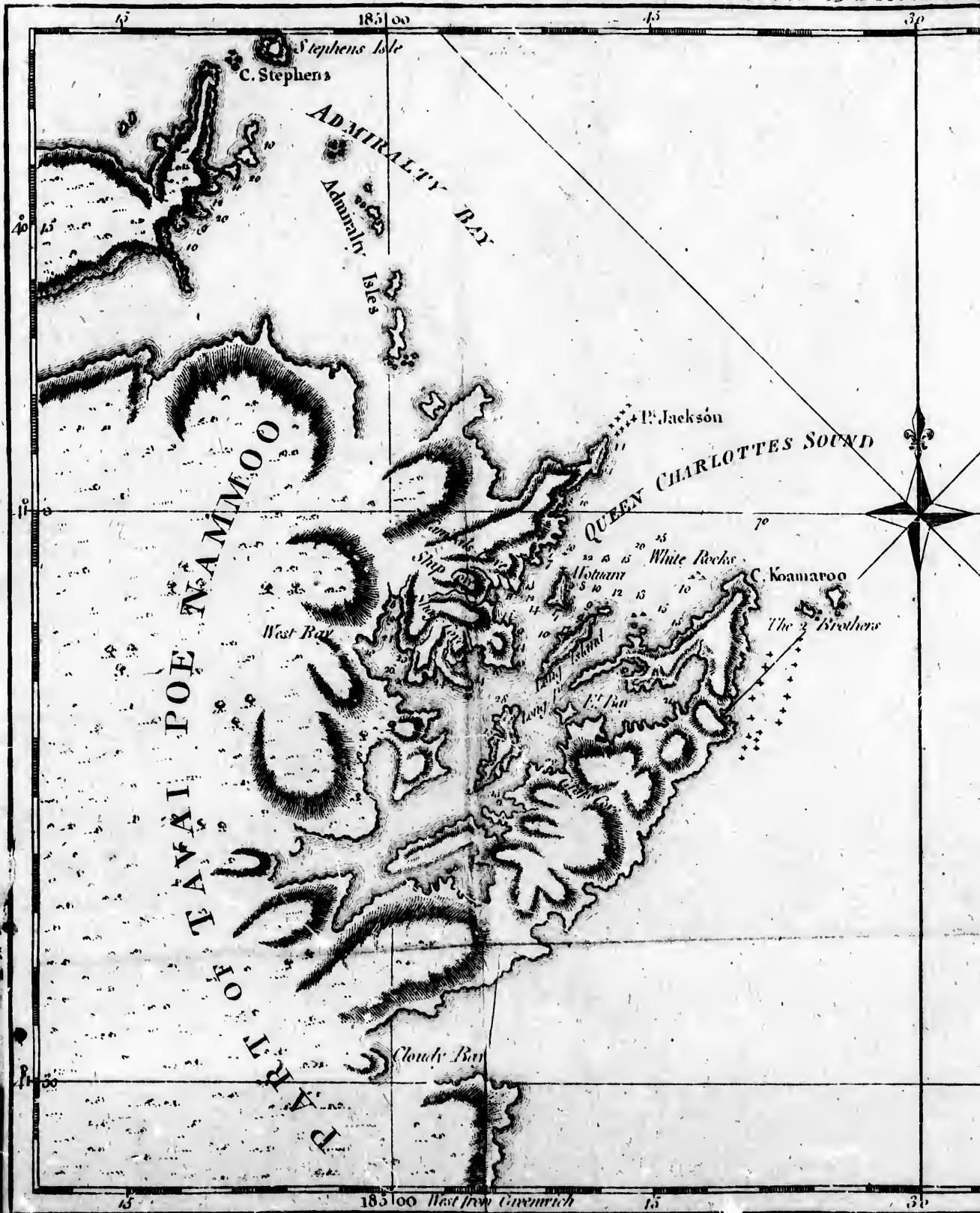
 he eastward,
 current very
 e Koamaroo,
 nd. At this
 being dashed
 g veered out
 ht up, when
 length from
 wait for the
 ill after mid-

 morning we
 a tide of ebb
 eat swiftness.
 The

pe
 en
 he
 ve
 his
 in
 in.
 g.
 le.
 he
 in
 ay
 en
 ve
 ut
 h-
 off
 ay
 he
 ns
 re
 re
 d,
 a
 d
 g-
 er
 e-
 d
 d
 er
 a
 a
 es
 d
 as
 e

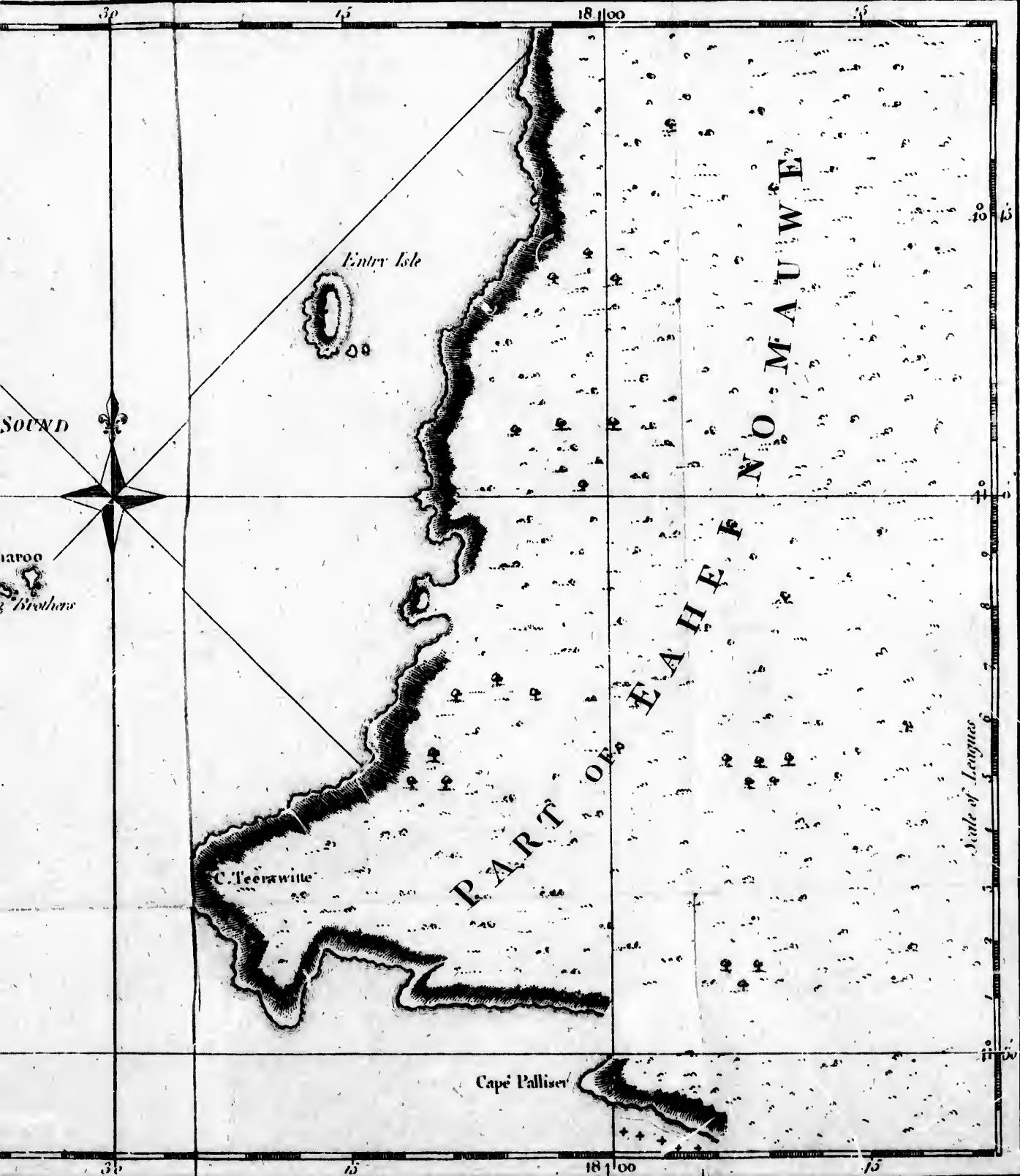
On the 9th, in the morning, we discovered that
 Eahienomauwee

CHART of COOK'S STRAIT



and
pre

STRAIT NEW ZEALAND.



Also Hoop of the Kingms A^o 16 Paternoster Row.

and
we
into
wh
up
wh
o's
fal
str
wh
en
a
m
w
y
h
it
th
o

weighed anchor, and a
hurried us through the strait with great swiftness.
The

The narrowest part of this straight lies between Cape Tierrawitte and Cape Koamaroo, the distance between which we judged to be five leagues. The length of the straight we could not determine. In passing it, we think it safest to keep to the north-east shore, for on this side we saw nothing to fear. Cape Tierrawitte lies in 41 deg. 44 min. of south latitude, and 183 deg. 45 min. of west longitude. And Cape Koamaroo is 41 deg. 34 min. south, and in 113 deg. 30 min. west longitude. About nine leagues from the former cape, and under the same shore north, is a high island, which the captain called Entry Isle. We were now facing a deep bay which we called Cloudy Bay. Some of our gentlemen doubting whether Eahienomauwee was an island, we steered south-east, in order to clear up this doubt; but the wind shifting we stood eastward, and steered north-east by east all night. The next morning they were off Cape Palliser, and found that the land stretched away to the north-eastward of Cape Turnagain. In the afternoon, three canoes came off, having several Indians on board. These made a good appearance, and were ornamented like those on the northern coast. There was no difficulty in persuading them to come on board, where they demeaned themselves very civilly, and a mutual exchange of presents took place. As they asked for nails it was concluded that they heard of the English, by means of the inhabitants of some of the other places at which we had touched. Their dress resembled that of the natives of Hudson's Bay. One old man was tattooed in a very particular manner, he had likewise a red streak across his nose; and his hair and beard were remarkable for their whiteness. The upper garment that he wore was made of flax, and had a wrought border: under this was a sort of petticoat of a cloth called Aoree Waow. Teeth and green stones decorated his ears: he spoke in a soft and low key, and it was concluded, from his deportment, that he was a person of distinguished rank among his countrymen, and these people withdrew greatly satisfied with the presents that they had received.

On the 9th, in the morning, we discovered that Eahienomauwee

Eahienomauwee was really an island. About sixty Indians in four double canoes came within a stone's throw of the ship, on the 14th of February. As they surveyed her with surprize, Tupia endeavoured to persuade them to come nearer, but this they could not be prevailed on to do. On this account the island was denominated the Island of Lookers-on. Five leagues distant from the coast of Tovy Poenamoo, we saw an island which was called after Mr. Banks's name; a few Indians appeared on it, and in one place they discovered a smoke, so that it was plain the place was inhabited. Mr. Banks going out in his boat for the purpose of shooting, killed some of the Port Egmont hens, which were like those found on the isle of Farc, and the first that they had seen upon this coast. A point of land was observed on Sunday the 25th, in latitude 45 deg. 35 min. south, to which Capt. Cook gave the name of Cape Saunders, in honour of Admiral Saunders. We kept off from the shore, which appeared to be interspersed with trees, and covered with green hills, but no inhabitants were discovered.

On the 4th of March, several whales and seals were seen; and on the 9th we saw a ledge of rocks, and soon after another ledge at three leagues distance from the shore, which we passed in the night to the northward, and at day-break observed the others under our bows, which was a fortunate escape; and in consideration of their having been so nearly caught among these, they were denominated the Traps. We called the southernmost point of land, the South Cape, and found it to be the southern extremity of the whole coast. Proceeding northward, the next day we fell in with a barren rock about fifteen miles from the main land, which was very high, and appeared to be about a mile in circumference; and this was named Solander's Island.

On the 13th, we discovered a bay containing several islands, where we concluded if there was depth of water, shipping might find shelter from all winds. Dusky Bay was the appellation given to it by the captain, and five high peaked rocks, for which it was remarkable,
caused

caused the point to be called Five Fingers. The westernmost point of land upon the whole coast, to the southward of Dusky Bay, we called West Cape. The next day we passed a small narrow opening, where there seemed to be a good harbour formed by an island, the land behind which exhibited a prospect of mountains covered with snow.

On the 16th, we passed a point which consisted of high red cliffs, and received the name of Cascade Point, on account of several small streams which fell down it. In the morning of the 18th the valleys were observed covered with snow as well as the mountains, which seemed to have fallen the night before, when we had rain at sea. Thus we passed the whole north-west coast of Tovy Poenamoo, which had nothing worth our observation but a ridge of naked and barren rocks covered with snow, some of which we conjectured might probably have remained there ever since the creation. As far as the eye could reach, the prospects were in general wild, craggy, and desolate; scarcely anything but rocks to be seen, the most of which Dr. Hawkesworth describes as having nothing but a kind of hollows, and dreadful fissures instead of valleys between them. From this uncomfortable country we determined to depart, having sailed round the whole country by the 27th of this month. Capt. Cook therefore went on shore in the long-boat, and having found a place proper for mooring the ship, and a good watering place, the crew began to fill their casks, while the carpenter was employed in cutting wood. The captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went in the pinnace to examine the bay, and the neighbouring country. Landing there they found several plants of a species which was before unknown to them; no inhabitants appeared; but they saw several huts which seemed to have been deserted a long time before: all the wood and water being taken on board, the vessel was ready to sail by the time that they returned in the evening, and it was now resolved at a council of war to steer for the coast of New Holland, in the course of their return by the way of the East-Indies.

On the 31st, we took our departure from an eastern point of land, to which we gave the name of Cape Farewel, calling the bay out of which we sailed, Admiralty Bay; and two capes, Cape Stephens, and Cape Jackson, (the names of the two secretaries of the Admiralty board.) We called a bay between the island and Cape Farewell, Blind Bay, which was supposed to have been the same that was called Murderers Bay, by Tasman, the first discoverer of New Zealand, but though he named it Staten Island, wishing to take possession of it for the States General, yet being attacked here by the Indians he never went on shore to effect his purpose. This coast, now more accurately examined, is discovered to consist of two islands, which were before thought to be a part of the southern continent so much sought after.

They are situated between the 34th and 48th deg. of south latitude, and between 181 deg. and 194 deg. west longitude. The northern island is called Eahienomauwee, and the southern is named Tovy Poenamoo by the natives. The former, though mountainous in some places, is stored with wood, and in every valley there is a rivulet. The soil in those valleys is light, but fertile and well adapted for the plentiful production of all the fruits, plants and corn of Europe. The summer, though not hotter, is in general of a more equal temperature than in England; and from the vegetables that were found here it was concluded, that the winters were not so severe. The only quadrupeds that were discovered were dogs and rats, and of the latter very few, but the former the inhabitants (like those of Otaheite) breed for food. There are seals and whales on the coasts, and we once saw a sea-lion. The birds are hawks, owls, quails, and some melodious song birds. There are ducks, and shags of several sorts, like those of Europe, and the gannet, which is of the same sort. Albatrosses, sheerwaters, penguins, and pintados, also visit the coast. The insects found here are, butterflies, flesh-flies, beetles, sand flies, and musquitos.

Tovy Poenamoo is barren and mountainous, and appeared to be almost destitute of inhabitants.

The

The sea that washes these islands abounds with delicate and wholesome fish. Whenever the vessel came to an anchor, enough were caught with hook and line only, to supply the whole ship's company; and when we fished with nets, every mess in the ship, where the people were industrious, salted as much as supplied them for several weeks. There were many sorts of fish here which we had never before seen, and which the sailors named according to their fancies. They were sold on moderate terms to the crew: among the rest, fish like the skate, eels, congers, oysters, flat-fish resembling soles and flounders, cockles and various sorts of mackarel were found in abundance upon the coast.

Here are forests abounding with trees, producing large, straight and clean timber. One tree about the size of our oak, was distinguished by a scarlet flower, composed of several fibres, and another which grows in swampy ground, very straight and tall, bearing small bunches of berries, and a leaf resembling that of the yew-tree. About 400 species of plants were found, all of which are unknown in England, except garden nightshade, sow thistle, two or three kinds of fern, and one or two sorts of grass. We found wild celery, and a kind of cresses, in great abundance, on the sea-shore; and of eatable plants raised by cultivation, only cocoas, yams, and sweet potatoes. There are plantations of many acres of these yams and potatoes. The inhabitants likewise cultivate the gourd; and the Chinese paper mulberry-tree is to be found, but in no abundance.

In New Zealand is only one shrub or tree, which produces fruit, which is a kind of berry almost tasteless; but they have a plant which answers all the uses of hemp and flax. There are two kinds of this plant, the leaves of one of which are yellow, and the other a deep red, and both of them resemble the leaves of flax. Of these leaves they make lines and cordage, and much stronger than any thing of the kind in Europe. These leaves they likewise split into breadths, and tying the slips together, form the fishing nets. Their common apparel, by a simple process, is made from the leaves, and their finer, by another preparation, is made from

the fibres. This plant is found both in high and low ground, in dry mould and in deep bogs; but as it grows largest in the latter, that seems to be its proper soil.

The natives are as large as the largest Europeans. Their complexion is brown, but little more so than that of a Spaniard. They are full of flesh, but not lazy and luxurious; and are stout and well shaped. The women possess not that delicacy, which distinguishes the European ladies; but their voice chiefly distinguishes them from the men. The men are active in a high degree; their hair is black, and their teeth are white and even. The features of both sexes are regular; they enjoy perfect health, and live to an advanced age. They appeared to be of a gentle disposition, and treat each other with the utmost kindness; but they are perpetually at war, every little district being at enmity with all the rest. This is owing, most probably, to the want of food in sufficient quantities at certain times. As they have neither black cattle, sheep, hogs, nor goats; so their chief food was fish, which being not always to be had, they are in danger of dying through hunger. They have a few dogs; and when no fish is to be gotten, they have only vegetables, such as yams and potatoes, to feed on: and if by any accident these fail them, their situation must be deplorable. Notwithstanding the custom of eating their enemies, the circumstances and temper of these people is in favour of those who might settle among them as a colony.

The inhabitants of New Zealand are as modest and reserved in their behaviour and conversation as the most polite nations of Europe. The women, indeed, were not dead to the softer impressions; but their mode of consent was in their idea as harmless as the consent to marriage with us, and equally binding for the stipulated time. If any of the English addressed one of their women, he was informed, that the consent of her friends must be obtained, which usually followed, on his making a present. This done he was obliged to treat his temporary wife as delicately as we do in England. A gentleman

and low
out as it
s proper

ropeans.
han that
not lazy
d. The
iffes the
nguiffes
n a high
re white
ar; they
e. They
eat each
are per-
enmity
ably, to
n times.

ogs, nor
ing not
through
no fish is
as yams
nt these
. Not-
ies, the
s in fa-
as a co-

dest and
i as the
indeed,
eir mode
consent
he stipu-
of their
r friends
his ma-
treat his
nd. A
ntleman



NEWSPAPER

t
w
b
fr
is
th
er
w
of
Th
sho
the
bla
stai
blac
tion
very
ame
furn
inde
of t
ganc
actly
fillag
but
same
left t
bitan
Indian
with
Th
into s

gentleman who failed in the Endeavour, having addressed a family of some rank, received an answer, of which the following is an exact translation. "Any of these young ladies will think themselves honoured by your addresses, but you must first make me a present, and you must then come and sleep with us on shore, for day-light must by no means be a witness of what passes between you."

These Indians anoint their hair with oil melted from the fat of fish or birds. The poor people use that which is rancid, so that they smell very disagreeable; but those of superior rank make use of that which is fresh. They wear combs both of bone and wood, which is considered as an ornament when stuck upright in the hair. The men tie their hair in a bunch on the crown of the head, and adorn it with feathers of birds, which they likewise sometimes place on each side of the temples. They commonly wear short beards. The hair of the women sometimes flows over their shoulders, and sometimes is cut short. Both sexes, but the men more than the women, mark their bodies with black stains, called amoco. In general the women stain only the lips, but sometimes mark other parts with black patches: the men on the contrary put on additional marks from year to year, so that those who are very ancient are almost covered. Exclusive of the amoco, they mark themselves with furrows. Those furrows made a hideous appearance, the edges being indented, and the whole quite black. The ornaments of the face are drawn in the spiral form with equal elegance and correctness, both cheeks being marked exactly alike; while paintings on their bodies resemble filagree work, and the foliage in old chased ornaments; but no two faces or bodies are painted exactly after the same model. The people of New Zealand, frequently left the breech free from these marks, which the inhabitants of Otaheite adorned beyond any other. These Indians likewise paint their bodies by rubbing them with red ocre, either dry or mixed with oil.

Their dress is formed of the leaves of the flag split into slips, which are interwoven and made into a kind

of matting, the ends, which are seven or eight inches in length, hanging out on the upper side. One piece of this matting being tied over the shoulders, reaches to the knees: the other piece being wrapped round the waist falls almost to the ground. These two pieces are fastened to a string, which by means of a bodkin of bone is passed through, and tacks them together. The men wear the lower garment only at particular times.

They have two kinds of cloth besides the coarse matting or shag above-mentioned; one of which is as coarse, but beyond all proportion stronger than the English canvas; the other which is formed of the fibres of a plant, drawn into threads which cross and bind each other, resembles the matting on which we place our dishes at table.

They make boarders of different colours to both these sorts of cloth, resembling girls samplers, and finished with great neatness and elegance. What they consider as the most ornamental part of their dress is the dogs, which they cut into stripes, and sew on different parts of their apparel. As dogs are not plenty, they dispose their stripes with œconomy. They have a few dresses ornamented with feathers; and one man was seen covered wholly with those of the red parrot.

The women never tie their hair on the top of their head, nor adorn it with feathers; and are less anxious about dress than the men. Their lower garment is bound tight round them, except when they go out fishing, and then they are careful that the men shall not see them. It once happened that some of the ship's crew surpris'd them in this situation, when some of them hid themselves among the rocks, and the rest kept their bodies under water till they had formed a girdle and apron of weeds; and their whole behaviour manifested the most refined ideas of female modesty.

The ears of both sexes were bored, and the holes stretched so as to admit a man's finger. The ornaments of their ears are feathers, cloth, bones, and sometimes bits of wood; a great many of them made use of the nails which were given them by the English, for this purpose, and the women sometimes adorned their

their ears with white down of the albetross, which they spread before and behind the whole in a large bunch. They likewise hung to their ears by strings, shiffels, bodkins, the teeth of dogs, and the teeth and nails of their deceased friends. The arms and ancles of the women are adorned with shells and bones, or any thing else through which they can pass a string. The men wear a piece of green talc or whalebone, with the resemblance of a man carved on it, hanging to a string round the neck. We saw one man who had the gristle of his nose perforated, and a feather passed through it, projecting over each cheek.

These people shew less ingenuity in the structure of their houses, than in any thing else belonging to them; they are from sixteen to twenty-four feet long, ten or twelve wide, and six or eight in height. The frame is of slight sticks of wood, and the walls and roof are made of dry grass pretty firmly compacted. Some of them are lined with bark of trees, and the ridge of the house is formed by a pole which runs from one end to the other. The door is only high enough to admit a person crawling on hands and knees, and the roof is sloping. There is a square hole near the door, serving both for window and chimney, near which is the fire place. A plank is placed over the door, adorned with a sort of carving, and this they consider as an ornamental piece of furniture. The side-walls and roof projecting two or three feet beyond the walls at each end form a sort of portico where benches are placed to sit on. The fire is made in the middle of a hollow square in the floor, which is inclosed with wood or stone. They sleep near the walls, where the ground is covered with straw for their beds. Some who can afford it, whose families are large, have three or four houses, inclosed in their court-yard. Their clothes, arms, feathers, some ill made tools, and a chest, in which all these are deposited, form all the furniture of the inside of the house. Their hammers to beat fern-root, gourds to hold water, and baskets to contain provisions, are placed without the house. One house was found near 40 feet long, 20 wide, and 14 high. Its sides were adorned

adorned with carved planks of workmanship superior to the rest; but the building appeared to have been left unfinished. Though the people sleep warm enough at home, they seem to despise the inclemency of the weather, when they go in search of fish or fern roots. Sometimes, indeed, they place a small defence to windward, but frequently sleep undressed with their arms placed round them, without the least shelter whatever.

Besides the fern-root, which serves them for bread, they feed on albetrosses, penguins, and some other birds. Whatever they eat is either roasted or baked, as they have no vessel in which water can be boiled. We saw no plantations of cocoas, potatoes, and yams, to the southward, though there were many in the northern parts. The natives drink no other liquor than water, and enjoy perfect and uninterrupted health. When wounded in battle, the wound heals in a very short time without the application of medicine; and the very old people carry no other marks of decay about them than the loss of their hair, and teeth, and a failure of their muscular strength: but enjoy an equal share of health and cheerfulness with the youngest.

The canoes of this country are not unlike the whale-boats of New England, being long and narrow. The larger sort seem to be built for war, and will hold from 30 to 100 men. One of these at Tolaga measured near 70 feet in length, six in width, and four in depth. It was sharp at the bottom, and consisted of three lengths, about two or three inches thick, and tied firmly together with strong plaiting; each side was found of one entire plank, about twelve inches broad, and about an inch and a half thick, which was fitted to the bottom part with equal strength and ingenuity. Several thwarts were laid from one side to the other, to which they were securely fastened, in order to strengthen the canoes. Some few of their canoes at Mercury Bay and Opoorage, are all made entirely of one trunk of wood, which is made hollow by fire; but by far the greater part are built after the plan above described. The smaller boats, which are used chiefly in fishing, are adorned at head and stern with the figure of a man, the

superior
ve been
enough
of the
n roots.
o wind-
eir arms
atever,
r bread,
er birds.
as they
We saw
, to the
orthern
n water,
When
ort time
very old
em than
of their
health

whale-
. The
ld from
ed near
oth. It
engths,
y toge-
of one
bout an
bottom
Several
which
hen the
ay and
wood,
greater
The
ng, are
an, the
eyes

London, Published by M. A. C. de la Roche, by Alex. Legg, at the Kings Arms, No. 10, Tottenham Court Road.



i
t
t
e
p
b
it
d

w
m
an
fin
th
Th
pic
ro
ha

ar
ing
gro
gar
eve
fak
fix
driv
pho
thci

eyes of which are composed of white shells: a tongue of enormous size is thrust out of the mouth, and the whole face a picture of the most absolute deformity. The grander canoes, which are intended for war, are ornamented with open work, and covered with fringes of black feathers, which gives the whole an air of perfect elegance; the side-boards which are carved in a rude manner, are embellished with tufts of white feathers. These vessels are rowed with a kind of paddles, between five and six feet in length, the blade of which is a long oval, gradually decreasing till it reaches the handle; and the velocity with which they row with these paddles is very surprising. Their sails are composed of a kind of mat or netting, which is extended between two upright poles, one of which is fixed on each side. Two ropes, fastened to the top of each pole, serve instead of sheets. The vessels are steered by two men having such a paddle, and sitting in the stern; but they can only sail before the wind, in which direction they move with considerable swiftness.

The Indians use axes, adzes, and chissels, with which last they likewise bore holes. The chissels are made of jasper, or of the bone of a man's arm; their axes and adzes of a hard black stone. They use their small jasper tools till they are blunted, and then throw them away, having no instrument to sharpen them with. The Indians at Tolaga having been presented with a piece of glass, drilled a hole through it, and hung it round the neck. A small bit of jasper was thought to have been the tool they used in drilling it.

Their tillage is excellent, owing to the necessity they are under of cultivating or running the risque of starving. At Tegadeo their crops were just put into the ground, and the surface of the field was as smooth as a garden, the roots were ranged in regular lines, and to every root there remained a hillock. A long narrow stake, sharpened to an edge at bottom, with a piece fixed across a little above it, for the convenience of driving it into the ground with the foot, supplies the place both of plough and spade. The soil being light, their work is not very laborious, and with this instrument

ment alone they will turn up ground of six or seven acres in extent.

The seine, the large net which has been already noticed, is produced by the united labour, and is probably the joint property of a whole town. Their fish-hooks are of shell or bone; and they have baskets of wicker-work to hold the fish. Their warlike weapons are spears, darts, battle-axes, and the patoo-patoo. The spear, which is pointed at each end, is about sixteen feet in length, and they hold it in the middle, so that it is difficult to parry a push from it. Whether they fight in boats or on shore the battle is hand to hand, so that they must make bloody work of it. They trust chiefly in the patoo-patoo, which is fastened to their wrists, by means of a strong strap, that it may not be wrested out of their hands. These are worn in the girdles of people of a superior rank, as a military ornament. They have a kind of staff of distinction, which is carried by the principal warriors. It is formed of a whale's rib, is quite white, and adorned with carving, feathers, and the hair of their dogs. Sometimes they had a stick six feet long, inlaid with shells, and otherwise ornamented like a military staff. This honourable mark of distinction was commonly in the hands of the aged, who were also more daubed with the amoco.

When they came to attack us, one or more of these old men thus distinguished, were usually in each canoe. It is their custom to stop about 50 or 60 yards from a ship, when the chiefs rising from their seat, put on a dog's skin garment, and, holding out their decorated staff, direct them how to proceed. When they were too far from the ship to reach it with their missile weapons, then the defiance was given, and the words usually were Karomai haromai, harre uta a patoo-patoo, "Come on shore, come on shore, and we will kill you all with our patoo-patoos." While they thus threatened us, they approached gradually the bark, till close along-side; yet talking at intervals in a peaceable manner, and answering whatever questions we asked them. Then again their menaces were renewed, till encouraged

encouraged by our supposed timidity, they began the war-song and dance, the sure prelude of an attack, which always followed, and sometimes continued until the firing of small shot repulsed them; but at others, they vented their passion, by throwing a few stones at the ship, in the way of insulting us.

The contortions of these savage Indians are numerous; their limbs are distorted, and their faces are agitated with strange convulsive motions. Their tongue hangs out of their mouths to an amazing length, and their eye-lids are drawn so as to form a circle round the eye. At the same time they shake their darts, brandish their spears, and wave their patoo-patoos to and fro in the air. There is an admirable vigour and activity in their dancing; and in their song they keep time with such exactness, that 60 or 100 paddles when struck against the sides of their boats at once, make only a single report. In times of peace they sometimes sing in a manner resembling the war-song, but the dance is omitted. The women, whose voices are exceeding melodious and soft, sing likewise in a musical, but mournful manner. One of their instruments of music is a shell, from which they produce a sound not unlike that made with a common horn; the other is a small wooden pipe, resembling a child's nine-pin, not superior in sound to a child's whistle. We never heard them attempt to sing to them, or to produce any measured notes like what we call a tune.

As to the horrid custom of eating human flesh, prevalent among them, to what has been already said on this head, we shall only add, that in most of the coves, upon landing, we found near the places where fires had been made, flesh bones of men; and among the heads that were brought on board, some of them had a kind of false eyes, and ornaments in their ears, as if alive. The head purchased by Mr. Banks, and sold with great reluctance, was that of a young person, and, by the contusions on one side, appeared to have received many violent blows. There had been lately a skirmish, and we supposed the young man had been killed with the rest.

The hippahs or villages of these people, of which there are several between the bay of Plenty and Queen Charlotte's sound, are all fortified. In these they constantly reside; but near Tolaga, Hawk's Bay, and Poverty Bay, only single houses are to be seen, at a considerable distance from each other. On the sides of the hills were erected long stages, supplied with darts and stones, thought by us to be retreats in time of action; as it appeared that from such places they could combat with their enemies to great advantage. A magazine of provisions, consisting of dried fish, and fern roots, was also discovered in these fortifications.

The inhabitants of this part of the country were all subjects of Teratu, who resided near the Bay of Plenty; and to their being thus united under one chief, they owed a security unknown to those of other parts. Several inferior governors are in the dominions of Teratu, to whom the most implicit obedience is paid. One of the inhabitants having robbed a sailor belonging to the Endeavour, complaint was made to a chief, who chastized the thief by kicking and striking him, which correction he bore with unresisting humility. The inhabitants of the southern parts formed little societies, who had all things in common, particularly fishing nets and fine apparel. The latter, probably obtained in war, were kept in a little hut, destined for that use, in the center of the town, and the several parts of the nets, being made by different families, were afterwards joined together for public use. Less account, in the opinion of Tupia, is made of the women here than in the South Sea islands. Both sexes eat together; but how they divide their labour, we cannot determine with certainty, though we are inclined to believe that the men cultivate the ground, make nets, catch birds, and go out in their canoes to fish; while the women are employed in weaving cloth, collecting shell-fish, and in dressing food.

As to the religion of these people, they acknowledge one Supreme Being, and several subordinate deities. Their mode of worship we could not learn, nor was any place proper for that purpose seen. There was in-

deed

deed a small square area, encompassed with stones, in the middle of which hung a basket of fern-roots on one of their spades. This they said was an offering to their gods, to obtain from them a plentiful crop of provisions. They gave the same account of the origin of the world, and the production of mankind, as our friends in Otaheite. Tupia, however, seemed to have much more deep and extensive knowledge of these subjects than any of the people of this island, and when he sometimes delivered a long discourse, he was sure of a numerous audience, who heard with remarkable reverence and attention.

With regard to the manner of disposing of their dead, we could form no certain opinion. The southern district said, they disposed of their dead by throwing them into the sea; but those of the north buried them in the ground. We saw, however, not the least sign of any grave or monument; but the body of many among the living, bore the marks of wounds, in token of grief for the loss of their friends and relations. Some of their scars were newly made, a proof that their friends had died while we were there; yet no one saw any thing like a funeral ceremony or procession, the reason is, because they affected to conceal every thing respecting the dead with the utmost secrecy.

We observed a great similitude between the dress, furniture, boats, and nets of the New Zealanders, and the natives of the South Sea islands, which evidently demonstrates that the common ancestors of both were *ab origine* natives of the same country. Indeed the inhabitants of these different places have a tradition, that their ancestors sprang from another country many years since, and they both agree that this country was called Heawige. This is also certain, that Tupia when he accosted the people here in the language of his own country, was perfectly understood; but perhaps a yet stronger proof that their origin was the same, will arise from a specimen of their language; which we shall evince by a list of words in both languages, according to the dialect of the northern and southern islands of which New Zealand consists; whence it will appear,

that the language of Otaheite does not differ more from that of New Zealand, than the language of the two islands from each other.

THE LANGUAGE OF

NEW ZEALAND.		OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
<i>Northern.</i>	<i>Southern.</i>		
Eareete	Eareete	Earee	<i>A chief.</i>
Taata	Taata	Taata	<i>A man.</i>
Whahine	Whahine	Ivahine	<i>A woman.</i>
Eupo	Heaowpoho	Eupo	<i>The head.</i>
Macauwe	Heoo-oo	Rourou	<i>The hair.</i>
Terringa	Hetaheyei	Terrea	<i>The ear.</i>
Erai	Hcai	Erai	<i>The forehead.</i>
Mata	Hemata	Mata	<i>The eyes.</i>
Paparinga	Hepapaeh	Papara	<i>The cheeks.</i>
Ahewh	Heeih	Ahew	<i>The nose.</i>
Hangoutou	Hegaowai	Outou	<i>The mouth.</i>
Ecouwai	Hakaoewai	————	<i>The chin.</i>
Haringaringu	————	Rema	<i>The arm.</i>
Maticara	Hermaigawh	Maneow	<i>The finger.</i>
Ateraboo	————	Oboo	<i>The belly.</i>
Apeto	Heapeto	’eto	<i>The navel.</i>
Haromai	Heromai	Harromai	<i>Come hither.</i>
Heica	Heica	Eyea	<i>Fish.</i>
Kooura	Kooura	Tooura	<i>A lobster.</i>
Taro	Taro	Taro	<i>Cocoas.</i>
Cumala	Cumala	Cumala	<i>Potatoes.</i>
Tuphwhe	Tuphwhe	Tuphwhe	<i>Yams.</i>
Mannu	Mannu	Mannu	<i>Birds.</i>
Kaoura	Kaoura	Oure	<i>No.</i>
Tahai	————	Tahai	<i>One.</i>
Rua	————	Rua	<i>Two.</i>
Torou	————	Torou	<i>Three.</i>
Ha	————	Hea	<i>Four.</i>
Rema	————	Rema	<i>Five.</i>
Ono	————	Ono	<i>Six.</i>
Etu	————	Hctu	<i>Seven.</i>
Warou	————	Warou	<i>Eight.</i>
Iva	————	Heva	<i>Nine.</i>
			<i>Angahourou</i>

NEW ZEALAND.		OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
Northern.	Southern.		
Angahourou	————	Ahourou	Ten.
Hennihew	Heneaho	Nihio	The teeth.
Mchou	————	Mattai	The wind.
Amootoo	————	Teto	A thief.
Mataketake	————	Mataitai	To examine.
Eheara	————	Heiva	To sing.
Keno	Keno	Eno	Bad.
Eratou	Eratou	Eraou	Trees.
Toubouna	Toubouna	Toubouna	Grandfather.
Owy Terta	————	Owy Terra	{ What do you call this or that.

Hence it appears evidently that the language of New Zealand and Otaheite, is radically one and the same. The dialect indeed is different as in England, where the word is pronounced *gate* in Middlesex, and *geate* in Yorkshire; and as the northern and southern words were taken down by two different persons, one might possibly use more words than the other to express the same sound. Besides, in the southern parts they put the articles *ke* or *ko* before a noun, as we do those of *the* or *a*: it is also common to add the word *oeia* after another word, as we say *certainly*, or *yes indeed*; and by not attending sufficiently to this, our gentlemen sometimes, judging by the ear only, formed words of an enormous length: for example, one of them asking a native the name of the island, called Matuaro, he replied, with the particle *ke* prefixed *Ke-matuaro*; and upon the question being repeated, the Indian added *oeia*, which made the word *Ke-matuaro-oeia*; and upon inspecting the log-book, Capt. Cook found Matuaro transformed into *Cumettiwarroweia*. Now a similar orthographical difference might happen, or a like mistake might be made by a foreigner in writing an English word. Suppose a New Zealander to enquire, when near to ask, *What village is this?* The answer might be, *It is Hackney indeed.* The Indian then for the information of his countrymen, had he the use of letters, might record,

record, that he had passed through, or been at a place called by the English *Itisbackneyindeed*. We were ourselves at first led into many ridiculous mistakes, from not knowing that the article used in the South-Sea Islands, is *to* or *ta*, instead of *ke* or *ko*.

We have supposed, that the original inhabitants of these islands, and those in the South-Seas, came from the same country; but what country that is, or where situated, remains still a subject of enquiry. In this we all agreed, that the original natives were not of America, which lies to the eastward; and unless there should be a continent to the southward, in a temperate latitude, we cannot but conclude that they emigrated from the westward.

Before we close this account of New Zealand, we beg leave farther to observe, that hitherto our navigation has been very unfavourable to the supposition of a Southern Continent. The navigators who have supported the positions upon which this is founded, are Tasman, Juan Fernandes, Hermite, Quiros, and Roggewein; but the track of the Endeavour has totally subverted all their theoretical arguments. Upon a view of the chart it will appear, that a large space extends quite to the tropics, which has not been explored by us nor any other navigators; yet we believe there is no cape of any Southern Continent, and no Southern Continent to the northward of 40 deg. south. Of what may lie farther to the southward of 40 deg. we can give no opinion; yet are far from discouraging any future attempts after new discoveries: for a voyage like this may be of public utility. Should no continent be found, new islands within the tropics may be discovered. Tupia in a rough chart of his own drawing laid down no less than seventy-four; and he gave us an account of above one hundred and thirty, which no European vessel has ever yet visited.

CHAP.

P
L
37
J
C
fair
S. a
steer
Apr
40 d
31 m
latitu
very
an e
far fr
at 13
bird
120 f
with f
the a
southw
and n
we we
Egmon
which
19th, f
point i
name. c
noon, i
W. long
land bo
point rid

C H A P. VIII.

Passage from New Zealand to Botany Bay, in New Holland—Various Incidents related—A Description of the Country and its Inhabitants—The Endeavour sails from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay—With a further Account of the Country—Her dangerous Situation in her Passage from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River.

ON Saturday the 31st of March, 1770, we sailed from Cape Farewell, having fine weather and a fair wind. This cape lies in latitude 40 deg. 33 min. S. and in 186 deg. W. longitude. The same day we steered westward, with a fresh gale till the 2nd of April, when by observation we found our latitude to be 40 deg. and our longitude from Cape Farewell, 2 deg. 31 min. West. On the ninth in the morning, when in latitude 38 deg. 29 min. S. we saw a tropic bird, a sight very unusual in so high a latitude. On the 15th we saw an egg bird, and a gannet. As these birds never go far from land we founded all night, but had no ground at 130 fathom water. The day following a small land bird perched on the rigging, but we had no ground at 120 fathom. Tuesday the 17th, we had fresh gales with squalls and dark weather in the morning; and in the afternoon a hard gale and a great sea from the southward, which obliged us to run under our fore-sail and mizen all night. On the 18th in the morning, we were visited by a pintado bird, and some Port-Egmont hens, an infallible sign that land was near, which we discovered at six o'clock in the morning of the 19th, four or five leagues distant. To the southermost point in sight, we gave the name of Point Hicks, the name of our first lieutenant who discovered it. At noon, in latitude 37 deg. 5 min. and 210 deg. 29 min. W. longitude, another remarkable point of the same land bore N. 20 E. distant about four leagues. This point rising in a round hillock, extremely like the Ram Head

Head at the entrance of Plymouth Sound, Capt. Cook therefore gave it the same name. What we had yet seen of the land was low and level; the shore white and sandy; and the inland parts covered with wood and verdure. At this time we saw three water-spouts at once; two between us and the shore, and the third at some distance upon our larboard quarter. In the evening; at six o'clock, the northermost point of land was distant about two leagues, which we named Cape Howe. On the following day we had a distant view of the country, which was in general covered with wood, and interspersed with several small lawns. It appeared to be inhabited, as smoke was seen in several places. At four o'clock the next morning, we saw a high mountain, which from its shape, was called Mount Dromedary, under which there is a point which received the name of Point Dromedary. In the evening we were opposite a point of land which rose perpendicular, and was called Point Upright. On Sunday the 22d, we were so near the shore, as to see several of the inhabitants on the coast, who were of a very dark complexion, if not perfect negroes. At noon we saw a remarkable peaked hill, to which the captain gave the name of the Pigeon House, from its resemblance of such a building. The trees on this island were both tall and large, but we saw no place fit to give shelter even to a boat.

The captain gave the name of Cape George to a point of land discovered on St. George's-day, two leagues to the north of which the sea formed a bay, which, from its shape, was called Long Nose; eight leagues from which lies Red Point, so called from the colour of the soil in its neighbourhood. On the 27th, we saw several inhabitants walking along the shore, four of them carrying a canoe on their shoulders, but as they did not attempt to come off to the ship, the captain took Messrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia in the yawl, and employed four men to row them to that part of the shore where they saw the natives, near which four small canoes lay close in land. The Indians sat on the rocks till the yawl was a quarter of a mile from the shore, and then they ran away into the woods. The

furf

furf
from
mak
cano
New
trees
and t
the e
spring
cover
retire
rived
joined
head
had f
himse
the o
keepin
with
weapo
and w
did no
of the
selves
and le
streaks
white
tion, a
ed wea
observ
and sa
ployed
anchor
observe
a wood
three s
man, v
looked
soon a
their e
dinner
No.

surf beating violently on the beach, prevented the boat from landing; the gentlemen were therefore obliged to make what observations they could at a distance. The canoes resembled generally the smaller sort of those of New Zealand. They saw a great number of cabbage trees on shore; the other trees were of the palm kind, and there was no underwood among them. At five in the evening they returned to the ship, and a light breeze springing up, we sailed to the northward, where we discovered several people on shore, who, on our approach, retired to an eminence, soon after which two canoes arrived on the shore, and four men, who came in them, joined the others. The pinnace having been sent ahead to sound, arrived near the spot where the Indians had stationed themselves, on which one of them hid himself among the rocks near the landing place, and the others retreated farther up the hill. The pinnace keeping along shore, the Indians walked near in a line with her; they were armed with long pikes, and a weapon resembling a scymitar, and, by various signs and words, invited the boat's crew to land; those who did not follow the boat, having observed the approach of the ship, brandished their weapons, and threw themselves into threatening attitudes. The bodies, thighs, and legs of two of these, were painted with white streaks, and their faces were almost covered with a white powder. They talked together with great emotion, and each of them held one of the above mentioned weapons. The ship having come to an anchor, we observed a few huts, in which were some of the natives; and saw some canoes, in each of which was a man employed in striking fish with a kind of spear. We had anchored opposite a village of about eight houses, and observed an old woman and three children come out of a wood, laden with fuel for a fire; they were met by three smaller children, all of whom, as well as the woman, were quite naked. The old woman frequently looked at the ship with the utmost indifference, and, as soon as she had made a fire, the fishermen brought their canoes on shore, and they set about dressing their dinner with as much composure, as if a ship had been

no extraordinary sight. Having formed a design of landing, we manned the boats, and took Tupia with us, and we had no sooner come near the shore, than two men advanced, as if to dispute our setting foot on land. They were each of them armed with different kinds of weapons. They called out aloud in a harsh tone, warra warra wai! the meaning of which Tupia did not understand. The captain threw them beads, nails, and other trifles, which they took up, and seemed very well pleased with. He then made signals that he wanted water, and used every possible means to convince them that no injury was intended. They made signs to the boat's crew to land, on which we put the boat in, but we had no sooner done so, than the two Indians came again to oppose us. A musquet was now fired between them, on the report of which, one of them dropped a bundle of lances, which he immediately snatched up again in great haste. One of them then threw a stone at the boat, on which the captain ordered a musquet loaded with small shot to be fired, which wounding the eldest of them on the legs, he retired hastily to one of the houses that stood at some little distance. The people in the boats now landed, imagining that the wound which this man had received would put an end to the contest. In this, however, we were mistaken, for he immediately returned with a kind of shield, of an oval figure, painted white in the middle, with two holes in it to see through. They now advanced with great intrepidity, and both discharged their lances at the boat's crew, but did not wound any of them. Another musquet was fired at them, on which they threw another lance, and then took to their heels. We now went up to the huts, in one of which we found the children, who had secreted themselves behind some bark. We looked at them, but left them without its being known we had seen them, and having thrown several pieces of cloth, ribbands, beads, and other things into the hut, we took several of their lances, and then re embarked in the boat. The canoes on this coast were about 13 feet in length, each made of the bark of a single tree, tied up at the ends, and kept open in the middle by the means of sticks:

sticks placed across them; their paddles were very small, and two were used at a time.

We now sailed to the north point of the bay, and found plenty of fresh water. On taking a view of the hut where we had seen the children, we had the mortification to find that every Indian was fled, and that they had left all the presents behind them. The captain now went in the pinnace to inspect the bay, and saw several of the natives, who all fled as he approached them. Some of the men having been sent to get wood and water, they no sooner went on board to dinner, than the natives came down to the place, and examined the casks with great attention, but did not offer to remove them. When the people were on shore in the afternoon, about twenty of the natives, all armed, advanced within a trifling distance of them, and then stopped, while two of their number approached still nearer. Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer on shore, went towards them, with presents in his hands, and endeavoured, by every possible means, to assure them of his friendly intentions, but to no purpose, for they retired before he came up to them. In the evening, Messrs. Banks and Solander, went with the captain to a cove north of the bay, where they caught between three and four hundred weight of fish, at four hauls.

On Monday the 30th, the natives came down to the huts before it was light, and were repeatedly heard to shout very loud, and soon after day-break they were seen on the beach, but quickly retired about a mile, and kindled several fires in the woods. This day some of the ship's crew being employed in cutting grass at a distance from the main body, while the natives pursued them, but stopping within fifty or sixty yards of them, they shouted several times, and retreated to the woods. In the evening they behaved exactly in the same manner, when the captain followed them alone and unarmed for some time, but they still retired as he approached.

On Tuesday, May the first, the south point of the bay was named Sutherland Point, one of the seamen of the name of Sutherland, having died that day, was

buried on shore; and more presents were left in the huts, such as looking-glasses, combs, &c. but the former ones had not been taken away. Making an excursion about the country, we found it agreeably variegated with wood and lawn, the trees being strait and tall, and without underwood. The country might be cultivated without cutting down one of them. The grass grows in large tufts, almost close to each other, and there is a great plenty of it. In this excursion, we met with many places where the inhabitants had slept without shelter, and one man, who ran away the moment he beheld us. More presents were left in their huts, and at their sleeping-places, in hopes of producing a friendly intercourse. We saw the dung of an animal which fed on grass, and traced the foot-steps of another, which had claws like a dog, and was about the size of a wolf: also the track of a small animal, whose foot was like that of a pole-cat; and saw one animal alive, about the size of a rabbit. We found some wood that had been felled, and the bark stript off by the natives, and several growing trees, in which steps had been cut, for the convenience of ascending them. The woods abound with a vast variety of beautiful birds, among which were cockatooes, and parroquets, which flew in large flocks. The second lieutenant, Mr. Gore, having been with a boat in order to drudge for oysters, saw some Indians, who made signs for him to come on shore, which he declined: having finished his business, he sent the boat away, and went by land with a midshipman, to join the party that was getting water. In their way they met with more than 20 of the natives, who followed them so close as to come within a few yards of them; Mr. Gore stopped and faced them, on which the Indians stopped also, and when he proceeded again, they followed him; but they did not attack him though they had each man a lance. The Indians coming in sight of the water-casks, stood at the distance of a quarter of a mile, while Mr. Gore and his companion reached their ship-mates in safety. Two or three of the waterers now advanced towards the Indians, but observing they did not retire, they very imprudently

imprudently turned about, and retreated hastily: this apparent sign of cowardice inspired the savages, who discharged four of their lances at the fugitives, which flying beyond them, they escaped unhurt. They now stopped to pick up the lances; on which the Indians retired in their turn. At this instant the captain came up with Messrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia advancing made signs of friendship; but the poor natives would not stay their coming up to them. On the following day they went again on shore, where many plants were collected by Dr. Solander, and Mr. Banks. They saw several parties of the Indians, who all ran away on their approach. Tupia having learnt to shoot, frequently stayed alone to shoot parrots, and the Indians constantly fled away from him with as much precipitation as from the English. On the 3d of May, fourteen or fifteen Indians, in the same number of canoes, were engaged in striking fish within half a mile of the watering-place. At this time a party of the ship's crew were shooting near the fishermen, one of whom Mr. Banks observed to haul up his canoe on the beach, and approach the people who were shooting. He watched their motions unobserved by them, for more than a quarter of an hour, then put off his boat and returned to his fishing. At this time the captain, with Dr. Solander and another gentleman, went to the head of the bay to try to form some connection with the Indians. On their first landing they found several of the Indians on shore, who immediately retreated to their canoes, and rowed off. They went up the country, where they found the soil to be a deep black mould, which appeared to be calculated for the production of any kind of grain. They saw some of the finest meadows that were ever beheld, and met with a few rocky places, the stone of which is sandy, and seemed to be admirably adapted for building. In the woods they found a tree bearing cherries, if shape and colour may intitle them to that name, the juice of which was agreeably tart. They now returned to their boat, and seeing a fire at a distance, rowed towards it; but the Indians fled at their coming near them. Near the beach

beach they found seven canoes, and as many fires, from which they judged that each fisherman had dressed his own dinner. There were oysters lying on the spot, and some muscles roasting on the fire. They ate of these fish, and left them some beads and other trifles in return. They now returned to the ship, and in the evening Mr. Banks went out with his gun, and saw a great number of quails, some of which he shot, and they proved to be the same kind as those of England. On the following day a midshipman having stayed from his companions, came suddenly to an old man and woman, and some children, who were sitting naked under a tree together: they seemed afraid of him, but did not run away. The man wore a long beard, and both he and the woman were grey-headed; but the woman's hair was cut short. This day likewise, two of another party met with six Indians on the border of a wood, one of whom calling out very loud, a lance was thrown from a wood, which narrowly missed them. The Indians now ran off, and, in looking round they saw a youth descend from a tree, who had doubtless been placed there for the purpose of throwing the lance at them. This day the captain went up the country on the north side of the bay, which he found to resemble the moory grounds of England; but the land was thinly covered with plants about 16 inches high. The hills rise gradually behind each other, for a considerable distance, and between them is marshy ground. Those who had been sent out to fish this day, met with great success, and the second lieutenant struck a fish called the Stingray, which weighed near two hundred and fifty pounds. The next morning a fish of the same kind was taken, which weighed three hundred and fifty pounds. The name of Botany Bay was given to this place from the large number of plants collected by Messrs. Banks and Solander. This country produces two kinds of wood which may be deemed timber, one of which is tall and strait like the pine, and the other is hard, heavy, and dark-coloured, like *lignum vitæ*; it yields a red gum, like dragon's blood, and bears some resemblance of the English oak. There are

are mangroves in abundance, several kinds of palm, and a few shrubs. Among other kinds of birds, crows were found here, exactly like those of England. There is great plenty of water-fowls, among the flats of sand and mud; one of which is shaped like a pelican, is larger than a swan, and has black and white feathers. These banks of mud abound with cockles, muscles, oysters, and other shell-fish, which greatly contribute towards the support of the natives, who sometimes dress them on shore, and at other times in their canoes. They likewise caught many other kinds of fish with hooks and line.

While the captain remained in the harbour, the English colours were displayed on shore, daily, and the name of the ship, with the date of the year, was carved on a tree near the place where we took in our water.

On Sunday the 6th of May, we sailed from Botany Bay, and at noon were off a harbour, which was called Port Jackson, and in the evening, near a bay, to which we gave the name of Broken Bay. The next day at noon, the northermost land in sight projected so as to justify the calling it Cape Three Points. On Wednesday the 9th, we saw two exceeding beautiful rainbows, the colours of which were strong and lively, and those of the inner one so bright, as to reflect its shadow on the water. They formed a complete semicircle, and the space between them was much darker than the rest of the sky. On Thursday we passed a rocky point, which was named Point Stephens. Next day saw smoke in several places on shore, and in the evening discovered three remarkable high hills near each other, which the captain named the Three Brothers. They lie in latitude 31 deg. 40 min. and may be seen thirteen or fourteen leagues from the shore.

Sunday, the 13th, we saw the smoke of fires, on a point of land, which was therefore called Cape Smokey. As we proceeded from Botany Bay, northward, the land appeared high and well covered with wood. In the afternoon, we discovered some rocky islands

islands between us and the land, the southermost of which is in latitude 30 deg. 10 min. and the northermost in 29 deg. 58 min. On Tuesday morning, by the assistance of our glasses, we discerned about a score of Indians, each loaded with a bundle, which we imagined to be palm leaves for covering their houses. We traced them for more than an hour, during which time they took not the least notice of the ship; at length they left the beach, and were lost behind a hill, which they gained by a gentle ascent. At noon, in latitude 28 deg. 37 min. 30 sec. south, and in 206 deg. 30 min. west longitude, the captain discovered a high point of land, and named it Cape Byron. We continued to steer along the shore with a fresh gale, and in the evening we discovered breakers at a considerable distance from the shore, so that we were obliged to tack, and get into deeper water; which having done, we lay with the head of the vessel to the land till the next morning, when we were surprized to find ourselves farther to the southward than we had been the preceding evening, notwithstanding we had a southerly wind all night. The breakers lie in latitude 28 deg. 22 min. south. In the morning we passed the breakers, near a peaked mountain, which we named Mount Warning, situated in 28 deg. 22 min. south latitude. The point off which these shoals lie, Capt. Cook named Point Danger. We pursued our course, and the next day saw more breakers, near a point, which we distinguished by the name of Point Look-out; to the north of which the shore forms a wide open bay, which we called Moreton's Bay, and the north point thereof Cape Moreton. Near this, are three hills, which we called the Glass Houses, from the very strong resemblance they bore to such buildings.

On Friday, the 18th, at two in the morning, we descried a point so unequal, that it looks like two small islands under the land, and it was therefore called Double Island Point. At noon, by the help of glasses, we discovered some sands, which lay in patches of several acres. We observed they were moveable, and that they had not been long in their present situation;

for

for we saw trees half buried, and the tops of others still green. At this time two beautiful water-snakes swam by the ship, in every respect resembling land snakes, except that their tails were flat and broad, probably to serve them instead of fins in swimming.

Saturday, the 19th at noon, we sailed about four leagues from the land, and at one o'clock saw a point, whereon a number of Indians were assembled, from whence it was called Indian Head. Soon afterwards we saw many more of the natives; also smoke in the day and fires by night. The next day we saw a point, which was named Sandy Point, from two large tracts of white sand that were on it. Soon after we passed a shoal, which we called Break Sea Spit, because we had now smooth water, after having long encountered a high sea. For some days past we had seen the sea birds, called boobies, none of which we had met with before; and which, from half an hour after, were continually passing the ship in large flights: from which it was conjectured, that there was an inlet or river of shallow water to the southward, where they went to feed in the day time, returning in the evening to some islands to the northward. In honour of Capt. Hervey we named this bay, Hervey's Bay.

On Tuesday, the 22nd, at six in the morning, by the help of our glasses, when a-breast of the south point of a large bay, in which the captain intended to anchor, we discovered, that the land was covered with palm-nut-trees, none of which we had seen since we had quitted the islands within the tropic. On the 23d, early in the morning, Capt. Cook attended by several gentlemen, and Tupia, went on shore to examine the country. The wind blew so fresh, and we found it so cold, that being at some distance from the shore, we took with us our cloaks. We landed a little within the point of a bay, which led into a large lagoon, by the sides of which grows the true mangrove, such as is found in the West-Indies, as it does also on some bogs, and swamps of salt water which we discovered. In these mangroves were many nests of ants of a singular kind, being as green as grass. When the

branches were moved, they came forth in great numbers, and bit the disturber most severely. These trees likewise afforded shelter for immense numbers of green caterpillars, whose bodies were covered with hairs, which, on the touch, occasioned a pain similar to the sting of a nettle, but much more acute. These insects were ranged side by side on the leaves, thirty or forty together, in a regular manner. Among the sand-banks we saw birds larger than swans, which we imagined were pelicans; and shot a kind of bustard, which weighed seventeen pounds. This bird proved very delicate food, on which account we named this bay, Bustard Bay. We likewise shot a duck of a most beautiful plumage, with a white beak. We found an abundance of oysters, of various sorts, and among the rest some hammer oysters of a curious kind. The country here is much worse than that about Botany Bay, the soil being dry and sandy, but the sides of the hills are covered with trees, which grow separately without underwood. We saw the tree that yields a gum like the *sanguis draconis*, but the leaves are longer than the same kind of trees in other parts, and hang down like those of a weeping willow. While we were in the woods, several of the natives took a survey of the ship and then departed. We saw on shore fires in many places, and repairing to one of them, found a dozen burning near them. The people were gone, but had left some shells and bones of fish they had just eaten. We perceived likewise several pieces of soft bark about the length and breadth of a man, which we judged had been used as beds. The whole was in a thicket of close trees, which afforded good shelter from the wind. This kind of encampment was in a thicket well defended from the wind. The place seemed to be much trodden, and as there was no appearance of a house, it was imagined that they spent their nights, as well as their days, in the open air: even Tupia shook his head and exclaimed, Taata Enos! "Poor Wretches!"

On Thursday, the 24th, we made sail out of the bay, and on the day following were a-breast of a point, which being immediately under the tropic, the captain named

nam
saw
pelic
now
main
Su
almo
peare
ter, a
than t
cabin
groun
seized
These
with a
the join
On
to the r
we gav
ber of
cape an
and to
admiral
land clo
west, we
we were
fathom
the ship
deeper w
an easy s
of a bay.
ship, and
her over
ward, ha
on the eve
bottom, a
On Tu
the ship an
anded wi
for that p
dr. Bank

named Cape Capricorn, on the west side whereof we saw an amazing number of large birds resembling the pelican, some of which were near five feet high. We now anchored in twelve fathom water, having the main land and barren islands in a manner all round us.

Sunday, the 27th, we stood between the range of almost barren islands, and the main land, which appeared mountainous. We had here very shallow water, and anchored in sixteen feet, which was not more than the ship drew. Mr. Banks tried to fish from the cabin windows, but the water was too shallow. The ground indeed was covered with crabs, which greedily seized the bait, and held it till they were above water. These crabs were of two kinds, one of a very fine blue, with a white belly; and the other marked with blue on the joints, and having three brown spots on the back.

On Monday, the 28th, in the morning, we sailed to the northward, and to the northermost point of land we gave the name of Cape Manifold, from the number of high hills appearing above it. Between this cape and the shore is a bay which we called Keppel's, and to several islands, we gave the name of the same admiral. This day being determined to keep the main land close aboard, which continued to trend away to the west, we got among another cluster of islands. Here we were greatly alarmed, having on a sudden but three fathom water, in a rippling tide; we immediately put the ship about, and hoisted out the boat in search of deeper water; after which we stood to the west with an easy sail, and in the evening came to the entrance of a bay. In the afternoon, having sounded round the ship, and found that there was water sufficient to carry her over the shoal, we weighed, and stood to the westward, having sent a boat a-head to sound, and at six in the evening we anchored in ten fathom, with a sandy bottom, at about two miles distant from the main.

On Tuesday, the 29th, we had thoughts of laying the ship ashore, and cleaning her bottom, and therefore ordered the master in search of a convenient place for that purpose. In this excursion Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks accompanied us; we found walking extremely

tremely incommodious, the ground being covered with grass, the seeds of which were sharp and bearded, so that they were continually sticking in our cloaths, whence they worked forwards to the flesh by means of the beard. We were also perpetually tormented with the stings of musquetos. Several places were found convenient to lay down the ship ashore, but to our great disappointment, we could meet with no fresh water. We proceeded, however, up the country, and in the interior part, we found gum trees, on the branches whereof were white ants nests formed of clay, as big as a bushel. On another tree we saw black ants, which perforated all the twigs, and after they had eaten out the pith, formed their lodging in the hollows which contained it; yet the trees were in a flourishing condition. We also saw in the air many thousands of butterflies, which ever way we looked; and every bough was covered with incredible numbers. On the dry ground we discovered, supposed to have been left by the tide, a fish about the size of a minnow, having two strong breast fins, with which it leaped away as nimbly as a frog: it did not appear to be weakened by being out of the water, nor even to prefer that element to the land, for when seen in the water it leaped on shore, and pursued its way. It was likewise remarked, that where there were small stones projecting above the water, it chose rather to leap from one stone to another, than to pass through the water.

On Wednesday, the 30th, Capt. Cook, and other gentlemen, went ashore, and having gained the summit of a hill, took a survey of the coast, and the adjacent islands, which being done, the captain proceeded with Dr. Solander up an inlet, that had been discovered the preceding day; but the weather proving unfavourable, and from a fear of being bewildered among the shoals in the night, they returned to the ship, having seen the whole day, only two Indians, who followed the boat a considerable way along shore; but the tide running strong, the captain thought it not prudent to wait for them. While these gentlemen were tracing the inlet, Mr. Banks, with a party, endeavoured to penetrate

penetrate into the country, and having met with a piece of swampy ground, we resolved to pass it; but before we got half way, we found the mud almost knee deep. The bottom was covered with branches of trees, interwoven on the surface of the swamp, on which we sometimes kept our footing; sometimes our feet slipped through; and sometimes we were so entangled among them, as not to be able to free ourselves but by groping in the mud and slime with our hands. However, we crossed it in about an hour, and judged it might be about a quarter of a mile over. Having performed this disagreeable task, we came to a spot, where had been four small fires, near which were some bones of fish that had been roasted; also grass laid in heaps, whereon four or five persons probably had slept. Our second lieutenant, Mr. Gore, at another place, saw the track of a large animal, near a gully of water; he also heard the sounds of human voices, but did not see the people. At this place two turtles, some water fowl, and a few small birds, were seen. As no water was to be found in our different excursions, for several of our crew were also rambling about, the captain called the inlet where the ship lay, Thirsty Sound. It lies in latitude 22 deg. 10 min. south, and in 210 deg. 18 min. west longitude, and may be known by a group of islands that lie right before it, between three and four leagues out at sea. We had not a single inducement to stay longer in a place, where we could not be supplied with fresh water, nor with provision of any kind. We caught neither fish nor wild fowl; nor could we get a shot at the same kind of water-fowl, which we had seen in Botany Bay. Therefore on the 31st at six o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, and put to sea. We kept without the islands that lie in shore, and to the N. W. of Thirsty Sound, as there appeared to be no safe passage between them and the main, at the same time we had a number of islands without us, extending as far as we could see. Pier Head, the N. W. point of Thirsty Sound, bore S. E. distant six leagues, being half way between the islands which are off the east point of the western inlet, and three small islands that lie directly without them.

them. Having sailed round these last, we came to an anchor in fifteen fathom water, and the weather being dark, hazy, and rainy, we remained under the lee of them till seven o'clock of the next morning.

On the 1st of June, we got under sail, and our latitude by observation was 21 deg. 29 min. south. We had now quite open the western inlet, which we have distinguished by the name of Bread Sound. A point of land which forms its N. W. entrance, we named Cape Palmerston, lying in 21 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, and in 110 deg. 54 min. W. longitude. Between this cape and Cape Townshend is the bay, which we have called the Bay of Inlets. At eight in the evening, we anchored in eleven fathom, with a sandy bottom, about two leagues from the main land.

Saturday the 2nd, we got under sail, and at noon, in latitude 20 deg. 56 min. we saw a high promontory, which we named Cape Hillsborough. It bore W. half N. distant seven miles. The land appeared to abound in wood and herbage, and is diversified with hills, plains, and valleys. A chain of islands large and small are situated at a distance from the coast and under the land, from some of which we saw smoke ascending in different places.

On Sunday, the 3d, we discovered a point of land, which we called Cape Conway, and between that and Cape Hillsborough, a bay to which we gave the name of Repulse Bay. The land about Cape Conway forms a most beautiful landscape, being diversified with hills, dales, woods, and verdant lawns. By the help of our glasses we discovered two men and a woman on one of the islands, and a canoe with an outrigger like those of Otaheite. This day we named the islands Cumberland Islands, in honour of the duke; and a passage which we had discovered, was called Whitsunday passage, from the day on which it was seen. At day-break, on Monday the 4th, we were abreast of a point, which we called Cape Gloucester. Names were also given this day to three other places, namely, Holborne Isle, Edg-cumbe Bay, and Cape Upstart, which last was so called because it rises abruptly from the low lands that surround

round
like
O
from
12 m
sing
W. N
latitu
time
leagu
point
pearl
cause
near i
tween
rugge
the co
saw fr
Thu
the ea
several
canoes
of the
have b
Dr. Sol
the eve
thered
mistak
On l
most p
Hillocl
forms
winds
point o
hence t
fine la
We no
cluster
men, v
stark n
never

round it. Inland are some hills or mountains, which, like the cape, afford but a barren prospect.

On Tuesday the 5th, we were about four leagues from land, and our latitude by observation was 19 deg. 12 min. S. We saw very large columns of smoke rising from the low lands. We continued to steer W. N. W. as the land lay, till noon on the 6th, when our latitude by observation was 19 deg. 1 min. S. at which time we had the mouth of a bay all open, distant two leagues. This we named Cleveland Bay; and the east point Cape Cleveland. The west, which had the appearance of an island, we called Magnetical island, because the compass did not traverse well when we were near it: they are both high, as is the main land between them, the whole forming a surface the most rugged, rocky, and barren of any we had seen upon the coast: yet it was not without inhabitants, for we saw smoke in several parts of the bottom of the bay.

Thursday the 7th, at day-break we were a-breast of the eastern part of this land, and in the afternoon saw several large columns of smoke upon the main; also canoes, and some trees, which we thought were those of the cocoa-nut; in search of which, as they would have been at this time very acceptable, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went ashore with lieutenant Hicks; but in the evening they returned with only a few plants, gathered from the cabbage-palm, and which had been mistaken for the cocoa-tree.

On Friday, the 8th, we stood away for the northernmost point in sight, to which we gave the name of Point Hillock. Between this and Magnetical Isle the shore forms Halifax Bay, which affords shelter from all winds. At six in the evening we were a-breast of a point of land, which we named Cape Sandwich. From hence the land trends W. and afterwards N. forming a fine large bay, which was named Rockingham Bay. We now ranged northward along the shore, towards a cluster of islands, on one of which about forty or fifty men, women, and children were standing together, all stark naked, and looking at the ship with a curiosity never observed among these people before. At noon

our

our latitude, by observation, was 17 deg. 59 min. and we were a-breast of the north point of Rockingham Bay, which bore from us W. distant about two miles. This boundary of the bay is formed by an island of considerable height, which we distinguished by the name of Dunk Isle.

On Saturday, the 9th, in the morning, we were a-breast of some small islands, which were named Frankland's Isles. At noon we were in the middle of the channel, and by observation in latitude 16 deg. 57 min. S. and in longitude 214 deg. 6 min. W. with twenty fathom water. The point on the main of which we were now abreast Capt. Cook named Cape Grafton. Having hauled round this, we found a bay three miles to the westward, in which we anchored; and called the island Green Island. Here Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went ashore with the captain, with a view of procuring water, which not being to be had easily, they soon returned aboard, and the next day we arrived near Trinity Bay, so called because discovered on Trinity Sunday.

Sunday, the 10th, was remarkable for the dangerous situation of the Endeavour, as was Tuesday the 12th; for her preservation and deliverance, as christians, or only moral philosophers, we ought to add, agreeable to the will of an over-ruling providence, who shut up the sea with doors, who appointed for it a decreed place, and said, Thus far thou shalt come, and here shall thy proud waves be stayed. As no accident remarkably unfortunate had befallen us, during a navigation of more than thirteen hundred miles, upon a coast every where abounding with the most dangerous rocks and shoals, no name of distress had hitherto been given to any cape or point of land which we had seen. But we now gave the name of Cape Tribulation, to a point we had just seen farthest to the northward, because here we became acquainted with misfortune. The cape lies in latitude 16 deg. 6 min. S. and 214 deg. 39 min. W. longitude.

This day, Sunday the 10th, at six in the evening we shortened sail, and hauled off shore close upon a wind,

t
a
o
t
o
b
b
w
f
o
o
a
f
o
h
f
w
f
d
s
b
r
o
c
r
o
k
s
t
a
n
t
t
h
e
n
e
a
r
o
f
c
o
s
o
r
o
e
v
e
n
m
e
d
i
c
i
n
e
t
h
a
t
a
n
d
l
e
v
e
l
d
e
e
p
e
r
s
t
a
r
b
o
c
a
p
i
t
a
n
o
w
l
c
o
u
l
d
b
r
i
g
h
t
i
n
g
-
b
e
l
e
n
g
t
h
s
t
a
n
t
c
o
s
t
a
n
t
n
o
w
t
h
e
v
e
n
i
n
g
h
a
d
s
u
f
f
e
r
e
d
t
o
N
o.

to avoid the danger of some rocks, which were seen a-head, and to observe whether any islands lay in the offing, as we were near the latitude of those islands, said to have been discovered by Quiros. We kept standing off from six o'clock till near nine, with a fine breeze and bright moon. We had got into twenty-one fathom water, when suddenly we fell into twelve, ten, and eight fathom, in a few minutes. Every man was instantly ordered to his station, and we were on the point of anchoring, when, on a sudden, we had again deep water, so that we thought all danger at an end, concluding we had sailed over the tail of some shoals, which we had seen in the evening. We had twenty fathoms and upwards before ten o'clock, and this depth continuing some time, the gentlemen, who had hitherto been upon duty, retired to rest; but in less than an hour the water shallowed at once from twenty to seventeen fathoms, and before soundings could be taken the ship struck upon a rock, and remained immoveable. Every one was instantly on deck, with countenances fully expressive of the horrors of our situation. Knowing we were not near the shore, we concluded that we were upon a rock of coral, the points of which are sharp, and the surface so rough, as to grind away whatever it rubbed against, even with the gentlest motion. All the sails being immediately taken in, and our boats hoisted out, we found, that the ship had been lifted over a ledge of the rock, and lay in a hollow within it. Finding the water was deepest a-stern, we carried out the anchor from the starboard quarter, and applied our whole force to the capstan, in hopes to get the vessel off, but in vain. She now beat so violently against the rock, that the crew could scarcely keep on their legs. The moon shone bright, by the light of which we could see the sheathing-boards float from the bottom of the vessel, till at length the false keel followed, so that we expected instant destruction. Our best chance of escaping seemed now to be by lightening her; but having struck at high water, we should have been in our present situation after the vessel should draw as much less water as the water had sunk; our anxiety abated a little, on finding that

the ship settled on the rocks as the tide ebbed, and we flattered ourselves, that, if the ship should keep together till next tide, we might have some chance of floating her. We therefore instantly started the water in the hold, and pumped it up. The decayed stores, oil-jars, casks, ballast, six guns, and other things, were thrown overboard, in order to get at the heavier articles; and in this business we were employed till day-break, during all which time not an oath was sworn, so much were the minds of the sailors impressed with a sense of their danger.

On Monday the 11th, at day-light, we saw land at eight leagues distance, but not a single island between us and the main, on which part of the crew might have been landed, while the boat went on shore with the rest: so that the destruction of the greater part of us would have been inevitable had the ship gone to pieces. It happened that the wind died away to a dead calm before noon. As we expected high-water about eleven o'clock, every thing was prepared to make another effort to free the ship, but the tide fell so much short of that in the night, that she did not float by 18 inches, though we had thrown over-board near fifty tons weight: we therefore renewed our toil, and threw over-board every thing that could possibly be spared; as the tide fell, the water poured in so rapidly, that we could scarce keep her free by the constant working of two pumps. Our only hope now depended on the midnight tide, and preparations were accordingly made for another effort to get the ship off. The tide began to rise at five o'clock, when the leak likewise increased to such a degree, that two pumps more were manned, but only one of them would work; three, therefore, were kept going till nine o'clock, at which time the ship righted; but so much water had been admitted by the leak, that we expected she would sink as soon as the water should bear her off the rock. Our situation was now deplorable, beyond description, almost all hope being at an end. We knew that when the fatal moment should arrive, all authority would be at an end. The boats were incapable of conveying all on shore, and we

I

dreaded

dr
th
th
me
she
ma
an
the
tio
wa
fin
dor
gai
inc
so v
cou
and
ami
The
hjm
jum
stru
to h
ther
linin
and
seve
hith
it no
by a
plan
fudd
betw
us o
whil
whic
was
expe
vigo
had p
shipp

dreaded a contest for the preference, as more shocking than the shipwreck itself: yet it was considered, that those who might be left on board, would eventually meet with a milder fate than those who, by gaining the shore, would have no chance but to linger out the remains of life among the rudest savages in the universe, and in a country, where fire-arms would barely enable them to support themselves in a most wretched situation. At twenty minutes after ten the ship floated, and was heaved into deep water, when we were happy to find that she did not admit more water than she had done before: yet as the leak had for a considerable time gained on the pumps, there was now three feet nine inches water in the hold. By this time the men were so worn by fatigue of mind and body, that none of them could pump more than five or six minutes at a time, and then threw themselves, quite spent, on the deck, amidst a stream of water which came from the pumps. The succeeding man being fatigued in his turn, threw himself down in the same manner, while the former jumped up and renewed his labour, thus mutually struggling for life, till the following accident had like to have given them up a prey to absolute despair, and thereby insured our destruction. Between the inside lining of the ship's bottom, which is called the ceiling, and the outside planking, there is a space of about seventeen or eighteen inches. The man who had hitherto taken the depth of water at the well, had taken it no farther than the ceiling, but being now relieved by another person, who took the depth of the outside plank, it appeared by this mistake, that the leak had suddenly gained upon the pumps, the whole difference between the two planks. This circumstance deprived us of all hopes, and scarce any one thought it worth while to labour, for the longer preservation of a life which must so soon have a period: but the mistake was soon discovered; and the joy arising from such unexpected good news inspired the men with so much vigour, that before eight o'clock in the morning, they had pumped out considerably more water than they had shipped. We now talked of nothing but getting the

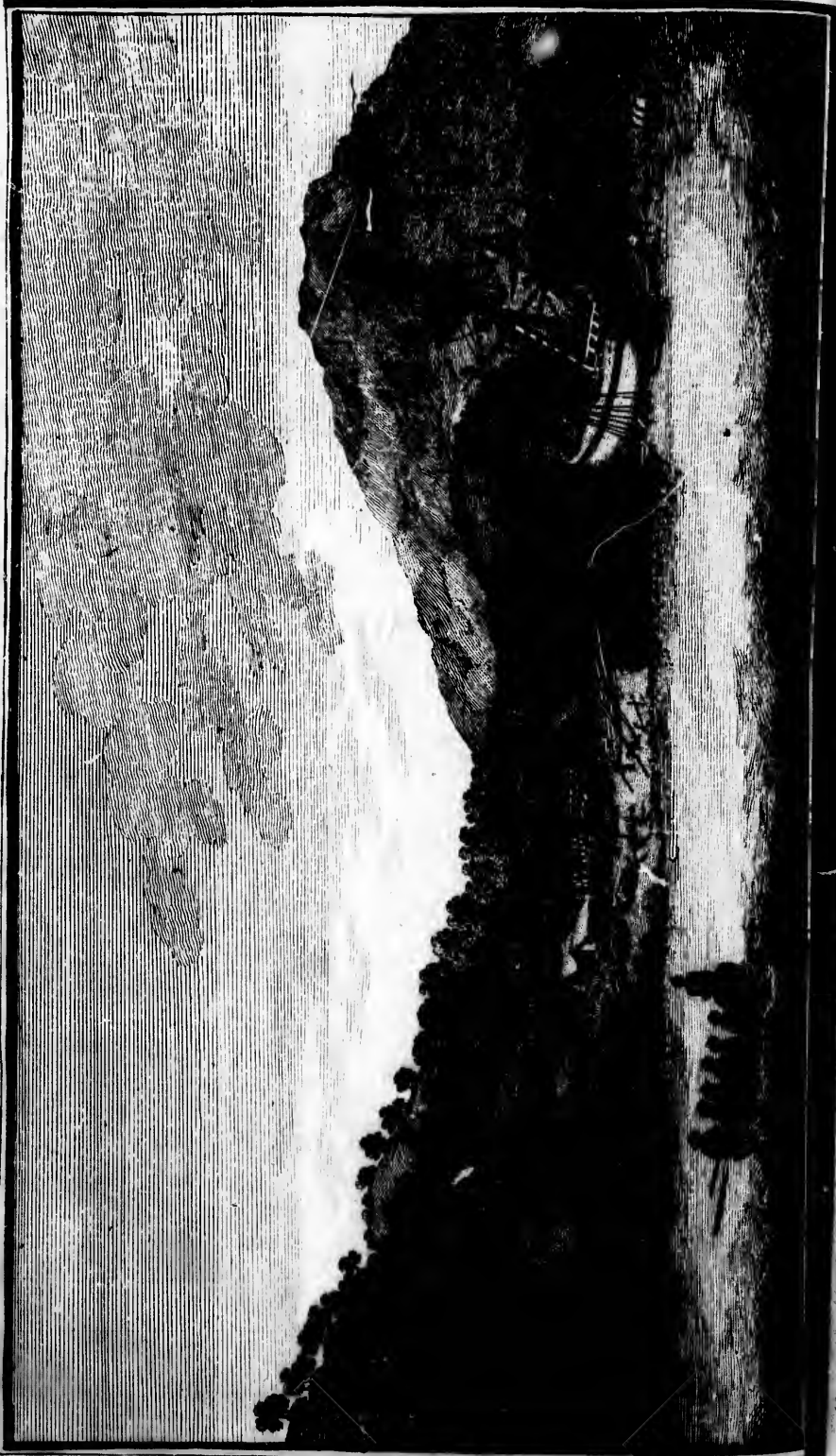
ship into some harbour, and set heartily to work to get in the anchors; one of which, and the cable of another, we lost; but these were now considered as trifles. Having a good breeze from sea, we got under sail at eleven o'clock, and steered for land. As we could not discover the exact situation of the leak, we had no prospect of stopping it within side of the vessel, but on Tuesday the 12th, the following expedient, which one of the midshipmen had formerly seen tried with success, was adopted. We took an old studding sail, and having mixed a large quantity of oakham and wool, chopped small, it was stitched down in handfuls on the sail, as lightly as possible, the dung of sheep and other filth being spread over it. Thus prepared, the sail was hauled under the ship, by ropes, which kept it extended till it came under the leak, when the suction carried in the oakham and wool from the surface of the sail. This experiment succeeded so well, that instead of three pumps, the water was easily kept under with one.

We had hitherto no farther view than to run the ship into some harbour, and build a vessel from her materials, in which we might reach the East-Indies; but we now began to think of finding a proper place to repair her damage, and then to pursue her voyage on its original plan. At six in the evening we anchored seven leagues from the shore; and found that the ship made 15 inches water an hour during the night; but as the pumps could clear this quantity, we were not uneasy. At nine in the morning we passed two islands, which were called Hope Islands, because the reaching of them had been the object of our wishes, at the time of the shipwreck. In the afternoon, the master was sent out with two boats to sound and search for a harbour where the ship might be repaired, and we anchored at sun-set, in four fathoms water, two miles from the shore. One of the mates being sent out in the pinnace, returned at nine o'clock, reporting, that he had found such a harbour as was wanted, at the distance of two leagues.

Wednesday the 13th, at six o'clock we sailed, having previously sent two boats a-head, to point out the shoals that we saw in our way. We soon anchored about a
mile

get
ther,
Hav-
even
: dif-
spect
: day
the
was
ving
pped
l, as
filth
was
nded
ed in
This
three
.
e ship
mate-
but
to re-
on its
ored
e ship
ut as
eafy,
hich
hem
f the
t out
here
-fet.
One
ed at
har-
s.
ving
oals
at a
mile

London, Published by Alax. Hogg at the Kings Arms, N^o. 14, Peterborough Row.



mile
found
better
we ha
blew
could
maine
the co
hills,
Our
scurve
that h
the aft
so that
disagre
and the
twice r
fast, on
fore-top
and, as
o'clock
was mo
cables,

The Ship
ing th
duction
adja
The R
tremity
vigatio
That C
Specime

O N M
a te
soon as it

mile from the shore, when the captain went out, and found the channel very narrow, but the harbour was better adapted to our present purpose, than any place we had seen in the whole course of the voyage. As it blew very fresh this day and the following night, we could not venture to run into the harbour, but remained at anchor during the two succeeding days, in the course of which we observed four Indians on the hills, who stopped and made two fires.

Our men, by this time, began to be afflicted with the scurvey; and our Indian friend Tupia was so ill with it, that he had livid spots on both his legs. Mr. Green the astronomer was likewise ill of the same disorder; so that our being detained from landing was every way disagreeable. The wind continued fresh till the 17th, and then we resolved to push in for the harbour, and twice ran the ship a-ground; the second time she stuck fast, on which we took down the booms, fore-yard, and fore-top masts, and made a raft on the side of the ship; and, as the tide happened to be rising, she floated at one o'clock. We soon got her into the harbour, where she was moored along the side of a beach, and the anchors, cables, &c. immediately taken out of her.

C H A P. IX.

The Ship is refitted in Endeavour River—Transactions during that Time—The Country, its Inhabitants and Productions described—A Description of the Harbour, the adjacent Country, and several Islands near the Coast—The Range from Endeavour River to the northern Extremity of the Country—And the Dangers of that Navigation—The Endeavour departs from South Wales—That Country, its Product and People described, with a Specimen of the Language.

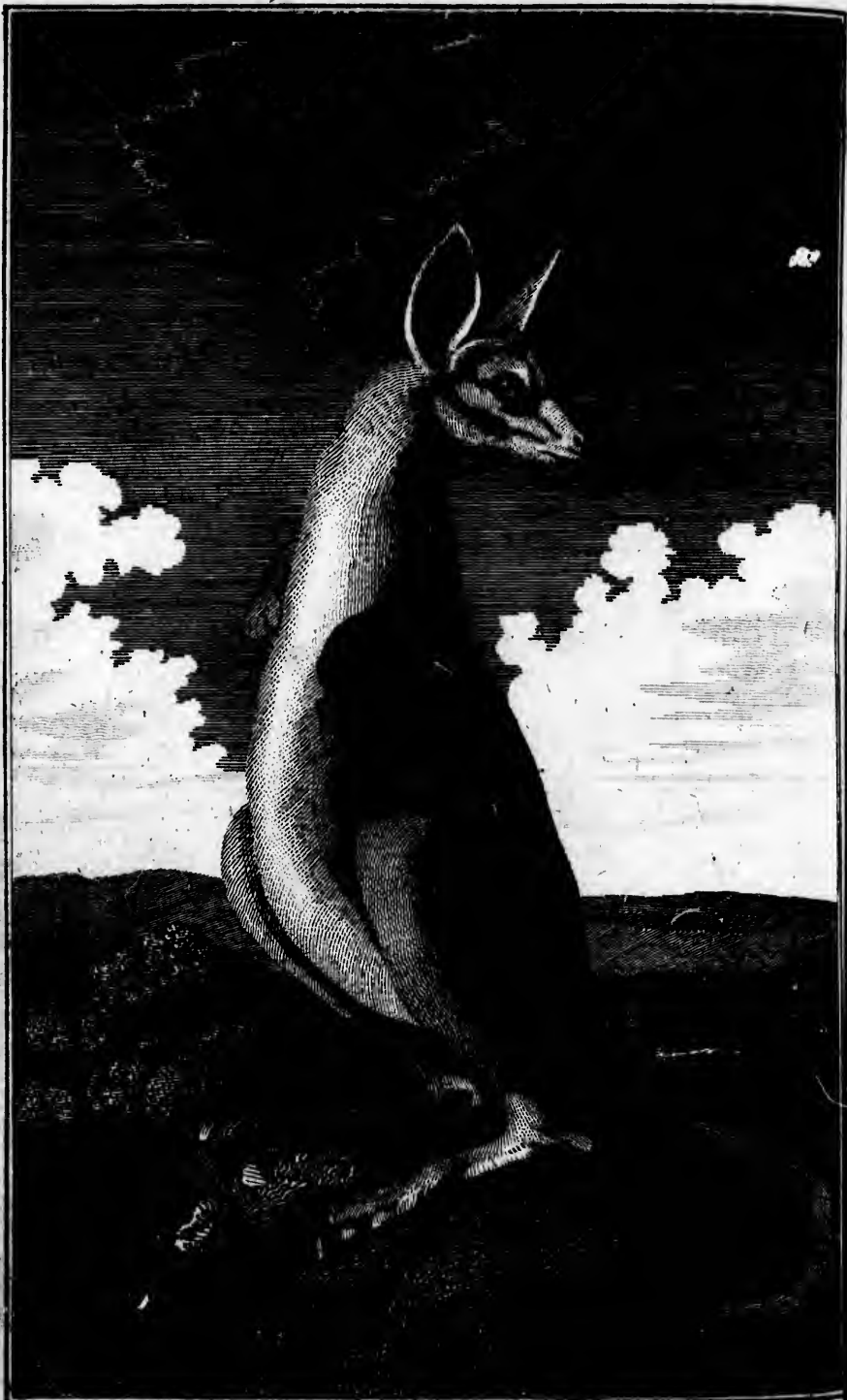
ON Monday, the 18th, in the morning, we erected a tent for the sick, who were brought on shore as soon as it was ready for their reception. We likewise built

built a stage from the ship to the shore, and set up a tent to hold the provisions and stores, that were landed the same day. The boat was now dispatched in search of fish for the refreshment of the sick, but she returned without getting any; but Tupia employed himself in angling, and living entirely upon what he caught, recovered his health very fast. In an excursion Mr. Banks made up the country, he saw the frames of several huts, and Capt. Cook having ascended one of the highest hills, observed the land to be stoney and barren, and the low land near the river over-run with mangroves, among which the salt-water flowed every tide.

Tuesday, the 19th, the smith's forge was set up, and the armourer prepared the necessary iron-work for the repair of the vessel. The officers stores, ballast, water, &c. were likewise ordered out, in order to lighten the ship. This day Mr. Banks crossed the river to view the country, which he observed to be little else than sand hills. He saw vast flocks of pigeons, most beautiful birds, of which he shot several. On Wednesday the 20th, as we were removing the coals, the water rushed in, near the foremast, about three feet from the keel; so that it was resolved to clear the hold entirely; which being done on Friday the 22nd, we warped the ship higher up the harbour, to a station more proper for laying her ashore, in order to stop the leak. Early in the morning, the tide having left her, we proceeded to examine the leak, when it appeared that the rocks had cut through four planks into the timbers, and that three other planks were damaged. In these breaches not a splinter was to be seen, the whole being smooth as if cut away by an instrument: but it was the will of an omnipotent being, that the vessel should be preserved by a very singular circumstance: for though one of the holes was large enough to have sunk her, even with eight pumps constantly at work, yet this inlet to our destruction was partly stopped up, by a fragment of the rock being left sticking therein. We likewise found some pieces of the oak-ham, wool, &c. which had got between the timbers,
and

set up a
landed
search
returned
himself
caught,
on Mr.
of seve-
e of the
ey and
n with
d every

up, and
for the
, water,
ten the
to view
se than
, most
n Wed-
als, the
et from
he hold
22nd,
o a sta-
to stop
ing left
appear-
nto the
maged.
en, the
ment:
hat the
ircum-
enough
ntly at
stopped
ticking
e oak-
mbers,
and



An Animal found on the Coast of NEW HOLLAND
called KANGUROO.

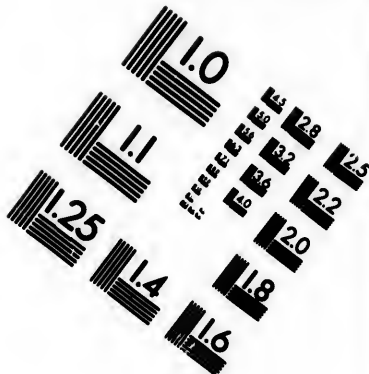
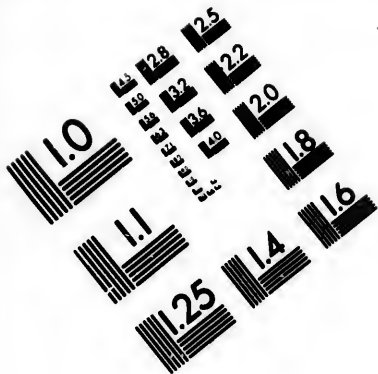
and st
left op
to var
were
penter
people
pigeon
water,
mouse-
size of
On S
the fein
yet we
This d
mentio
the dev
he, as
had hon
the graf
touched
wards d
acknow
and full
prehenfi
Sunda
him, pro
few palm
this day
already r
like a gr
its foot r
ship on t
ceding d
her larbo
ed the h
Mr. Ban
plants int
water, b
however
e state of
the 25th,

and stopped those parts of the leak that the stone had left open. Exclusive of the leak, great damage was done to various parts of the ship's bottom. While the smiths were employed in making nails and bolts, the carpenters began to work on the vessel; and some of the people were sent on the other side of the river to shoot pigeons for the sick. They found a stream of fresh water, several inhabitants of the Indians, and saw a mouse-coloured animal, exceeding swift, and about the size of a greyhound.

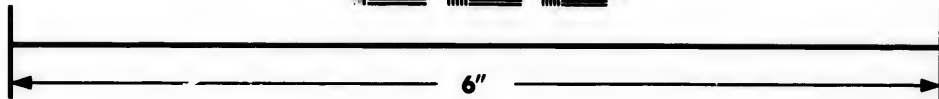
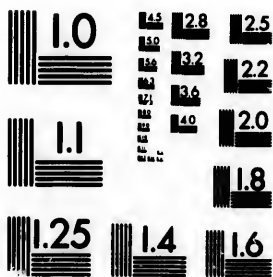
On Saturday the 23d, a boat was dispatched to haul the seine, and returned at noon with only three fish, and yet we saw them in plenty leaping about the harbour. This day many of the crew saw the animal above-mentioned; and one of the seamen declared he had seen the devil, which John thus described, "He was, says he, as large as a one gallon keg, and very like it: he had horns and wings, yet he crept so slowly through the grass, that if I had not been afraid, I might have touched him." This formidable apparition we afterwards discovered to have been a batt, which we must acknowledge has a frightful appearance, it being black, and full as large as a partridge; but the man's own apprehensions had furnished his devil with horns.

Sunday, Mr. Gore and a party of men sent out with him, procured a bunch or two of wild plantains, and a few palm cabbages, for the refreshment of the sick: and this day the Captain and Mr. Banks saw the animal already mentioned. It had a long tail that it carried like a greyhound, leaped like a deer, and the point of its foot resembled that of a goat. The repairs of the ship on the starboard side having been finished the preceding day, the carpenters now began to work under her larboard bow; and being examined abaft it appeared she had received very little injury in that quarter. Mr. Banks having removed his whole collection of plants into the bread room, they were this day under water, by which some of them were totally destroyed; however by great care most of them were restored to a state of preservation. A plant was found this day, the 25th, the leaves of which were almost as good as spinnage;





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
E8
E6
E3
E2

1.0
0.1

spinnage; also a fruit of a deep purple colour, and the size of a golden pippin, which after having been kept a few days tasted like a damson. On Tuesday, the 26th, the carpenter was engaged in caulking the ship, and the men in other necessary business; and on the 27th the armourer continued to work at the forge, and the carpenter on the ship; while the captain made several hauls with the large net, but caught only between twenty and thirty fish, which were distributed among the sick, and those who were not yet quite recovered. We began this day to move some of the weight from the after-part of the ship forward, to ease her. On the 28th, Mr. Banks with some seamen went up into the country, to whom he shewed a plant which served them for greens, and which the inhabitants of the West-Indies call Indian Kale. Here we saw a tree notched for climbing; also nests of white ants from a few inches to five feet in height; prints of mens feet, and the tracks of three or four animals were likewise discovered.

On Friday the 29th, at two o'clock in the morning, Capt. Cook with Mr. Green, observed an emersion of Jupiter's first satellite: the time here was 2 hours 18 min. 53 sec. which makes the longitude of this place 214 deg. 42 min. 30 sec. W. and the latitude 15 deg. 26 min. S. At dawn of day the boat was sent out to haul for fish, and took what made an allowance of one pound and a half to each man. One of our midshipmen, this day abroad with his gun, reported, that he had seen a wolf, resembling exactly the same species in America, at which he shot, but could not kill it. The next morning, being the 30th, the captain ascended a hill to take a view of the sea, when he observed innumerable sand banks and shoals, in every direction; but to the northward there was an appearance of a passage, which seemed the only way to steer clear of the surrounding dangers, especially as the wind blows constantly from the S. E. Mr. Gore saw this day two straw coloured animals of the size of a hare, but shaped like a dog. In the afternoon the people returned with such a quantity of fish, that two pounds and a half were distributed to each man; and plenty of greens had

had been gathered, which when boiled with peas made an excellent mess, and we all thought this day's fare an unspeakable refreshment.

On Sunday, the 1st of July, all the crew had permission to go on shore, except one from each mess, part of whom were again sent out with the seine, and were again equally successful. Some of our people who went up in the country, gave an account of their having seen several animals, and a fire about a mile up the river. On Tuesday the 3d, the master, who had been sent in the pinnace, returned, and reported, that he had found a passage out to sea, between shoals which consisted of coral rocks, many whereof were dry at low water. He found some cockles so large, that one of them was more than sufficient for two men; likewise plenty of other shell-fish, of which he brought a supply to the ship, in his return to which he had landed in a bay where some Indians were at supper; but they instantly retired, leaving some sea eggs by a fire for dressing them. This day we made another attempt to float the ship, and happily succeeded at high water; when we found, that by the position she had lain in, one of her planks was sprung, so that it was again necessary to lay her ashore. An alligator swam by her several times at high water.

Wednesday the 4th was employed in trimming her upon an even keel, warping her over, and laying her down on a sand-bank, on the south side of the river; and on the next day, the 5th, she was again floated, and moored off the beach, in order to receive the stores on board. This day we crossed the harbour, and found on a sandy beach a great number of fruits, not discovered before; among others a cocoa-nut, which Tupia said had been opened by a crab, and was judged to be what the Dutch call Beurs Krabbe. The vegetable substances which Mr. Banks picked up were encrusted with marine productions, and covered with barnacles, a proof of their having been transplanted, probably from Terra del Esperito Santo. This gentleman with a party having sailed up the river on the 6th, to make an excursion up the country, returned on the

8th. Having followed the course of the river, they found it at length contracted into a narrow channel, bounded by steep banks, adorned with trees of a most beautiful appearance, among which was the bark tree. The land was low and covered with grass, and seemed capable of being cultivated to great advantage. The night, though we had made a fire on the banks of the river, was rendered extremely disagreeable by the stings of the musquitos, that cause an almost intolerable torment. Going in pursuit of game, we saw four animals, two of which were chased by Mr. Banks's greyhound, but they greatly outstripped him in speed, by leaping over the long thick grass, which incommoded the dog in running. It was observed of the animals, that they bounded forward on two legs instead of running on four. Having returned to the boat we proceeded up the river, till it contracted to a brook of fresh water, but in which the tide rose considerably. Having stopped to pass the night, with hope of some rest, we saw a smoke at a distance, on which three of us approached it, but the Indians were gone. We saw the impressions of feet on the sand, below high-water mark, and found a fire still burning in the hollow of an old tree. At a small distance were several huts, and we observed ovens dug in the ground: the remains of a recent meal were likewise apparent. We now retired to our resting-place, and slept on plantain leaves, with a bunch of grass for our pillows, on the side of a sand-bank, under the shelter of a bush. The tide favouring our return in the morning, we lost no time in getting back to the ship. The master, who had been seven leagues at sea, returned soon after Mr. Banks, bringing with him three turtles, which he took with a boat-hook, and which together weighed near eight hundred pounds. He was sent out next morning, and Mr. Banks accompanied him with proper instruments for catching turtle: but not being successful, he would not go back that night, so that Mr. Banks, after collecting some shells and marine productions, returned in his own small boat. In the morning the second lieutenant was sent to bring the master back, soon after which four Indians,

dian
tain
as th
proj
shot
retur
of in
their
as if
defer
when
whic
of th
that
panio
interi
posite
side t
lande
had e
them.
suade
which
on sho
get be
convir
more
with t
vitatio
they d
were c
their c
black,
the br
with st
some p
teeth v
feature
repeate
The
dians

dians, in a small canoe, were within sight. The captain now determined to take no notice of these people, as the most likely way to be noticed by them. This project answered; two of them came within musquet shot of the vessel, where they conversed very loud; in return, the people on board shouted, and made signs of invitation. The Indians gradually approached, with their lances held up; not in a menacing manner, but as if they meant to intimate that they were capable of defending themselves. They came almost along-side, when the captain threw them cloth, nails, paper, &c. which did not seem to attract their notice, at length one of the sailors threw a small fish, which so pleased them, that they hinted their designs of bringing their companions, and immediately rowed for the shore. In the interim, Tupia and some of the crew landed on the opposite shore. The four Indians now came quite along-side the ship, and having received farther presents, landed where Tupia and the sailors had gone. They had each two lances, and a stick with which they threw them. Advancing towards the English, Tupia persuaded them to lay down their arms, and sit by him, which they readily did. Others of the crew now going on shore, the Indians seemed jealous, lest they should get between them and their arms, but care was taken to convince them that no such thing was intended, and more trifles were presented to them. The crew staid with them till dinner-time, and then made signs of invitation for them to go to the ship and eat; but this they declined, and retired in their canoe. These men were of the common stature, with very small limbs; their complexion was of a deep chocolate; their hair black, either lank or curled, but not of the woolly kind; the breasts and upper lip of one of them were painted with streaks of white, which he called carbanda, and some part of their bodies had been painted red. Their teeth were white and even; their eyes bright, and their features rather pleasing; their voices musical, and they repeated several English words with great readiness.

The next morning, the visit of three of these Indians was renewed, and they brought with them a

fourth, whom they called Xaparico, who appeared to be a person of some consequence. The bone of a bird, about six inches long, was thrust through the gristle of his nose; and indeed all the inhabitants of this place had their noses bored, for the reception of such an ornament. These people being all naked, the captain gave one of them an old shirt, which he bound round his head like a turban, instead of using it to cover any part of his body. They brought a fish to the ship, which was supposed to be in payment for that given them the day before: after staying some time with apparent satisfaction, they suddenly leaped into their canoe, and rowed off, from a jealousy of some of the gentlemen who were examining it.

On the 12th of July, three Indians visited Tupia's tent, and after remaining some time, went for two others, whom they introduced by name. Some fish was offered them, but they seemed not much to regard it; after eating a little, they gave the remainder to Mr. Banks's dog. Some ribbands which had been given them, to which medals were suspended round their necks, were so changed by smoke, that it was difficult to judge what colour they had been, and the smoke had made their skins look darker than their natural colour, from whence it was thought that they had slept close to their fires, as a preventative against the sting of the musquitos. Both the strangers had bones through their noses, and a piece of bark tied over their foreheads; and one of them had an ornament of strings round his arm; and an elegant necklace made of shells. Their canoe was about ten feet long, and calculated to hold four persons, and when it was in shallow water they moved it by the help of poles. Their lances had only a single point, and some of them were barbed with fish-bones. On the 14th Mr. Gore shot one of the mouse-coloured animals above-mentioned. It chanced to be a young one, weighing more than 38 pounds; but when they are full grown, they are as large as a sheep. The skin of this beast which is called Kangaroo, is covered with short fur, and is of a dark mouse colour; the head and ears are somewhat like those of a hare;

hare;
fine ea
day, v
owing
waited

On
the cap
canoe,
of fear
intima
The na
crew, o
he did
not abo
penetra
yards.
were w

On t
well as
visited
one of
peatedly
fused, t
one of
from M
a most
two of
ship wh
away.
equally
canoe,
with M
on shor
where n
soon as
fire bran
the win
to the d
to death
have der
ple cam

hare; this animal was dressed for dinner, and proved fine eating. The ship's crew fed on turtle almost every day, which were finer than those eaten in England, owing to their being killed before their natural fat was wasted, and their juices changed.

On the 17th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went with the captain into the woods, and saw four Indians in a canoe, who went on shore, and walked up without sign of fear. They accepted some beads, and departed, intimating that they did not chuse to be followed. The natives being now become familiar with the ship's crew, one of them was desired to throw his lance, which he did with such dexterity and force, that though it was not above four feet from the ground at the highest, it penetrated deeply into a tree at the distance of fifty yards. The natives now came on board the ship, and were well pleased with their entertainment.

On the 19th, we saw several of the women, who, as well as the men, were quite naked. We were this day visited by ten Indians, who seemed resolved to have one of the turtles that was on board, which they repeatedly made signs for, and being as repeatedly refused, they expressed the utmost rage and resentment, one of them in particular, having received a denial from Mr. Banks, he stamped, and pushed him away in a most violent manner. At length they laid hands on two of the turtles, and drew them to the side of the ship where the canoe lay, but the sailors took them away. They made several similar attempts, but being equally unsuccessful, they leaped suddenly into their canoe, and rowed off. At this instant the captain, with Mr. Banks, and five or six of the seamen, went on shore, where they arrived before the Indians, and where many of the crew were already employed. As soon as the Indians landed, one of them snatched a fire brand from under a pitch-kettle, and running to the windward of what effects were left on shore, set fire to the dry grass, which burned rapidly, scorched a pig to death, burned part of the smith's forge, and would have destroyed a tent of Mr. Banks, but that some people came from the ship just in time to get it out of the way

way of the flames. In the mean while the Indians went to a place where the fishing-nets lay, and a quantity of linen was laid out to dry, and there again set fire to the grass, in spite of all persuasion, and even of threats. A musquet loaded with small shot was fired, and one of them being wounded, they ran away, and this second fire was extinguished: but the other burned far into the woods.

The Indians still continued in fight, a musquet charged with ball was fired, the report only of which sent them out of sight; but their voices being heard in the woods, the captain with a few people went to meet them. Both parties stopped when in sight of each other; at which time an old Indian advanced before the rest a little way, but soon halted, and after having spoke some words, which we could not understand, he retreated to his companions, and they all retired slowly in a body. Having found means to seize some of their darts, we continued following them about a mile, and then sat down upon some rocks, the Indians sitting down also about an hundred yards from us. The old man again came forward, having a lance without a point in his hand; he stopped several times at different distances, and spoke, whereupon the captain made signs of friendship, which they answered. The old man now returned, and spoke aloud to his companions, who placed their lances against a tree, and came forward in a friendly manner. When they came up to us, we returned the darts we had taken, and we perceived with great satisfaction, that this rendered the reconciliation complete. In this party were four persons whom we had not seen before, who, as usual, were introduced to us by name, but the man who had been wounded in the attempt to burn our nets, was not among them. Having received from us some trinkets, they walked amicably towards the coast, intimating by signs, that they would not fire the grass again. When we came opposite the ship they sat down, but we could not prevail with them to go on board. They accepted a few musquet balls, the use and effect of which the captain endeavoured to explain. We then left them,

and w
at the
of the
mate,
determ
for us
work

Frid
master
ward,
ed and
dians;
at nig
22nd,
which
bearde
finger,
tives.
siderab
On the
been fe
fell in
much
his app
his kni
would
to deta
were o
themse
having
that h
the dir
shewec
ed, th
may h
seemed
South
cherca
also cr
tut, t
Mr. F

and when arrived at the ship, we saw the woods burning at the distance of two miles. We had no conception of the fury with which grass would burn in this hot climate, nor of the difficulty of extinguishing it; but we determined, that if it should ever again be necessary for us to pitch our tents in such a situation, our first work should be to clear the ground round us.

Friday the 20th, our ship being ready for sea, the master was sent in search of a passage to the northward, but could not find any; while the captain founded and buoyed the bar. This day we saw not any Indians; but the hills for many miles were on fire, which at night made an appearance truly sublime. On the 22nd, we killed a turtle, through both shoulders of which stuck a wooden harpoon, near fifteen inches long, bearded at the end, and about the thickness of a man's finger, resembling such as we had seen among the natives. The turtle appeared to have been struck a considerable time, for the wound was perfectly healed. On the 24th, one of the sailors, who with others had been sent to gather kale, having strayed from the rest, fell in with four Indians at dinner. He was at first much alarmed, but had prudence enough to conceal his apprehensions; and sitting down by them gave them his knife, which having examined, they returned. He would then have left them; but they seemed disposed to detain him, till, by feeling his hands and face, they were convinced he was made of flesh and blood like themselves. They treated him with great civility, and having kept him about half an hour, they made signs that he might depart. When he left them, not taking the direct way to the ship, they came from the fire and shewed him the nearest way; from whence we concluded, that they well knew from whence he came. We may here observe, that the language of these people seemed to us more harsh than that of the islanders in the South-Sea. They were continually repeating the word *chercau*, a term as we imagined of admiration. They also cried out, when they saw any thing new, *cher, tut, tut, tut, tut!* which probably was a similar expression. Mr. Banks having gone on shore in search of plants, found

found the cloth which had been distributed among the natives, lying in a heap, as useless lumber. Indeed they seemed to set very little value upon any thing we had except our turtle, a commodity we were least inclined and able to spare.

Tuesday the 24th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returning from the woods, through a deep valley, found lying on the ground several marking nuts, the *Anacardium orientale*: but they sought in vain for the tree that bore them. On the 26th, as Mr. Banks was again searching the country to enrich his natural history, he took an animal of the opossum kind, with two young ones. On the 27th, Mr. Gore shot a Kangaroo, which weighed eighty-four pounds, though not at its full growth. When dressed on the 28th, we found it had a much worse flavour than that we had eaten before.

Sunday the 29th, we got the anchor up, and made all ready to put to sea. A boat was sent out to ascertain what water was upon the bar; when returned, the officer reported, that there was only thirteen feet, which was six inches less than the ship drew. We therefore this day gave up all hopes of sailing. Monday the 30th, we had fresh gales with hazy weather and rain, till Tuesday the 31st, at two in the morning, when the weather became more moderate. During all this time the pinnace and yawl continued to ply the net and hook with tolerable good success, bringing in at different times a turtle, and from two to three hundred weight of fish.

On Wednesday the 1st of August, the pumps were examined by the carpenter, who found them all in a state of decay, and some quite rotten, owing, as he said, to the sap having been left in the wood: but as the ship admitted only an inch of water in an hour, we hoped she was stout enough, and trusted to her soundness.

On Saturday the 4th, at seven o'clock in the morning, we once more got under sail, and put to sea. We stood off E. by N. with the pinnace a-head to keep sounding. About noon we came to an anchor, when the harbour from whence we had sailed bore S. 70 W. distant about five leagues. The captain here named the northernmost

point

point
we h
serva
ver is
in a v
depth
withi
and f
ten o
of th
the h
is fro
upon
some
sandy
bour
or sco
beans,
goats,
kind,
are ve
land fo
parrot
names
are w
perch
hills, t
that o
the ap
rious
mon.
in for
count
in gre
On
mast-h
which
city of
pound
attem
which
N

point of land in sight Cape Bedford, and the harbour we had quitted Endeavour River. Our latitude by observation was now 15 deg. 32 min. S. Endeavour River is only a small bar harbour, or creek, which runs in a winding channel three or four leagues inland. The depth of water for shipping is not more than a mile within the bar, and only on the north-side. At the new and full of the moon, it is high-water between nine and ten o'clock. It must also be remembered, that this part of the coast is so barricaded with shoals, as to make the harbour very difficult of access: the safest approach is from the southward, keeping the main land close upon the board all the way. Over the south point is some high land, but the north point is formed by a low sandy beach. The provisions we procured in this harbour consisted of turtle, oysters of different sorts, cavalhe or scomber, flat fish, skate or ray fish, purslain, wild beans, and cabbage-palms. Of quadrupedes, there are goats, wolves, pole-cats, a spotted animal of the viverra kind, and several kinds of serpents, some of which only are venomous. Dogs are the only tame animals. The land fowls are kites, crows, hawks, loriquets, cockatoos, parrots, pigeons, and small birds of various sorts, the names of which we could not learn. The water fowls are wild geese, curleus, hens, whistling ducks that perch on trees, and some few others. The soil of the hills, though stoney, produces coarse grass besides wood, that of the valleys is in general well clothed, and has the appearance of fertility. The trees here are of various sorts, of which the gum trees are the most common. On each side of the river are mangroves, which in some parts extend a mile within the coast. The country is well watered, and ant-hills are every where in great numbers.

On Saturday the 4th, Capt. Cook went up to the mast-head to look at some dangerous shoals, several of which he saw above the water. This day such a quantity of fish was caught, as allowed a dividend of two pounds to each man. During the six following days we attempted to sail between the shoals and breakers, by which we were every way surrounded. On the 10th

we were between a head land and three islands, which had been discovered the preceding day. We now entertained hopes of being out of danger; but this not proving to be the case, we called the head-land Cape Flattery. Some land was now discovered, and was generally taken for the main; but in the captain's opinion a cluster of islands. Upon this diversity of sentiments it was resolved to bring the ship to an anchor. This done, the captain landed, and from a high point took a survey of the sea-coast, by which he was confirmed in his conjecture. On the point where he stood were seen the prints of human feet, in white sand of an exquisite fineness; and the place was named Point Lookout. To the northward of this the coast appeared to be shoal and flat, for a considerable distance, which did not encourage our hope, that the channel we had hitherto found in with the land would continue.

On Saturday the 11th, early in the morning, Mr. Banks and Capt. Cook went to visit the largest of the three islands, and having gained the summit of the highest hill, they beheld a reef of rocks, whereon the sea broke in a frightful manner; but the hazy weather preventing a perfect view, they lodged under a bush during the night, and next day seeing what had the appearance of a channel between the reefs, one of the mates on the 12th, was sent out in the pinnace to examine it; and at noon returned, having found between fifteen and twenty-eight fathom of water; but it blew so hard, that the mate did not dare to venture into one of the channels, which he said appeared to be very narrow; but the captain judged he had seen them to a disadvantage. While busy in his survey, Mr. Banks was attentive to his favourite pursuit, and collected many plants he had not before seen. This island, visible at twelve leagues distance, and in general barren, we found to be about eight leagues in circumference. There are some sandy bays and low-land on the N. W. side, which is covered with long grass, and trees of the same kind with those on the main; lizards of a very large size also abounded, some of which we took. We found also fresh water in two places; one running stream, close to
the

the sea, was a little brackish; the other was a standing pool perfectly sweet. We were surprized to see, that, notwithstanding the distance of this island from the main, it was sometimes visited by the Indians from thence; as was plain from seven or eight frames of their huts which we found. All these were built on eminences, and from their situation, we judged, that the weather here, at certain seasons, is invariably calm and mild. On our return to the ship, the captain named this place the Lizard Island, on account of our having seen no other animals but lizards. When returning, we landed on a low sandy island, upon which were birds of various kinds. We took a nest of young eagles, and therefore called the place Eagle Island. We found also a nest of some other bird, of a most enormous size: it was made with sticks upon the ground, and was not less than six and twenty feet in circumference, and two feet eight inches high. We perceived that this place also had been visited by the Indians. During our absence from the ship, the master had landed on several low islands, where he had seen great heaps of turtle shells, and found the fins of them, which the Indians had left hanging on the trees, so fresh, that they were dressed and eaten by the boat's crew.

On Sunday the 12th, the officers held a consultation, and we were unanimous in opinion, that it would be best to quit the coast altogether, till we could approach it with less danger; in consequence of which concurrent opinion, we sailed on Monday the 13th, and got through one of the channels in the reef, happy at finding ourselves once more in the open sea, after having been surrounded by dreadful shoals and rocks for near three months. We had now sailed above 1000 miles, during which run we had been obliged to keep sounding, without the intermission of a single minute; a circumstance which, it is supposed, never happened to any ship but the Endeavour. The passage through which we passed into the open sea beyond the reef, is in latitude 14 deg. 32 min. S. and may always be known by the three high islands within it, which Capt. Cook called the Islands of Direction, because by these

a stranger may find a safe channel through the reef quite to the main. The channel lies from Lizard Island N. E. half N. distant three leagues, and is about one third of a mile broad, and much the same in length. The islands abound in turtle and other fish, and on the beach we found bamboos, cocoa-nuts, pumice-stone, and the seeds of plants, supposed to be waisted thither by the trade winds, as the plants themselves are not natives of the country.

On Tuesday the 14th, we anchored, and by observation, our latitude was 13 deg. 46 min. S. and at this time we had no land in sight. On the 15th we steered a westerly course, in order to get sight of land, that we might not overshoot the passage, if a passage there was between this land and New Guinea. Early in the afternoon we had sight of land, which had the appearance of hilly islands, but it was judged to be part of the main, and we saw breakers between the vessel and the land, in which there was an opening; to get clear, we set all our sails, and stood to the northward till midnight, and then went on a southward tack for about two miles, when the breeze died away to a dead calm. When day-light came on we saw a dreadful surf break at a vast height, within a mile of the ship, towards which the rolling waves carried her with great rapidity. Thus distressed, the boats were sent a-head to tow, and the head of the vessel was brought about, but not till she was within a hundred yards of the rock, between which and her there was nothing left but the chasm, and which had risen and broke to a wonderful height on the rock; but in the moment we expected instant destruction, a breeze, hardly discernable, aided the boats in getting the vessel in an oblique direction from the rock. The hopes, however, afforded by this providential circumstance, were destroyed by a perfect calm, which succeeded in a few minutes; yet the breeze once more returned, before we had lost the little ground which had been gained. At this time a small opening was seen in the reef, and a young officer being sent to examine it, found that its breadth did not much exceed the length of the ship, but that there was smooth water on the

other

other
prefer
but t
water
with
quar
the di
When
drove
of des
openin
it, and
vented
channe
crew w
they h
name o
through
minent
in sight
near it
to fish
catchin
zing: fix
them.
rare she
On t
were ca
point o
Head.
islands,
A point
which t
many o
Bird I
flocks o
were se
several
the nati
during
through

other side of the rocks. Animated by the desire of preserving life, we now attempted to pass the opening; but this was impossible; for it having become high-water in the interim, the ebb tide rushed through it with amazing impetuosity, carrying the ship about a quarter of a mile from the reef, and she soon reached the distance of near two miles, by the help of the boats. When the ebb tide was spent, the tide of flood again drove the vessel very near the rocks, so that our prospect of destruction was renewed, when we discovered another opening, and a light breeze springing up, we entered it, and were driven through it, with a rapidity that prevented the ship from striking against either side of the channel. The ship now came to an anchor, and our crew were grateful for having regained a station, which they had been very lately most anxious to quit. The name of Providence Channel was given to the opening through which the ship had thus escaped the most imminent dangers. A high promontory on the main land in sight, was denominated Cape Weymouth, and a bay near it Weymouth Bay. This day the boats went out to fish, and met with great success, particularly in catching cockles, some of which were of such an amazing size, as to require the strength of two men to move them. Mr. Banks likewise succeeded in his search for rare shells, and different kinds of coral.

On the 18th, we discovered several small islands, which were called Forbes's Islands, and had a sight of a high point of land on the main, which was named the Bolt Head. On the 19th, we discovered several other small islands, the land of which was low, barren, and sandy. A point was seen, and called Cape Grenville, and a bay which took the name of Temple Bay. In the afternoon many other islands were seen, which were denominated Bird Isles, from their being frequented by numerous flocks of birds. On the 20th, many more small islands were seen, on one of which were a few trees, and several Indian huts, supposed to have been erected by the natives of the main land, as temporary habitations during their visit to these islands. On the 21st we sailed through a channel, in which was a number of shoals; and

and gave the name of York Cape to a point of the main land which forms the side of the channel. A large bay is formed to the south of the cape, which was called Newcastle Bay, and in which are several little islands; on the north-side of the cape the land is rather mountainous, but the low parts of the country abound with trees; the islands discovered in the morning of this day, were called York Isles. In the afternoon we anchored between some islands, and observed, that the channel now began to grow wider; we perceived two distant points, between which no land could be seen, so that the hope of having at length explored a passage into the Indian Sea, began to animate every breast; but, to bring the matter to a certainty, the captain took a party, and being accompanied by Messrs. Solander and Banks, they landed on an island, on which they had seen a number of Indians, ten of whom were on a hill, one of them carrying a bow and a bundle of arrows, the rest armed with lances; and round the necks of two of them hung strings of mother of pearl. Three of these Indians stood on shore, as if to oppose the landing of the boat, but they retired before it reached the beach. The captain and his company now ascended a hill, from whence they had a view of near forty miles, in which space there was nothing that threatened to oppose their passage, so that the certainty of a channel seemed to be almost indubitable. Previous to their leaving the island, Capt. Cook displayed the English colours, and took possession of all the eastern coast of the country, from the 38th deg. of S. latitude to the present spot, by the name of New South Wales, for his sovereign the King of Great Britain: and three volleys of small arms being fired, and answered by an equal number from the Endeavour, the place received the name of Possession Island. The next morning we saw three naked women collecting shell-fish on the beach; and weighing anchor, gave the name of Cape Cornwall to the extreme point of the largest island on the north-west side of the passage: some low islands near the middle of the channel receiving the name of Wallis's Isle; soon after which the ship came to an anchor, and the long-boat was sent out

out to
the ca
which
the m
the na
the n
fatisfa
The N
land o
took t
which
these
known
ascend
To
gave t
Wales
known
all Eur
coasted
duced t
deg. the
thesout
ground.
and woo
bage, th
fertile c
rich, nor
almost
distance
these pl
covered
in a sw
overflow
thick gra
the soil i
there are
attended
running
there are
vers an

out to sound. Towards evening we failed again, and the captain landed with Mr. Banks, on a small island which was frequented by immense numbers of birds, the majority of which being boobies, the place received the name of Booby Island. We were now advanced to the northern extremity of New Holland, and had the satisfaction of viewing the open sea to the westward. The N. E. entrance of the passage is formed by the main land of New Holland, and by a number of islands, which took the name of the Prince of Wales's Islands, and which Capt. Cook imagines may reach to New Guinea; these islands abound with trees and grass, and were known to be inhabited, from the smoke that was seen ascending in many places.

To the passage we had failed through, Capt. Cook gave the name of Endeavour Straights. New South Wales is a much larger country than any hitherto known, and not deemed a continent, being larger than all Europe, which is proved by the Endeavour's having coasted more than 2000 miles, even if her tract were reduced to a strait line. Northward of the latitude of 33 deg. the country is hilly, yet not mountainous; but to the southward of that latitude, it is mostly low and even ground. The hills in general are diversified by lawns and woods, and many of the valleys abound with herbage, though, on the whole, it cannot be deemed a fertile country. To the northward the grass is not so rich, nor the trees so high as in the southern parts, and almost every where, even the largest trees grow at a distance of not less than thirteen yards asunder. In all these places where the land forms a bay, the shore is covered with mangroves, that grow about a mile in land, in a swampy ground, which the spring tides always overflow; in some parts there are bogs, covered with thick grass, and plenty of under-wood in the valleys; the soil in general seems unfit for cultivation, though there are many spots where the arts of tillage might be attended with success. There are several salt creeks, running in many directions through the country, where there are also brooks of fresh water, but there are no rivers of any considerable extent; yet it seemed to be well watered,

watered, as the time when the ship was on the coast was reckoned the driest season of the year. The gum-tree yields a resin like the dragons blood. Here are three kinds of palm-trees, two of which are found only in the northern district. Nuts somewhat resembling chestnuts are produced by one of these, which were supposed to be eatable, yet some of the seamen having made free with them were taken very ill; two of whom died within a week, and it was not without difficulty that the third was recovered. The second sort of palm is much like the West Indian cabbage-tree, which yields a cabbage of an agreeable taste. The third sort abounds in the southern part, and produces a small cabbage of a very agreeable flavour, with many nuts, which furnish food for hogs. There is likewise a tree on which grows a purple apple that tastes like a damoscene, as we have before observed. Besides these there is a fig-tree, producing figs, but not of the finest sort, and they have another which bears a sort of plumb that is flat on the sides like a cheese. A plant was found here, the leaves of which were like those of the bulrush; it yields a bright yellow resin, that resembles gumbouge, but does not stain—it had a very agreeable smell. We found two sorts of yams, the one round and covered with stringy fibres, the other in shape like a radish; both of which are of a pleasant taste. A fruit of a disagreeable flavour was found, in shape resembling a pine-apple; and another that was much like a cherry, but had a soft kernel. The country produces purslain and wild parfly. We saw here, besides the beast already mentioned, one that was called a quall, the belly of this animal was quite white, its back was brown with white spots; and it was like a pole-cat. Vast numbers of beautiful pigeons were observed, and the seamen shot many of them, also eagles, hawks, cranes, herons, bustards, crows, parrots, parroquets, cockatoos, and some other birds of fine plumage, besides quails and doves.

In this country there are but few insects, and the ants and musquitos are the chief among them. There are four kinds of the former which deserve particular notice. The first of these are entirely green, and live on trees,

where
bend
an ar
bodie
this e
its pr
their
have
at the
stingi
here a
after
lodges
round
low, a
across
plants
the siz
sort th
one for
from t
minute
togeth
There
passage
also a
ground
the gro
the bre
tered w
terrane
which
tures ab
calculat
ants res
son, as
Variet
among
the sho
as well
enormo
No.

where they build their nests in a very curious manner, bending down the leaves, and gluing them together with an animal juice, supposed to proceed from their own bodies. While several of these animals were busied in this employ, thousands were joined to keep the leaf in its proper situation, which, when they were disturbed in their work, flew back with a force that any one would have imagined to be superior to their united strength; at the same time they avenged themselves by severely stinging their disturbers. The second species of ants here are black, and live in the inside of the branches, after they have worked out the pith. The third sort lodged themselves in the root of a plant that twines round the trunks of other trees. This they made hollow, and cut into a great number of passages that ran across each other, yet there was no appearance of the plants having been injured. They are not above half the size of the red ants of this country. As to the fourth sort they are like the East-Indian white ants, and had one sort of nests as big as a half-peck loaf which hung from the boughs of trees, and were composed of several minute parts of vegetables, which appeared to be stuck together by the glutinous juice before mentioned. There was a communication between the cells, and passages to other nests upon the same tree; they had also a hollow covered passage to another nest on the ground, at the root of a different tree. The height of the ground-nest was found to be about six feet, and the breadth nearly the same: and the outside was plastered with clay almost two inches thick. These had a subterraneous passage leading to the roots of the trees near which they were constructed, from whence these creatures ascended the trunk and branches by covered ways, calculated for the purpose. It was concluded, that the ants resorted to these ground-nests during the wet season, as they were water proof.

Variety of fish is supplied by the seas in these parts, among which are mullets, cray-fish and crabs. Upon the shoals are found the rock, pearl, and other oysters, as well as the most delicate green turtle, besides those enormous cockles which have been already mentioned.

No. 7.

F f

Alligators

Alligators are found in the rivers and salt creeks. The country does not appear to be inhabited by numbers any way proportioned to its great extent; not above thirty being ever seen together but once, which was when those of both sexes, and all ages got together on a rock off Botany Bay, to view the ship. None of their villages consisted of more huts than would afford shelter for fourteen or fifteen men, and these were the largest numbers that were assembled with a view to attack us. No part of the country appeared to be cultivated, whence there must necessarily be fewer inhabitants on the inland parts than on the sea-coast. The men are well made, of the middle size, and active, in a high degree; but their voices are soft, even to effeminacy. Their colour is chocolate; but they were so covered with dirt, as to look almost as black as negroes. Their hair is naturally long and black, but they commonly cropped it short; in some few instances it is slightly curled, but in common quite straight; it is always matted with dirt, yet wholly free from lice; their beards are thick and bushy, but kept short by singeing. The women were seen only at a distance, as the men constantly left them behind when they crossed the river. The chief ornament of these people is the bone that is thrust through the nose, which the sailors whimsically called their sprit-sail yard; but besides this they wore necklaces formed of shells, a small cord tied twice or thrice round the arm between the elbow and shoulder, and a string of plaited human hair round the waist. Some few of them had an ornament of shells hanging across the breast. Besides these ornaments they painted their bodies and limbs white and red, in stripes of different dimensions; and they had a circle of white round each eye, and spots of it on the face. Their ears were bored, but they did not wear ear-rings. They accepted whatever was given them, but seemed to have no idea of making an adequate return; and they would not part with their ornaments for any thing that was offered in exchange. Their bodies were marked with scars, which they signified were in remembrance of the deceased. Their huts were built with small rods, the

the
to f
piec
buil
is o
heel
post
In th
one
pose
huts
wher
if th
othe
and b
were
towa
in fir
they
buck
bark
this i
they
cabb
lines,
the o
of dar
narro
kang
catch
of fru
fish.
of a t
lities
but it
Fre
of tre
imagi
was b
tree.
birds,
only

the two ends of which were fixed into the ground, so as to form the figure of an oven; they are covered with pieces of bark and palm-leaves. The door of this building, which is only high enough to sit upright in, is opposite to the fire-places. They sleep with their heels turned up toward their heads; and even in this posture the hut will not hold more than four people. In the northern parts, where the weather was warmer, one side of the houses was left open, and the other opposed to whatever wind might blow at the time there; huts were only built for temporary use, and left behind when they removed to other parts of the country; but if their stay was only for a night or two, they had no other protection from the weather than what the grass and bushes afforded. While the huts on the main land were turned from the wind, those on the islands were towards it: a kind of proof that they visit the islands in fine weather, and enjoy the refreshing breeze while they slept. These huts are furnished with a kind of bucket for fetching water, made of an oblong piece of bark tied up at each end with the twig of a tree; and this is the only furniture of the house. On their backs they have a kind of bag, of the size and form of a cabbage-net, in which they carry their fish-hooks and lines, of the shells of which they make these hooks; the ornaments which they wear consist of some points of darts, and two or three bits of paint; and in this narrow compass lie all their riches. They feed on the kangaroo, and several kinds of birds when they can catch them; they likewise eat yams, and various kinds of fruit; but the principal article of their existence is fish. They were frequently observed with the leaves of a tree in their mouths, but whether it had the qualities of either tobacco or beetle could not be known; but it was observed not to discolour the teeth or lips.

From the notches that were seen in a great number of trees, for the purpose of climbing them, it was imagined that their method of taking the kangaroo, was by striking it with their lances as it passed under the tree. In these likewise, it is probable, that they took birds, while they were roosting, as they seemed too

shy to be otherwise caught. Their method of producing fire, and extending the flames of it, is very singular: having wrought one end of a stick into an obtuse point, they place this point upon a piece of dry wood, and turning the upright stick very fast backward and forward between their hands, fire is soon produced, nor is it increased with less celerity. One of the natives was frequently observed to run along the sea coast, leaving fire in various places. The method taken to do this was as follows: before he set off, he wrapped up a little spark of fire in dry grass, and the quickness of his motion soon fanning it into a flame, he then placed it on the ground, and putting a spark of it in another bit of grass ran on again, and increased the number of his fires at pleasure. These fires were supposed to be intended for the taking of the kangaroo, as that animal was so very shy of fire, that when pursued by the dogs, it would not cross places which had been newly burnt, even when the fire was extinguished.

The natives of New South Wales make use of spears or lances, but these are very differently constructed: those that were seen in the southern parts of the country had four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed, and the points were rubbed with a kind of wax, the smoothness of which made an easier passage into what was struck by them. On the contrary, the lances in the northern parts have only one point; the shafts of them are of different lengths, from eight to fourteen feet, are made of the stalk of a plant not unlike a bulrush, and consists of several joints let into each other, and tied together. The points of these lances are sometimes made of fish-bone, and sometimes of a hard heavy wood; they are barbed with other pieces of wood or stone, so that when they have entered any depth in the body, they cannot be drawn out without tearing the flesh in a shocking manner, or leaving splinters behind them. When the natives intend to wound at a considerable distance, they discharge this instrument with a throwing stick, but if the object be near them, it is thrown from the hand only. The throwing-stick is a

piece
two
ing a
a sma
the fl
low th
it wil
this
shoul
stick
strike
while
dity,
the di
it tha
use of
teen i
were f
others
away.
noes a
it was
perform
any int
are in l
they w
vided v
paddles
canoes
of bark
and the
from si
paddles
rower
they ar
these v
water, t
of shell
and eat
that in
fire bur

piece of smooth, hard, red wood, half an inch thick, two inches broad, and about three feet in length, having a cross piece near four inches long at one end, and a small knob at the other. A small hollow is made in the shaft of the lance, near the point, and in this hollow the knob is received, but, on being forced forward, it will easily slip from it. The lance being placed on this throwing-stick, the Indian holds it over his shoulder, shakes it, and then throws both lance and stick with his utmost power, but as the cross-piece strikes the shoulder the sudden jerk stops the stick, while the lance is driven forward with amazing rapidity, and is generally so well aimed, that a mark at the distance of fifty yards is more certainly struck with it than by a bullet from a gun. These people make use of shields made of the bark of trees, of about eighteen inches broad, and three feet long. Many trees were seen from whence the bark had been taken, and others on which the shields were cut out but not taken away. In the northern parts of this country, the canoes are formed by hollowing the trunk of a tree, and it was conjectured, that this operation must have been performed by fire, as the natives did not appear to have any instruments proper for that purpose. The canoes are in length about fourteen feet, and so narrow, that they would be frequently overset, but that they are provided with an out-rigger. The natives row them with paddles, using both hands in that employment. The canoes in the southern parts are formed only of a piece of bark four yards long, fastened together at each end, and the middle kept open by pieces of wood, passing from side to side. In deep water these are rowed by paddles, of about a foot and a half in length, the rower having one in each hand, but in shallow water they are pushed forward by means of a long stick. As these vessels are extremely light, and draw very little water, the Indians run them on the mud banks in search of shell-fish, some of which, it is probable, they broil and eat as soon as they are taken, as it was remarked that in the centre of these vessels there was usually a fire burping on a quantity of sea-weed. The natives have

have no tools but a wooden mallet, a kind of wedge, and an adze, made of stone, with some pieces of coral and shells, which may possibly be applied to the purposes of cutting. They polish the points of their lances, and their throwing-sticks, with the leaves of a tree that appears to be the wild fig, which bites with a sharpness, almost equal to that of a rasp. Four people are the greatest number that a canoe will contain: and when more than this number were to pass a river, three were landed out of the first freight, and one man went back for the rest.

The following may serve as a specimen of their language,

NEW HOLLAND.	ENGLISH.
Aco,	<i>The arms.</i>
Aibudje,	<i>To yawn.</i>
Bamma,	<i>A man.</i>
Bonjoo,	<i>The nose.</i>
Boota,	<i>To eat.</i>
Chucula,	<i>To drink.</i>
Cotta,	<i>A dog.</i>
Coyor,	<i>The breast.</i>
Doomboor,	<i>The neck.</i>
Dunjo,	<i>A father.</i>
Eboorbalga,	<i>The thumbs.</i>
Edamal,	<i>The feet.</i>
Eiyamoac,	<i>The crown of the head.</i>
Eya & ba,	<i>That or this.</i>
Galan,	<i>The sun.</i>
Garbar,	<i>The eye-brows.</i>
Gippa,	<i>The belly.</i>
Kere,	<i>The sky.</i>
Kolke,	<i>The nails.</i>
Mailelel,	<i>To swim.</i>
Maianang,	<i>Fire.</i>
Marra,	<i>To go.</i>
Mangal,	<i>The hands.</i>
Meul,	<i>The eyes.</i>
Melea,	<i>The ears.</i>
Mingooro,	<i>To dance.</i>

Mocoo,

NEW
Mocoo
Morco
Moree,
Mootje
Mulere
Nakil,
Pecgoo
Peete,
Poapoa
Pongo,
Poona,
Poorai,
Poteca,
Putai
Tabugg
Tacal,
Te,
Tennap

Tocaya,
Tumurr
Unjar,
Wageeg
Walloo,
Waller,
Walboor
Wonana
Wulgar
Yembe,
Zoocoo,

Thou
these ilk
pons th
their en

Mocoo,

NEW HOLLAND.

Mocoo,
Morcol,
Moree,
Mootjel,
Mulere,
Nakil,
Pecgoorga,
Pecte,
Poapoa,
Pongo,
Poona,
Poorai,
Poteca,
Putai
Tabugga,
Tacal,
Te,
Tennapuke,

Tocaya,
Tumurre,
Unjar,
Wagegece,
Waloo,
Waller,
Walboolbool,
Wonananiao,
Wulgar,
Yembe,
Zoocoo,

ENGLISH.

The back.
The throat.
The bear of the head.
A woman.
The teeth.
The little finger.
The legs.
The forehead.
Earth.
The knees.
To sleep.
Water.
Fish.
A turtle.
A fly.
The chin.
A, or the.
*The hole made in the nostrils
for the bone ornament.*
Sit down.
A sun.
The tongue.
The head.
The temples.
The beard.
A butterfly.
Asleep.
The clouds.
The lips.
Wood.

Though it appeared evident, that the natives of these islands waged war with each other, by the weapons they possessed, yet not a wound received from their enemies appeared on any part of their bodies.

C H A P. X.

The Endeavour continues her Voyage from South Wales to New Guinea—An Account of Incidents upon landing there—She proceeds from New Guinea to the Island of Savu—Transactions at this Isle—Its Produce and Inhabitants, with a Specimen of their Language—Run from Savu to Batavia—Transactions while the Endeavour was refitting at this Place.

ON the 23d of August, 1770, in the afternoon, after leaving Proby Island, we had light airs till five o'clock, when fell calm, and we came to an anchor in eight fathom water, with a soft sandy bottom. On Friday, the 24th, soon after the anchor was weighed, we got under sail, steering N. W. and in a few hours one of the boats a-head made the signal for shoal-water. We instantly brought the ship to, with all her sails standing, and a survey being taken of the sea around her, it was found that she had met with another narrow escape, as she was almost encompassed with shoals, and was likewise so situated between them, that she must have struck before the boat's crew had made the signal, if she had been half the length of a cable on either side. In the afternoon we made sail with the ebb tide, and got out of danger before sun-set, when we brought to for the night.

On Sunday, the 26th, it was the Captain's intention to steer N. W. but having met with those shoals, we altered our course, and soon got into deep water. On the 27th we pursued our voyage, shortening sail at night, and tacking till day-break of the 28th, when we steered due N. in search of New Guinea. At this time our latitude by observation was 8 deg. 52 min. S. We here observed many parts of the sea covered with a kind of brown scum, to which our sailors gave the name of spawn. It is formed of an incredible number of minute particles, each of which, when seen through the microscope, was found to consist of a considerable number of tubes, and these tubes were

were
burn
anim
table
Braz
land.
ing ar
this d
and o
with a
ing w
from
in lon
been d
Where
with t
judged
which
were n
but as
increas
to retu
night,

On
distant
still flat
was stil
convinc
name o
course,
ter was
many u
near er
mined t
plying

On M
and Dr.
Banks's
being in
rectly to
yards o
No. 8

were subdivided into little cells. The scum being burnt, and yielding no smell like what is produced by animal substances, we concluded it was of the vegetable kind. This has often been seen on the coast of Brazil, and generally makes its appearance near the land. A bird called the Noddy was found this evening among the rigging of the ship. Land having been this day discovered from the mast head, we stood off and on all night, and at day-break we sailed towards it with a brisk gale. Between six and seven in the morning we had sight of a small low island, at about a league from the main, in latitude 80 deg. 13 min. S. and in longitude 221 deg. 25 min. W. and it has already been distinguished by the names of Bartholomew and Whermoylen. It appeared a very level island, clothed with trees, among which is the cocoa-nut; and we judged it to be inhabited by the smoke of the fires which were seen in different parts of it. The boats were now sent out to found, as the water was shallow, but as the ship, in sailing two leagues, had found no increase in its depth, signals were made for the boats to return on board. We then stood out to sea till midnight, tacked, and stood in for land till the morning.

On Thursday, the 30th, when about four leagues distant, we had sight of it, and its appearance was still flat and woody. Abundance of the brown scum was still seen on the surface of the sea, and the sailors, convinced that it was not spawn, gave it the whimsical name of sea-saw-dust. We now held a northward course, scarcely within sight of land, and as the water was but just deep enough to navigate the vessel, many unsuccessful attempts were made to bring her near enough to get on shore: it was therefore determined to land in one of the boats, while the ship kept plying off and on. In consequence of this resolution,

On Monday, Sept. the 3d, Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, attended by the boat's crew, and Mr. Banks's servant, set off from the ship in the pinnace, being in all twelve persons well armed. We rowed directly to the shore, but when come within two hundred yards of it, we found the water so shallow, that we

were obliged to leave the boat, in the care of two of the sailors, and waded to land. We had no sooner reached the shore, than we saw several prints of human feet on the sand, below high-water mark, from whence it was evident, that the natives had been there. We concluded they could be at no great distance, and as a thick wood came down within a hundred yards of the water, we proceeded with caution, that our retreat to the boat might not be cut off. We walked by the side of the wood, and came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, not far from which was a shed, or hut, which had been covered with leaves, and near it lay a number of fresh shells of the fruit. At a small distance of from this place we found plantains; and having now advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians rushed out of the wood with a hideous shout, at about the distance of a hundred yards; and as they ran towards us, the foremost threw something out of his hand, which flew on one side of him, and burnt exactly like gun-powder, but made no report; and the other two threw their lances at us. No time was to be lost; we discharged our pieces, loaded with small shot only; which we imagine they did not feel; for, without retreating, they cast a third dart: we therefore now loaded with ball, and fired a second time. It is probable some of them were wounded, as they all took to their heels with great agility. We improved this interval, in which the destruction of the natives was no longer necessary to our own defence, and with all expedition returned to our boat. In the way we perceived signals on board, that more Indians were coming down in a body; and before we got into the water, we perceived several of them coming round a point at the distance of about five hundred yards. When they saw us they halted, and seemed to wait till their main body should join them. They continued in this station, without giving us any interruption, while we entered the water, and waded toward the boat. We now took a view of them at our leisure. They made much the same appearance as the New Hollanders, being nearly of the same stature, and having their hair short cropped.

They

They
time
their
piece
sidew
by a
strang
arms.
a-brea
heads
rattlin
and o
exami
found
points
many
four
were c
were a
were d
might
by the
deg. 1
low lan
herbag
bread-
highest
and pla
This d
westwa
this co
officers
men o
the sak
wisdom
and cru
not bre
coast, v
their pr
must ha
some of

They were also like them stark naked. During this time they were shouting at a distance, and letting off their fires, which seemed to be discharged by a short piece of stick, probably a hollow cane, this being swung sideways, produced fire and smoke like that occasioned by a musquet. The crew on board the ship saw this strange appearance, and thought the natives had fire arms. Those who went out in the boat, and had rowed a-breast of them, fired some musquets above their heads, the balls of which being heard by the natives rattling among the trees, they retired very deliberately, and our people in the boat returned to the ship. Upon examining the lances that had been thrown at us, we found they were made of a reed, or bamboo cane, the points of which were of hard wood, and barbed in many places. They were light, ill made, and about four feet long. Such was the force with which they were discharged, that they went beyond us, though we were at sixty yards distance, but in what manner they were discharged we could not determine; probably they might be thrown with a stick, in the manner practiced by the New Hollanders. This place is in latitude 6 deg. 15 min. S. The whole coast of this country is low land, but covered with a luxuriance of wood and herbage beyond description beautiful. The cocoa-nut, bread-fruit, and plantain tree, all flourished here in the highest perfection, besides most of the trees, shrubs, and plants, that are common to the South Sea islands. This day, Monday, Sept. the 3d, we made sail to the westward, being resolved to spend no more time upon this coast; but before we got under sail, some of the officers strongly urged the Captain to send a party of men on shore, to cut down the cocoa-nut trees, for the sake of the fruit. This Capt. Cook, with equal wisdom and humanity, peremptorily refused, as unjust and cruel; sensible that the poor Indians, who could not brook even the landing of a small party on their coast, would have made a vigorous effort to defend their property had it been invaded; consequently many must have fallen a sacrifice on their side, and perhaps some of our own people. "I should, (says Capt. Cook)

have regretted the necessity of such a measure, if I had been in want of the necessaries of life; and certainly it would have been highly criminal when nothing was to be obtained but two or three hundred green cocoa-nuts; which would at most have procured us a mere transient gratification. I might indeed have proceeded farther along the coast to the northward, or westward, in search of a place where the ship might have lain so near the shore, as to cover the people with her guns when they landed; but this would have obviated only part of the mischief, and though it might have secured us, it would probably in the very act have been fatal to the natives. Besides, we had reason to think that before such a place could have been found, we should have been carried so far to the westward as to have been obliged to go to Batavia, on the north side of Java, through the streights of Sunday: the ship also was so very leaky that I doubted whether it would not be necessary to heave her down at Batavia, which was another reason for making the best of our way to that place, especially as no discoveries could be expected in seas which had already been navigated, and where every coast had been laid down by the Dutch geographers."

On Saturday the 8th, we passed two small islands, on one of which Capt. Cook would have landed, but having only ten fathom water, the ground being also rocky, and the wind blowing fresh, we might have endangered the safety of the ship. We now sailed at a moderate rate till next morning at three o'clock; after which we had no ground with 120 fathoms. Before noon we had sight of land, which was conjectured to be either the Arrou Islands, or Timor Laoet. We were now in latitude 9 deg. 37 min. S. and in longitude 233 deg. 54 min. W. We stood off and on during the night, and on Wednesday the 12th, we saw a number of fires and smoke in several places, from whence it was conjectured that the place was well peopled. The land near the shore was covered with high trees, not unlike pines; farther back were cocoa-trees and mangroves; there were many salt-water creeks, and several spots of ground

ground which appeared to have been cleared by art; and the whole country rose, by gradual slopes, into hills of a very considerable height. The land and sea breezes being now very slight, we continued in sight of the island for two days, when it was observed that the hills reached in many places quite to the sea-coast, and where that was not the case, there were large and noble groves of the cocoa-nut tree, which ran about a mile up the county, at which distance great numbers of houses and plantations were seen; the plantations were surrounded with fences, and extended nearly to the summits of the most lofty hills, yet neither the natives nor cattle were seen on any of them, which was thought a very extraordinary circumstance. Fine groves of the fan palm shaded the houses from the rays of the sun.

On the 16th, we had sight of the little island called Rotte; and the same day saw the island Semau, at a distance to the southward of Timor. The island of Rotte is chiefly covered with bushy wood without leaves; but there are a number of fan palm trees on it, growing near the sandy beaches; and the whole consists of alternate hills and valleys. The island of Semau is not so hilly as Timor, but resembles it greatly in other respects. At ten o'clock this night a dull reddish light was seen in the air, many parts of which emitted rays of a brighter colour, which soon vanished, and were succeeded by others of the same kind. This phenomenon, which reached about ten degrees above the horizon, bore a considerable resemblance to the Aurora Borealis, only that the rays of light which it emitted had no tremulous motion: it was surveyed for two hours, during which time its brightness continued undiminished. As the ship was now clear of all the islands which had been laid down in such maps as were on board, we made sail during the night, and were surprised the next morning at the sight of an island to the W. S. W. which we flattered ourselves was a new discovery. Before noon we had sight of houses, groves of cocoa-nut trees, and large flocks of sheep. This was a welcome sight to people whose health

health was declining for want of refreshment, and it was instantly resolved to attempt the purchase of what we stood so much in need of. The second lieutenant was immediately dispatched in the pinnace, in search of a landing-place; and he took with him such things as it was thought might be acceptable to the natives.— During Mr. Gore's absence, the people on board saw two men on horseback upon the hills, who frequently stopped to take a view of the vessel. The lieutenant soon returned with an account that he had entered a little cove, near which stood a few houses; that several men advanced and invited him to land; and that they conversed together so well as they could by signs. He reported that these people were very like the Malays, both in person and dress; and said they had no other arms but a knife which each of them wore in his girdle.

The lieutenant not being able to find any place in which the ship might come to anchor, he was dispatched again with money and goods to buy such necessaries as were immediately wanted for the sick. Dr. Solander attended the lieutenant, and during their absence, the ship stood on and off the shore. Soon after the boat had put off, two other horsemen were seen from the ship, one of whom had a laced hat on, and was dressed in a coat and waistcoat, of the fashion of Europe. These men rode about on shore taking little notice of the boat, but regarding the ship with the utmost attention. As soon as the boat reached the shore, some other persons on horseback, and many on foot hastened to the spot, and it was observed that some cocoa-nuts were put into the boat, from whence it was concluded, that a traffick had commenced with the natives. A signal being made from the boat that the ship might anchor in a bay at some distance, she immediately bore away for it. When the lieutenant came on board, he reported, that he could not purchase any cocoa-nuts, as the owner of them was absent, and that what he had brought were given him, in return for which he had pressed the natives with some linen. The method by which he learned that there was a harbour in the neighbourhood, was by the natives drawing a
kind

kin
an
hir
be
of
cha
Th
Ind
gal
of t
lang
few
Wh
situa
orde
Eng
vou
othe
that
boat
the g
dres
lieut
with
the sh
W
accor
was f
on th
guns
the t
came
lours
the ca
on th
tenant
fident
necess
he wa
than t
they h

kind of rude map on the sand, in which the harbour, and a town near it, was represented; it was likewise hinted to him, that fruit, fowls, hogs, and sheep might be there obtained in great abundance. He saw several of the principal inhabitants of the island, who had chains of gold about their necks, and wore fine linen. The word Portuguese being frequently repeated by the Indians, it was conjectured that some natives of Portugal were in the island, and one of the boat's crew being of that kingdom, he spoke to the islanders in his own language, but soon found that they had only learned a few words, of which they did not know the meaning. While the natives were endeavouring to represent the situation of the town near the harbour, one of them, in order to be more particular in directions, informed the English that they would see something which he endeavoured to describe by placing his fingers across each other; and the Portuguese sailor took it for granted, that he could mean nothing but a cross. When the boat's crew were on the point of returning to the ship, the gentleman who had been seen on horseback in the dress of Europe, came down to the beach; but the lieutenant did not think it proper to hold a conference with him, because he had left his commission on board the ship.

When the ship had entered the bay, in the evening, according to the directions received, an Indian town was seen at a distance; upon which a jack was hoisted on the fore-top-mast head, presently afterwards three guns were fired, and Dutch colours were hoisted in the town; the ship, however, held on her way, and came to an anchor at seven in the evening. The colours being seen hoisted on the beach the next morning, the captain concluded, that the Dutch had a settlement on the island, he therefore dispatched the second lieutenant to acquaint the governor, or other principal resident, who they were, and that the ship had put in for necessary refreshments. The lieutenant having landed, he was received by a kind of guard of something more than twenty Indians, armed with musquets, who after they had taken down their colours from the beach, pro-

ceeded without the least military order ; and thus escorted him to the town, where the colours had been hoisted the preceding evening. The lieutenant was now conducted to the Raja, or king of the island, to whom, by means of a Portuguese interpreter, he made known his business. The Raja said, he was ready to supply the ship with the necessary refreshments, but that he could not trade with any other people than the Dutch, with whom he was in alliance, without having first obtained their consent ; he added, however, that he would make application to the Dutch agent, who was the only white man among them. To this agent, whose name was Lange, and who proved to be the person that was seen from the ship in the European dress, a letter was dispatched, and in a few hours he came to the town, behaved politely to the lieutenant, and told him he might buy what he thought proper of the inhabitants of the island. This offer being freely made, and readily accepted, the Raja and Mr. Lange intimated their wishes to go on board the ship, and that two of the boat's crew might be left as hostages for their safe return. The lieutenant gratified them in both these requests, and took them on board just before dinner was served. It was thought that they would have sat down without ceremony ; but now the Raja intimated his doubts, whether being a black, they would permit him to sit down with them. The politeness of the officers soon removed his scruples, and the greatest good humour and festivity prevailed among them. As Dr. Solander and another gentleman on board, were tolerable proficient in Dutch, they acted as interpreters between Mr. Lange and the officers, while some of the sailors, who understood Portuguese, conversed with such of the Raja's attendants as spoke that language. Our dinner consisted chiefly of mutton, which when the Raja had tasted, he requested of us an English sheep, and the only one we had left was presented to him. Our complaisance in this particular, encouraged the king to ask for an English dog, and Mr. Banks politely gave him his greyhound. A spying-glass was also put into his hand, Mr. Johan Christopher Lange having intimated,

timat
Our v
ed w
which
This
lated
could
expres
toxica
ceived
by the
desire
They
with g
the re
When
of the
violent
They v
departu
Dr. So
off retu
gentlen
palm-w
ferment
and hop
to recov
natives
a board
Wed.
attended
the Raja
chase th
the pre
beach.
had bee
ceeded
other ho
are disti
wood, r
end of t
No. 8

estimated, that such a present would be very acceptable. Our visitors now informed us, that the island abounded with buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which should be driven down to the shore the next day. This put us all in high spirits, and the liquor circulated rather faster than either the Indians or the Saxon could bear; but they had, however, the resolution to express a desire to depart, before they were quite intoxicated. When they came upon deck, they were received in the same manner as when they came aboard, by the marines under arms; and the Raja expressing a desire to see them exercise, his curiosity was gratified. They fired three rounds. The king observed them with great attention, and appeared much surprized at the regularity and expedition of their manœuvres. When they cocked their firelocks, he struck the side of the ship with his stick, exclaiming at the same time violently, "That all the locks made but one click." They were dismissed with many presents, and on their departure were saluted with nine guns. Mr. Banks with Dr. Solander accompanied them, and when they put off returned our compliments with three cheers. Our gentlemen on their arrival at the town, tasted their palm-wine, which was the fresh juice of the trees, unfermented. It had a sweet, but not disagreeable taste, and hopes were entertained, that it might contribute to recover our sick from the scurvy. The houses of the natives consisted of only a thatched roof, supported over a boarded floor, by pillars about four feet high.

Wednesday the 19th, in the morning, Capt. Cook, attended by several gentlemen, went on shore to return the Raja's visit; but their principal intention was to purchase the cattle and fowls, which they had been assured the preceding day should be driven down to the beach. We were greatly chagrined at finding no steps had been taken to fulfil this promise: however, we proceeded to the house of assembly, which, with a few other houses, built by the Dutch East-India Company, are distinguished from the rest, by having two pieces of wood, resembling a pair of cows horns, fixed at each end of the roof; and these we concluded to be what the

Portuguese sailor construed into crosses, from the Indian having crossed his fingers when he was describing the town. At the house of assembly we saw Mr. Lange and the Raja, whose name was A Madocho Lomi Djara, surrounded by many of the principal people; Capt. Cook having informed them, that he had loaded his boat with goods, which he wished to exchange for necessary refreshments, permission was given him to land them. We now endeavoured to make an agreement for the hogs, sheep, and buffaloes, which were to be paid for in cash; but this business was no sooner hinted than Mr. Lange took his leave, having first told the captain, that he had received a letter from the governor of Concordia, in Timor, the contents of which should be disclosed at his return. As the morning was now far advanced, and we had no fresh provisions on board, we requested the Raja's permission to buy a small hog and some rice, and to order his people to dress the dinner for us. He very obligingly replied, that if we could eat victuals dressed by his subjects, which he could scarcely suppose, he would do himself the honour of entertaining us. A dinner being thus procured, the captain sent off his boat to bring liquors from the ship. It was ready about five o'clock, and after we were seated on mats, which were spread on the floor, it was served in six and thirty baskets. We were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which stood a man with water in a vessel, made of the leaves of the fan-palm, who assisted us in washing our hands. This done we returned to our places and expected the king. Having waited some time, we enquired the reason of his absence, and were informed that the person who gave the entertainment never partook of it with his guests; but that the Raja was ready to come and taste of what was provided, if we entertained a thought that the victuals were poisoned. We declared that we did not harbour any such suspicion, and desired that the custom of the country might not be violated on our account. When dinner was ended, the wine passed briskly, and we invited the Raja to drink with us, thinking if he would not eat with us, he might at least share in the jollity

jollity
ing, t
get dr
this w
ministe
made a
excelle
spoons,
patience
the plac
dinner
mediate
all we
came to
away wh
wine ha
an oppo
of which
though t
morning
gan to c
which h
nor of Co
given, th
be in war
was not t
fary; nor
tives of l
ors to be
but he ad
dians mi
or other
that the
by preclu
Dutchma
of any va
were info
to the be
people co
them. S
quantity

jollity of the bottle ; but he again excused himself, saying, the man who entertained his guests should never get drunk with them, and that the surest way to avoid this was to refrain from tasting the liquor. The prime minister and Mr. Lange were of our party, and we made a most luxurious meal. The pork and rice were excellent, and the broth not to be despised, but the spoons, made of leaves, were so small, that few of us had patience to use them. We did not drink our wine at the place where we had dined; and the remains of the dinner we left to the seamen and servants, who immediately took our places. They could not dispatch all we had left; but the Raja's female servants, who came to take away the utensils, obliged them to carry away what they had not eaten. When we thought the wine had so far operated as to open the heart, we took an opportunity to enquire after the buffaloes and sheep, of which we had not in all this time heard a syllable, though they were to have been at the beach early in the morning. Mr. Lange, the Saxon Dutchman, now began to communicate to us the contents of the letter, which he pretended to have received from the governor of Concordia, and wherein he said, instructions were given, that if the ship should touch at this island, and be in want of provisions, she should be supplied; but he was not to permit her to remain longer than was necessary; nor were any large presents to be made to the natives of low rank, nor to be even left with their superiors to be divided among them after the ship had sailed; but he added, any trifling civilities received from the Indians might be acknowledged by a present of beads, or other articles of very small value. It is probable that the whole of this story was a fiction; and that by precluding our liberality to the natives, the Saxon Dutchman hoped more easily to draw all the presents of any value into his own pocket. In the evening we were informed, that only a few sheep had been brought to the beach, which had been driven away before our people could procure money from the ship to pay for them. Some fowls however were bought, and a large quantity of a kind of syrup made of the juice of the

palm-tree. This, though infinitely superior to molasses or treacle, sold at a very low price. Vexed at being thus disappointed in purchasing the chief articles most wanted, we remonstrated with Mr. Lange, who now found another subterfuge. He said, had we gone down to the beach ourselves, we might have purchased what we pleased; but that the natives were afraid of being imposed on by our seamen with counterfeit money. We could not but feel some indignation against a man who had concealed this, being true; or alledged it, being false; and Capt. Cook repaired immediately to the beach, but no cattle were to be seen, nor were any at hand to be bought. During his absence, Lange told Mr. Banks, that the Indians were offended at our not having offered them gold for what we had to sell, and without which nothing could be bought. Mr. Banks did not think it worth his while to hold farther conversation with a man who had been guilty of such repeated falsities; but rose up suddenly, and we all returned on board much dissatisfied with our fruitless negotiations. The Raja had indeed given a more plausible reason for our disappointment: he said, the buffaloes being far up in the country, there had not been time to bring them down to the beach.

On Thursday the 20th, Dr. Solander went again ashore with Capt. Cook, and while the former went up to the town to speak to Lange, the captain remained on the beach with a view of purchasing provisions. Here he met with the old Indian, who, as he appeared to have some authority, we had among ourselves distinguished by the name of the Prime Minister. In order to engage this man in our interest, the captain presented him with a spying-glass; but only a small buffalo was offered to be sold. The price was five guineas, nearly twice its real value. Three, however, were offered, which the dealer thought a good price; but said, he must acquaint the king with what had been bid before he could strike the bargain. A messenger was immediately dispatched to the Raja, and on his return brought word, that not less than five guineas would be taken for the buffalo. The captain absolutely refused to give the

sum

sum demanded, which occasioned the sending away a second messenger, and during his absence, Dr. Solander was seen coming from the town, followed by above a hundred men, some of whom were armed with muskets, and others with lances. Upon enquiring into the meaning of this hostile appearance, the doctor informed us, the purport of a message from the king was, according to Mr. Lange's interpretation, that the people would not trade with us because we had refused to give them more than half the value for their commodities; and that we were not to expect permission to trade upon any terms longer than this day.

A native of Timor, whose parents were Portuguese, came down with this party, and delivered to the captain what was pretended to be the order of the Raja, and which was in substance the same that Lange had told Dr. Solander; but it was afterwards discovered that this man was a confidant of Lange's in the scheme of extortion. The English gentlemen had at the same time no doubt, but that the supposed order of the Raja was a contrivance of these men, and while they were debating how to act in this critical conjuncture, anxious to bring the affair to a speedy issue, the Portuguese began to drive away such of the natives as had brought palm-syrup and fowls to sell, and others who were now bringing sheep and buffaloes to the market. At this juncture Capt. Cook happening to look at the old man who had been distinguished by the name of prime minister, imagined that he saw in his features a disapprobation of the present proceedings; and, willing to improve the advantage, he grasped the Indian's hand, and gave him an old broad-sword. This well-timed present produced all the good effects that could be wished; the prime minister was enraptured at so honourable a mark of distinction, and brandishing his sword over the head of the impertinent Portuguese, he made both him and a man who commanded the party, sit down behind him on the ground. The whole business was now accomplished; the natives, eager to supply whatever was wanted, brought their cattle in for sale, and the market was soon stocked. For the first two buffaloes, Capt.

Cook gave ten guineas: but he afterwards purchased them by way of exchange, giving a musquet for each, and at this rate he might have bought any number he thought proper. There remained no doubt but that Lange had a profit out of the two that were sold; and that his reason for having said the natives would take nothing but gold for their cattle, was, that he might the more easily share in the produce. Capt. Cook purchased of the natives of this island some hundred gallons of palm-syrup, a small quantity of garlick, a large number of eggs, some limes and cocoa-nuts, thirty dozen of fowls, three hogs, six sheep, and nine buffaloes. We having obtained these necessary articles, now prepared for sailing from this place.

The island of Savu is situated in 10 deg. 35 min. S. latitude, and 237 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. Its length is between twenty and thirty miles. But its breadth Capt. Cook could not ascertain, as he only saw the north side of it. The harbour in which the ship lay, was called Seba, from a district of the country so denominated: and there are two other bays on different parts of the island. At the time the Endeavour lay there it was near the end of the dry season, when it had not rained for almost seven months, nor was there a running stream of fresh water to be seen, and the natives were supplied only by small springs, situated at a distance up the country, yet even in this dry season the appearance of the island was beautiful. Near the coast the land lies level, and well clothed with palm, called arecao, and cocoa-nut trees. Farther off, the ground rises in the most gradual ascent, and is covered with fair palm-trees even to the tops of the hills, so as to present a regular grove to the view. The rains in this country cease in March or April, and fall again in October or November, and these rains produce abundance of indico, millett, and maize, which grow beneath the finest trees in the country. Besides these articles, the island produces tobacco, cotton, betel, tamarinds, limes, oranges, mangoes, guinea corn, rice, callevances, and water-melons. A small quantity of cinnamon was seen, and some European herbs, such as garlick, fennel, celery, and

and
kind
taste
length
man
skin
seeds
were
an o
mal,
of th
than
lost
dry
delic
back
on th
The
pigeo
Few c
are fu
ous m
The h
and p
fine a
theref
hang
and th
the g
hen l
the in
abund
The
dle sta
of all
ther,
which
and sp
other
featur
have

and marjoram, besides which, there are fruits of various kinds, and particularly the blimbi, which has a sharp taste; and is a fine pickle; but it is not eaten raw; its length is from 3 to 4 inches; it is nearly as thick as a man's thumb, of an oval form, covered with a very thin skin, of a very light green, and contains a number of seeds ranged in the shape of a star. Several buffaloes were seen on this island which were almost as large as an ox; and from a pair of enormous horns of this animal, which Mr. Banks saw, it was supposed that some of them were much larger; yet they did not weigh more than half as much as an ox of the same size; having lost the greater part of their flesh through the late dry weather: the meat however was juicy, and of a delicate flavour. The horns of these animals bend backwards; they had no dew-laps, and scarce any hair on their skins, and their ears were remarkably large. The other tame animals on the island are dogs, cats, pigeons, fowls, hogs, goats, sheep, asses, and horses. Few of the horses are above twelve hands high, yet they are full of mettle, and pace naturally in an expeditious manner: the natives ride them with a halter only. The hogs of this country are fed on the husks of rice and palm-syrup mixed with water, and are remarkably fine and fat. The sheep is not unlike a goat, and are therefore called cabaritos; their ears, which are long, hang down under their horns; their noses are arched, and their bodies covered with hair. The fowls are of the game kind, and though they are rather large, the hen lays a very small egg. The sea-coast furnishes the inhabitants with turtle, but not in any great abundance.

The people of this island are rather below the middle stature; their hair is black and strait, and persons of all ranks, as well those that are exposed to the weather, as those that are not, have one general complexion, which is the dark brown. The men are well formed and sprightly, and their features differ much from each other; the women, on the contrary, have all one set of features, are very short, and broad built. The men have silver pincers hanging by strings round their necks,

necks, with which they pluck out the hair of their beards; and both men and women root out the hair that grows under their arms; the hair of the womens heads is tied in a club behind, while the men wear a kind of turban on their heads, formed of muslin, cotton, or even with silk handkerchiefs, but the heads of the women have no covering. The dress of the men consists of two pieces of cotton cloth, one of which is bound round the middle, and the lower edge of it being drawn pretty tight between the legs, the upper edge is left loose, so as to form a kind of pocket, in which they carry knives and other things: the other piece being past under the former on the back of the wearer, the ends of it are carried over the shoulders, and tucked into the pocket before. The women drew the upper edge of the piece round the waist tight, while the lower edge dropping to the knees, make a kind of petticoat: the other piece of cloth is fastened across the breast, and under the arms. This cloth, which is manufactured by the natives, is dyed blue while in the yarn; and as it is of various shades, its look, when it comes to be worn, is very beautiful.

Their ornaments are very numerous, and consist of rings, beads worn round the neck and on the wrists, and chains of plaited gold wire, are likewise worn by both sexes; but the women had likewise girdles of beads round their waists, which served to keep up their petticoats. Both sexes had their ears bored without a single exception, that we saw, but we never observed an ornament in any of them. Nor did we perceive either man or woman in any thing but what appeared to be their ordinary dress, except the king and his minister, who in general wore a kind of night-gown of coarse chintz, and the latter once received us in a black robe, which appeared to be made of prince's stuff. One person, in the way of finery, had a silver-headed cane, marked with a kind of cypher, consisting of the Roman letters V. O. C. which might have been a present from the Dutch East-India Company, whose mark it is. We also saw boys about twelve or fourteen years old, having spiral circles of thick brass wire passed three or

four

four
the f
of iv
these
chief
cumb
name
squa
the b
this p
befor
neigh
mark
were
and th
and M
the ba
falls i
jectur
kanza
privile
my th
having
ter, an
skin;
needle
and th
forms
The
but di
the pro
dred,
feet fr
into th
wood,
the floo
are rai
sides, v
our bar
with pa
and ove
No. 8

four times round their arms, above the elbow; and upon the same part of the arm, some of the men had rings of ivory, two inches broad, and about one in thickness; these we were informed were the sons of the Raja's or chiefs, whose high births were distinguished by these cumbrous ornaments. Most of the men had their names marked on their arms, and the women had a square ornament of flourished lines imprinted just under the bend of the elbow. On enquiry it was found that this practice had been common among the Indians long before they were visited by any Europeans; and in the neighbouring islands, it was said, the inhabitants were marked with circles upon their necks and breasts. We were struck with the similitude between these marks, and those made by tattaowing in the South Sea islands; and M. Bossu's account of some Indians who dwell on the banks of Akanza, a river in North America, which falls into the Mississippi, will afford a probable conjecture how the operation is performed. "The Alkanzas, says he, have adopted me, and as a mark of my privilege, have imprinted the figure of a roe-buck upon my thigh, which was done in this manner: an Indian having burnt some straw, diluted the ashes with water, and with this mixture, drew the figure upon my skin; he then retraced it, by pricking the lines with needles, so as at every puncture just to draw the blood, and the blood mixing with the ashes of the straw, forms a figure which can never be effaced."

The houses of Savu are all built upon the same plan, but differ in size, according to the rank and wealth of the proprietors, being from twenty feet to four hundred, and they are fixed on posts of about four or five feet from the ground. One end of these is driven into the ground, and upon the other is laid a floor of wood, which makes a vacant space of four feet between the floor of the house and the ground. On this floor are raised other pillars that support a roof of sloping sides, which meet in a ridge at the top, like those of our barns; the eaves of this roof, which is thatched with palm-leaves, reach within two feet of the floor, and overhang it as much. The space within is generally

rally divided lengthwise into three equal parts; the middle part, or center, is inclosed by a partition of four sides, reaching about six feet above the floor, and one or two small rooms are also sometimes taken off from the sides; the rest of the space under the roof is open, so as freely to admit the air and the light. The particular uses of these apartments we could not, during our short stay, learn, except that the close room in the center was appropriated to the women.

As to the food of these people, they eat all the tame animals to be found in the island; but they prefer the hog to all others; next to this they admire horse-flesh; to which succeeds the buffalo, then poultry; and they prefer cats and dogs to goats and sheep. Fish, we believe, is not eaten but by the poor, nor by them, except when their duty or business requires them to be upon the beach, and then each man has a light casting net, which is girt round his body, and with this he takes any small fish which may come in his way.

The most remarkable and useful tree that grows on the island is the fan palm. Its uses are so various, that it requires particular notice. At certain times it is a succedaneum for all other food both to man and beast. A kind of wine, called toddy, is extracted from this tree, by cutting the buds, and tying under them small baskets, made of the leaves. The juice which trickles into these vessels is collected morning and evening, and is the common drink of all the inhabitants. The natives call this liquor *dua* or *duac*, and both the syrup and sugar, *gula*. The syrup is not unlike treacle, but is somewhat thicker, and has a more agreeable taste. The sugar is of a redish brown, probably the same with the *Jugata* sugar upon the continent of India, and to our taste, it was more agreeable than any cane sugar, unrefined. We at first apprehended that the syrup, of which some of our people eat great quantities, would have occasioned fluxes, but what effect it produced was rather salutary than hurtful. This syrup is used to fatten hogs, dogs, and fowls; and the inhabitants themselves have subsisted upon this alone for several months, when other crops have failed, and ani-

mal

mal food has been scarce. With the leaves of this tree the natives thatch their houses, and make baskets, cups, umbrellas and tobacco-pipes. They make least account of the fruit, and as the buds are wounded for the tuac or toddy, there is very little produced. It is nearly of the size of a full grown turnip; and the kernels must be eaten before it is ripe, otherwise they are so hard, that the teeth will not penetrate them.

As fire-wood is very scarce, the natives, by the following method, make a very little answer the ends of cookery and distillation. A hollow is dug under ground, like a rabbit burrow, in a horizontal direction, about two yards long, with a hole at each end, one of which is large, and the other small. The fire is put in at the large hole, and the small one serves for a draught. Circular holes are made through the earth which covers this cavity, on which are set earthen pots, large in the middle, and smaller towards the bottom, so that the fire acts upon a large part of the surface. They contain generally about eight or ten gallons each, and it is surprising to see with what a small quantity of fuel they are kept boiling. In this manner they boil all their victuals, and make all their syrup and sugar. The Peruvian Indians have a contrivance of the same kind; and perhaps by the poor in other countries it might be adopted with advantage.

In this island both sexes are enslaved by the pernicious custom of chewing beetle and areca, contracted even while they are children. With these they mix a sort of white lime, composed of coral stones and shells, to which is added frequently a small quantity of tobacco, whereby their mouths are rendered disgustful both to the sight and the smell; for the tobacco infects their breath, and the beetle and lime make the teeth both black and rotten. We saw many of both sexes whose fore teeth were consumed, irregularly, almost down to the gums, and corroded like iron by rust. This loss of teeth has generally been attributed to the toughstringy coat of the areca nut; but our gentlemen imputed it wholly to the lime; for the teeth are not loosened or broken, as might be the case by chewing of

hard and rough substances, but they are gradually waisted, as even metals are by powerful acids; and they may not be mistaken who suppose that sugar has a bad effect upon the teeth of Europeans, seeing refined sugar contains a considerable quantity of lime, and it is well known, that lime will destroy bone of any kind. When the natives are at any time not chewing beetle and areca, they then are smoking. The manner of doing this is by rolling up a small quantity of tobacco, and putting it into one end of a tube, about six inches long, as thick as a goose-quill, and made of a palm-leaf. The women in particular were observed to swallow the smoke.

The island is divided into five districts or nigrées, each of which is governed by a Raja. These are called Laai, Seba, Regeeva, Timo, and Massara. We went ashore at Seba, and found a Raja that governed with absolute authority. He was about five and thirty, and the most corpulent man we had seen upon the whole island. But though he governed with an unlimited authority, he took very little regal pomp upon him. He was directed almost implicitly by Mannu Djarme, the old man, his prime minister, already mentioned; yet notwithstanding the power with which he was invested, he was universally beloved, a sure proof that he did not abuse it. Mr. Lange informed Capt. Cook, that the chiefs who had successively presided over the five principalities of this island, had lived for time immemorial in the most cordial friendship with each other; yet, he said, the people were of a warlike disposition, and had always courageously defended themselves against foreign invaders. We were told also, that the inhabitants of the island could raise, on a short notice, 7,300 fighting men armed with musquets; of which number Laai was said to furnish 2,600. Seba 2000, Regeeva 1,500, Timo 800, and Massara 400. Besides the arms already mentioned, each man is furnished with a large massy pole-ax, which, in the hands of people who have courage, must be a formidable weapon. In the use of their lances these people are said to be so expert, that they can pierce a man through

the

the
Raja
This
tants
no a
saw
to ar
the t
old a
for s
lance
clean
into
so lit
came
a cog
or no
either
into t
before
and p
hole t
not in
The
namel
the fe
land o
and th
and so
of one
man r
lands,
not ev
estates
tent:
whilst
abroad
hilted
tassels,
bacco,
that ev

the heart at sixty or seventy yards distance: yet the Raja had always lived at peace with his neighbours. This account of the martial prowess of the inhabitants of Savu may be true; but during our stay we saw no appearance of it. Before the town house indeed, we saw about one hundred spears and targets, which served to arm those who were sent down to intimidate us at the trading place, but they seemed to be the refuse of old armories, no two being of the same make or length, for some were six, others sixteen feet long. Not one lance was among them, and though the musquets were clean on the outside, within they were eaten by the rust into holes; and the people themselves appeared to be so little acquainted with military discipline, that they came down like a disorderly rabble, every one having a cock, some tobacco, or other merchandise, and few or none of their cartouch boxes were furnished with either powder or ball, but a piece of paper was thrust into the holes to save appearances. We likewise saw before the house of assembly a great gun, some swivels, and patararoes: but the great gun lay with the touch-hole to the ground, and the swivels and patararoes were not in their carriages.

The inhabitants of Savu are divided into five ranks, namely, the Rajas, the land owners, the manufacturers, the servants, and the slaves. The Rajas are chief; the land owners are respected in proportion to their estates, and the number of their slaves, which last are bought and sold with their estates; but a fat hog is the price of one if purchased separately. Notwithstanding a man may thus sell his slave, or convey him with his lands, yet his power does not extend farther, as he may not even strike him without the Raja's permission. The estates of these land-holders are of very different extent: some of them not possessing above five slaves, whilst others have 500. When a man of rank goes abroad, one of his slaves follows him with a silver-hilted sword or hanger, ornamented with horse hair tassels, and another carries a little bag containing tobacco, beetle, areca, and lime. This is all the state that even the Rajas themselves take upon them.

These

These people have a great veneration for antiquity. Their principal boast is of a long line of venerable ancestors. Those houses that have been well tenanted for successive generations, are held in the highest esteem; even the stones which are worn smooth by having been sat upon for ages, derive a certain value from that circumstance. He whose progenitors have bequeathed him any of these stones, or whose wealth has enabled him to purchase them, causes them to be ranged round his habitation, for his servants and slaves to sit upon. The Raja causes a large stone to be set up in the chief town of each district as a monument of his reign. In the province of Seba, thirteen such stones were seen as well as the remains of several others which were much worn. These stones were all placed on the top of a hill, and some of them were of such an enormous size that it was amazing by what means they could have been brought thither; nor could any information on this head be obtained from the natives: these monuments however, indicated that for a series of generations, the island had been regularly governed.— When a Raja dies, proclamation is made that all those who have been his subjects shall hold a solemn festival. On this they proceed to the hill where these stones are erected, and feast for several weeks, killing all the animals that suit their purpose, wherever they can be found, in order to furnish the treat, which is daily served up on the monumental stones. When they have thus exhausted their whole stock, they are compelled to keep a fast; and when the feast happens to end in the dry season, when they cannot get vegetables to eat, they have no other subsistence than the palm syrup and water, till the few animals which have escaped the general massacre have bred a sufficient number for a fresh supply, except the adjacent district happens to be in a condition to relieve them.

The natives of Savu have an instrument with which they clear the cotton of its seeds; it is about seven inches in height and fourteen in length. They have also a machine with which they spin by hand, as was the custom before the invention of spinning wheels in Europe.

The

The
and
small
are a
pestile
carried
his food
as no
all his
happen
comm
The
which
they w
mally t
trading
the nat
posed,
Spice-Is
small nu
pany ma
islands,
should b
return,
lery war
having
bring av
brings th
rice on b
on this
turn. T
by the Ra
tendants
it is exha
It was
Rajas stip
stantly on
we have
and a for
Portugues
one Frede

The inhabitants of this island were in general robust and healthy, and had every mark of longevity. The small pox, however, is a distemper with which they are acquainted, and which they dread as much as a pestilence. When any person is attacked by it, he is carried to a spot at a distance from the houses, where his food is conveyed to him by means of a long stick, as no one dares to venture near him. Abandoned by all his friends, he is there left to live or die as it may happen, without being admitted to any comforts of the community.

The Portuguese very early visited this island, on which they established a settlement, but soon after they were succeeded by the Dutch, who without formally taking possession of the place, sent a number of trading vessels in order to establish a commerce with the natives. Most of the Dutch purchases, it is supposed, are confined to a supply of provisions for the Spice-Islands, the inhabitants of which breed but a small number of cattle. The Dutch East India Company made an agreement with the several Rajas of the islands, that a quantity of rice, maize, and callavances should be annually furnished to their people, who, in return, were to supply the Rajas with silk, linen, cutlery wares, and arrack. Certain small vessels, each having on board ten Indians, are sent from Timor to bring away the maize and callavances, and a ship that brings the articles furnished by the Dutch, receives the rice on board once a year; and as there are three bays on this coast, this vessel anchors in each of them in turn. The Dutch articles of commerce are accepted by the Rajas as a present; and they and their chief attendants drink of the arrack without intermission till it is exhausted.

It was in the agreement above-mentioned that the Rajas stipulated, that a Dutch resident should be constantly on the island. Accordingly this Lange, whom we have mentioned, was sent thither in that capacity, and a sort of assistant with him, whose father was a Portuguese, and his mother a native of Timor, with one Frederic Craig, whose father was a Dutchman, and

his mother an Indian. Mr. Lange visits the Raja in state, attended by fifty slaves on horse-back, and if the crops are ripe, orders vessels to convey them immediately to Timor, so that they are not even housed upon the island. It is likewise part of his business to persuade the landholders to plant, if he perceives that they are backward in that particular. This resident had been ten years on the island, when the Endeavour touched there, during all which time he had not seen any white persons, except those who came annually in the Dutch vessel, to carry off the rice, as above-mentioned. He was married to a native of Timor, and lived in the same manner as the natives of Savu, whose language he spoke better than any other. He sat on the ground like the Indians, and chewed beetle, and seemed in every thing to resemble them, except in his complexion and the dress of his country. As to Mr. Craig, his assistant, he was employed in teaching the natives to write and read, and instructing them in the principles of Christianity. Though there was neither clergyman nor church to be seen upon the island, yet this Mr. Craig averred, that in the township of Seba only, there were 600 Christians: as to the religion of those who have not embraced Christianity, it is a peculiar species of Paganism, every one having a god of his own, somewhat after the manner of the Cemies heretofore mentioned. Their morality, however, is much purer than could be expected from such a people. Robberies are scarcely ever committed. Murder is unknown among them; and though no man is allowed more than one wife, they are strangers to adultery, and almost so to the crime of simple fornication. When any disputes arise between the natives, the determination of the Raja is decisive and satisfactory. Some observations were made upon the language of the natives, by the gentlemen, while the vessel lay here; and a kind of vocabulary formed, a sketch of which we have here inserted:

Momonne,	-	A man.
Mobunne,	-	A woman.
Otao,	-	The head.

Row

Row ca
Matta,
Rowna
Swanga
Cavaran
Wodeel
Vaio,
Lacoco,
Soosoo,
Caboo s
Dulloo,
Afoo,
Tooga,
Rootoo,
Baibo,
Dunceala
Kissovei y
Camacoo
Wulaba,
Cabaot,
Djara,
Vavee,
Doomba,
Kefavoo,
Guaca,
Maio,
Mannu,
Carow,
Pangouto
Ica,
Unjoo,
Nieu,
Boaceree,
Calella,
Canana,
Aou,
Maanadoo
Tata,
Lodo,
Wurroo,
Aidaffee,
No. 8.

Row catoo,	-	<i>The hair.</i>
Matta,	-	<i>The eyes.</i>
Rowna matta,	-	<i>The eye-lashes.</i>
Swanga,	-	<i>The nose.</i>
Cavaranga,	-	<i>The cheeks.</i>
Wodeele,	-	<i>The ears.</i>
Vaio,	-	<i>The tongue.</i>
Lacoco,	-	<i>The neck.</i>
Soofoo,	-	<i>The breasts.</i>
Caboo soofoo	-	<i>The nipples.</i>
Dulloo,	-	<i>The belly.</i>
Afoo,	-	<i>The navel.</i>
Tooga,	-	<i>The thighs.</i>
Rootoo,	-	<i>The knees.</i>
Baibo,	-	<i>The legs.</i>
Dunceala,	-	<i>The feet.</i>
Kissovei yilla,	-	<i>The toes.</i>
Camacoo,	-	<i>The arms.</i>
Wulaba,	-	<i>The hand.</i>
Cabaoi,	-	<i>A buffalo.</i>
Djara,	-	<i>A horse.</i>
Vavee,	-	<i>A hog.</i>
Doomba,	-	<i>A sheep.</i>
Kesavoo,	-	<i>A goat.</i>
Guaca,	-	<i>A dog.</i>
Maio,	-	<i>A cat.</i>
Mannu,	-	<i>A fowl.</i>
Carow,	-	<i>The tail.</i>
Pangoutoo,	-	<i>The beak.</i>
Ica,	-	<i>A fish.</i>
Unjoo,	-	<i>A turtle.</i>
Nieu,	-	<i>A cocoa-nut.</i>
Boaceree,	-	<i>Fan palm.</i>
Caella,	-	<i>Areca.</i>
Canana,	-	<i>Beetle.</i>
Aou,	-	<i>Lime.</i>
Maanadoo,	-	<i>A fish-hook.</i>
Tata,	-	<i>Tatou, or marks on the skin.</i>
Lodo,	-	<i>The sun.</i>
Wurroo,	-	<i>The moon.</i>
Aidafsee,	-	<i>The sea.</i>
No. 8.		K k

Ailea,	-	-	Water.
Aoc,	-	-	Fire.
Maate,	-	-	To die.
Tabudge,	-	-	To sleep.
Tatee too,	-	-	To rise.
Uffe,	-	-	One.
Lhua,	-	-	Two.
Tullu,	-	-	Three.
Uppah,	-	-	Four.
Lumme,	-	-	Five.
Unna,	-	-	Six.
Pedu,	-	-	Seven.
Arru,	-	-	Eight.
Saou,	-	-	Nine.
Singooroo,	-	-	Ten.
Singurunguffe,	-	-	Eleven.
Lhuangooroo,	-	-	20.
Singassu,	-	-	100.
Setuppah,	-	-	1000.
Selacuffa,	-	-	10,000.
Serata,	-	-	100,000.
Sereboo,	-	-	1,000,000.

It is here necessary to observe, that this island has not been laid down in any of the charts hitherto published, and as to our account of it, let it be remembered, that except the facts in which we were parties, and the account of the objects which we had an opportunity to examine, the whole is founded merely upon the report of Mr. Lange, upon whose authority it must therefore rest.

Of the islands in the neighbourhood of Savu, the principal is Timor, which is annually visited by the Dutch residents on the other islands, in order to make up their accounts. Some of the towns on the north side of Timor are in the hands of the Portuguese; but the Dutch possess a far greater proportion of the island on which they have built a fort, and erected several store-houses. There are three small islands, called the Solars, which produce great abundance of the various necessaries of life, that are carried in small vessels to

the Du
islands
dious h
little if
who ha
of it ;
may ric
resident
on the
things a
quantity
perfectio
the west
areca nu
Europea
as load t
About
feas, a Fr
she had
the wind
tain, wit
ed; but
reached t
cordia, w
and they a
with some
en recover
fects. Th
they rema
made such
their num
ary, which
out for the
On Frid
we got und
the north
ying to th
stant two
clude 10
in. W. v
veeing of

the Dutch settlements on the island of Timor. These islands are low and flat, and one of them has a commodious harbour. To the westward of the Solars lies the little island of Ende, in the possession of the Portuguese, who have built a considerable town on the N. E. point of it; and close to the town is an harbour where ships may ride in safety. The island of Rotte has a Dutch resident, whose business is similar to that of Mr. Lange on the island of Savu. Rotte produces, besides such things as are common to other islands, a considerable quantity of sugar, which is made to a great degree of perfection. There is likewise a small island lying to the west of Savu, the chief produce of which is the areca nut, of which the Dutch receive in exchange for European commodities, as large a quantity every year as load two vessels.

About two years before the Endeavour was in these seas, a French ship was wrecked on the coast of Timor: she had been lodged on the rocks several days, when the wind tore her to pieces in an instant, and the Captain, with the greater part of the seamen were drowned; but the lieutenant and about eighty men, having reached the shore, travelled across the country of Concordia, where their immediate wants were relieved, and they afterwards returned to the wreck, in company with some Dutchmen and Indians, who assisted them in recovering all their chests of bullion, and other effects. This done they returned to Concordia, where they remained several weeks; but in this interval death made such havock among them, that not above half their number remained to return to their native country, which they did as soon as a vessel could be fitted out for them.

On Friday, the 21st of September, in the morning, we got under sail, and bent our course westward, along the north side of the island of Savu, and of another lying to the westward of it, which at noon bore S. S. E. distant two leagues. At four in the afternoon, in latitude 10 deg. 38 min. S. and longitude 238 deg. 28 min. W. we discovered a small low island. In the evening of the 23^d, we got clear of the islands, and

On the 26th, our latitude by observation was 10 deg. 51 min. S. and our longitude 252 deg. 11 min. W. On the 28th, we steered all day N. W. with a view of making the land of Java, and on the 30th, Capt. Cook took into his possession the log-book and journals, at least all he could find of the officers, petty officers, and seamen, whom he strictly enjoined secrecy with respect to where they had been. At seven in the evening we had thunder and lightning, and about twelve by the light of the flashes we saw the west end of Java.

On Monday, October the 1st, at six o'clock in the morning, Java Head bore S. E. by E. distant five leagues. Soon after we saw Prince's Island, and at ten Cracatoa, a remarkable high peaked island. At noon it bore N. 40 E. distant seven leagues. On the 2nd, we were close in with the coast of Java, in fifteen fathom water, along which we stood. In the forenoon a boat was sent ashore, order to procure some fruit for Tupia, who was at that time extremely ill. Our people returned with four cocoa-nuts, and a small bunch of plantains, for which they had paid a shilling; but some herbage for the cattle the Indians gave our seamen, and assisted them to cut it. The country had a delightful appearance, being every where covered with trees, which looked like one continued wood. About eleven o'clock we saw two Dutch East Indiamen, from whom we heard with great pleasure that the Swallow had reached the English channel in safety, having been at Batavia about two years before. We also learnt, that there was stationed here a fly boat or packet, to carry letters, as was said, from the Dutch ships, that came hither from Batavia, but the Captain thought it was appointed to examine all ships, that should have passed the streight. We had now been some hours at anchor, but in the evening a light breeze springing up, we got under sail, yet having little wind and a strong current against us, we reached no further but eight in the morning, of the 3d, than Bantam Point. We now perceived the Dutch packet standing after us, but the wind shifting to the N. E. she bore away. We were now obliged to anchor; which we did in twenty

two fathom water, at about two miles from the shore. At six o'clock in the evening, the country boats came along side of us, on board one of which was the master of the packet. They brought in them fowls, ducks, parrots, turtle, rice, birds, monkeys, and other articles; with an intention to sell them, but having fixed very high prices on their commodities, and our Savu stock being not yet expended, very few articles were purchased. The captain indeed gave two dollars for twenty-five fowls, and a Spanish dollar for a turtle, which weighed about six and thirty pounds. We might also for a dollar have bought two monkeys, or a whole cage of rice-birds. The master of the packet brought with him two books, in one of which he desired of our officers, that one of them would write down the name of our ship and commander; the place from whence we came; to what port bound; with such other particulars relating to ourselves, as we might think proper, for the information of any of our countrymen who might come after us. In the other book the master himself entered the names of our ship and its captain, in order to transmit them to the governor and council of the Indies. We perceived, that in the first book many ships, particularly Portuguese, had made enteries of the same kind with that for which it was presented to us. Mr. Hicks, our lieutenant, however, having written the name of the ship, only added "from Europe." The master of the packet took notice of this, but said, that he was satisfied with any thing we thought fit to write, it being intended solely for the information of our friends.

Friday the fifth, we made several attempts to sail with a wind that would not stem the current, and as often came to an anchor. In the morning a proa, with a Dutch officer, came along-side of us, and sent to Captain Cook a printed paper in exceeding bad English, duplicates of which he had in other languages, all regularly signed, in the name of the governor and council of the Indies, by their secretary; the contents whereof were the following enquiries, contained in nine questions.

1. The

1. The ship's name, and to what nation she belonged?
2. If she came from Europe, or any other place?
3. From what place she had last departed?
4. Whereunto designed to go?
5. What and how many ships of the Dutch company by departure from the last shore there layed, and their names?
6. If one or more of these ships, in company with the Endeavour, is departed for this or any other place?
7. If during the voyage any particularities is happened, or seen?
8. If not any ships in sea, or the freights of Sunda, have seen, or hailed in, and which?
9. If any other news worth of attention, at the place from whence the ship lastly departed, or during the voyage, is happened?

BATAVIA in the Castle.

By order of the Governor General, and the
 Counsellors of India,

J. BRANDER BUNGL. Secy.

The officer observing, that the captain did not chuse to answer any of the above questions, except the first and fourth, he said that the rest were not material, though it was remarked that just afterwards he affirmed he must dispatch the paper to Batavia, at which place it would arrive by the next day. This examination was rather extraordinary, and the more so, as it does not seem to have been of any long standing.

As soon as the Dutch officer departed, the anchor was weighed, but in four hours the ship was forced to come to an anchor again, till a breeze sprang up; she then held on her course till the next morning, when on account of the rapidity of the current, the anchor was dropped again. At last we weighed on the 8th, and stood clear of a large ledge of rocks, which we had almost ran upon the preceding day. But in the forenoon we were once more obliged to anchor near a little island that was not laid down in any chart on board.

It

It was found to be one of those called the Milles Isles. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander having landed upon it, collected a few plants; and shot a bat which was a yard long, being measured from the extreme points of the wings; they also killed a few plovers on this island, the breadth of which does not exceed one hundred yards, and the length five hundred; they found a house and a little spot of cultivated ground, and on it grew the *Palma Christi*, from which the West Indians make their castor oil.

In a little time after the gentlemen returned to the ship, some Malays came along-side in a boat, bringing with them pompions, dried fish, and turtle, for sale; one of the turtles, which weighed near one hundred and fifty pounds, they sold for a dollar, and seemed to expect the same piece of money for their fruit; but it being hinted to them that a dollar was too much, they desired that one might be cut, and a piece of it given to them; but this not being complied with, they at length sold twenty-six pompions for a Portuguese pe-tacka. When they departed, they intimated their wishes, that this transaction might not be mentioned at Batavia.

We now made but little way till night, when the land-breeze springing up, we sailed to the E. S. E. and on the following day, by the assistance of the sea-breeze, came to an anchor in the road of Batavia. At this place we found a number of large Dutch vessels, the *Harcourt* East-Indiaman from England, which had lost her passage to China, and two ships belonging to the private trade of our India company. The *Endeavour* had no sooner anchored, than a ship was observed, with a broad pendant flying, from which a boat was dispatched to demand the name of the vessel, with that of the commander, &c. To these enquiries Captain Cook gave such answers as he thought proper, and the officer who commanded the boat departed. This gentleman, and the crew that attended him, were so worn out with the unhealthiness of the climate, that it was apparent many deaths would follow: yet at present there was not one invalid on board of our ship, except the

the Indian Tupia. The captain now dispatched an officer to the governor of the town, to apologize for the Endeavour's not saluting: for he had but three guns proper for the purpose, except swivels, and he was apprehensive that they would not be heard. The ship was so leaky, that she made about nine inches water in an hour, on the average; part of the false keel was gone; one of her pumps was totally useless, and the rest so much decayed, that they could not last long. The officers and seamen concurring in opinion that the ship could not safely put to sea again in this condition, the captain resolved to solicit permission to heave her down; but as he had learned that this must be done in writing, he drew up a petition, and had it translated into Dutch.

On Wednesday, October the 10th, the captain and the rest of the gentlemen went on shore, and applied to the only English resident at Batavia; this gentleman, whose name was Leith, received his countrymen in the politest manner, and entertained them at dinner with great hospitality. Mr. Leith informed us, that a public hotel was kept in town, by order of the Dutch governor, at which place merchants and other strangers were obliged to lodge, and that the landlord of the hotel was bound to find them warehouses for their goods, on the condition of receiving ten shillings on every hundred pounds of their value, but as the Endeavour was a king's ship, her officers, and the other gentlemen, might reside where they thought proper, only asking leave of the governor, whose permission would be instantly obtained. Mr. Leith added, that they might live cheaper in this way than at the hotel, if they had any person who spoke the Batavian tongue, whom they could rely on to purchase their provisions, but as there was no such person among the whole ship's crew, the gentlemen immediately bespoke beds at the hotel. In the afternoon Captain Cook attended the governor-general, who received him politely, and told him to wait on the council the next morning, when his petition should be laid before them, and every thing that he solicited should be granted. Late in the evening

ing
of
fair
Ind
the
torr
attr
mas
dista
owin
conc
on b
quet
hand
trica
fusta
O
gent
his re
the d
of th
as mu
have
for n
condi
shoul
for h
bed,
wife t
pence
been
much
They
were
dishes
teen,
nary,
chased
be ser
hot at
next d
N

ing of this day, there happened a most terrible storm of thunder and lightning, accompanied with very heavy rain. In this storm the main-mast of a Dutch East Indiaman was split and carried away by the deck; and the main-top-mast and main-top-gallant-mast were torn to pieces; it is supposed, that the lightning was attracted by an iron spindle at the main-top-gallant-mast-head. The Endeavour, which was at a small distance from the Dutch ship, escaped without damage, owing, most probably, to the electrical chain which conducted the lightning over the vessel.—A sentinel on board the Endeavour, who was charging his musquet at the time of the storm, had it shaken out of his hand, and the ram-rod broken to pieces; the electrical chain looked like a stream of fire, and the ship sustained a very violent shock.

On Thursday the 11th, Capt. Cook waited on the gentlemen of the council, who informed him that all his requests should be complied with. In the interim the other gentlemen made a contract with the master of the hotel, to furnish them and their friends with as much tea, coffee, punch and tobacco, as they might have occasion for, and to keep them a separate table, for nine shillings a day English money: but on the condition that every person who should visit them, should pay at the rate of four shillings and six-pence for his dinner, and the same sum for his supper and bed, if he chose to sleep at the hotel; they were likewise to pay for every servant that attended them fifteen pence a day. It was soon discovered, that they had been much imposed on; for these charges were twice as much as could have been demanded at a private house. They appeared to live elegantly, but at the same time were but ill supplied. Their dinner consisted of fifteen dishes, all served up at once; and their supper of thirteen, but of these, nine or ten were of the most ordinary, because the cheapest, (poultry) that could be purchased, and even some of these dishes were observed to be served up four times successively: a duck, which was hot at dinner, was brought cold in the evening, the next day served up as a fricassée, and was converted

into forced meat at night. We, however, only fared as others had done before us: it was the constant custom of the conscientious master of the hotel, to treat all his guests in the same manner: if we took no notice of it, all was well, for the landlord had the better customers of us: if we remonstrated against such treatment, the table was better supplied from time to time, till, in the end, we had no reason to complain. However, after a few days, Mr. Banks hired for himself and party, a small house, next door to the hotel, for which he paid forty-five shillings per month; but they were far from having the conveniencies and privacy they expected: for no person was permitted to sleep in it as an occasional guest, under a penalty; and Dutchmen were continually running in without the least ceremony, to ask what was to be sold, it being a custom for most private persons in Batavia to be furnished with some articles of traffic. Every one here hires a carriage, and Mr. Banks engaged two. These carriages are open chaises; they hold two persons, and are driven by a man sitting on a kind of coach-box: for each of these Mr. Banks paid two rix-dollars a day.

Our Indian friend Tupia had hitherto continued on board on account of his disorder, which was of the bilious kind, yet he persisted in refusing every medicine that was offered him. Mr. Banks sent for him to his house, in hopes that he might recover his health. While in the ship, and even in the boat, he was exceedingly listless and low spirited, but he no sooner entered the town than he seemed as if reanimated. The houses, the carriages, streets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, wholly new to him, produced an effect like the supposed power of fascination. But if Tupia was astonished at the scene, his boy Tayeto was perfectly enraptured. He expressed his wonder and delight with less restraint. He danced along the street in a kind of ecstasy, and examined every object with a restless curiosity which was each moment excited and gratified. Tupia remarked particularly the variety of dresses worn by the passing multitude, concerning which he made many enquiries. Being informed, that here were people of different

diffe
respo
to th
some
dress
The
thith
miste
he w
an or
wher
and
coun
miral
foun
the e
Ende
inclu
sent
order
what
fury.
Th
delay
the
order
nine
the c
and g
was
Bank
the tv
almo
in a
swam
dirty
On
duty,
whof
to the
this c

different nations, each of whom wore the habit of his respective country, he desired that he might conform to the custom, and appear in that of Otaheite; and some South-sea cloth being sent for from the ship, he dressed himself with great expedition and dexterity. The people of Batavia, who had seen an Indian brought thither in M. Bougainville's ship, named Otourou, mistook Tupia for that person, and frequently asked if he was not the same. About this time we had procured an order to the superintendant of the island of Ourust, where the ship was to be repaired, to receive her there, and by one of the ships that sailed for Holland, an account was sent to Mr. Stephens, secretary to the admiralty, of our arrival at this place. Here the captain found an unexpected difficulty in procuring money for the expences that would be incurred by refitting the Endeavour; private persons had neither the ability nor inclination to advance the sum required; he therefore sent a written application to the governor himself, who ordered the Shebander to supply the captain with what money he might want out of the company's treasury.

Thursday the 18th, early in the morning, after a delay of some days, we ran down to Ourust, and laid the ship along-side of the wharf, on Cooper's Island, in order to take out her stores. After little more than nine days, we began to experience the fatal effects of the climate and situation. Tupia sunk on a sudden, and grew every day worse and worse. Tayeto, his boy, was seized with an inflammation on his lungs. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were attacked by fevers, and the two servants of the former became very ill; in short, almost every person both on board and ashore fell sick in a few days, owing, as we imagined, to the low swampy situation of the place, and the numberless dirty canals, that intersect the town in all directions.

On the 26th, when few of the crew were able to do duty, we erected a tent for their reception. Tupia, of whose life we began to despair, desired to be removed to the ship, in hopes of breathing a freer air; however this could not be done, as she was unrigged, and pre-

paring to be laid down at the careening-place ; but on the 28th, Mr. Banks conveyed him to Cooper's Island, or as it is called here, Kuypor, and, as he seemed pleased with the spot near which the ship lay, a tent was pitched for him. When the sea and land breezes blew over him, he expressed great satisfaction at his situation. On the 30th Mr. Banks returned to town, having, from humanity alone, been two days with Tupia, whose fits of an intermitting fever, now became a regular tertian, and were so violent as to deprive him of his senses while they lasted, and left him so weak, that he could scarcely crawl from his bed. At the same time Dr. Solander's fever increased, and Mr. Monkhouse, our surgeon, was confined to his bed.

On Monday the 5th of November, after many unavoidable delays, the ship was laid down, and the same day Mr. Monkhouse, our surgeon, fell a sacrifice to this fatal country ; whose loss was more severely felt, by his being a sensible, skilful man, and dying at a time when his abilities were most wanted. Dr. Solander was just able to attend his funeral, but Mr. Banks, in his turn, was confined to his bed. Great, inexpressibly great was our distress at this time ; the prospect before us in the highest degree discouraging ; our danger such as we could not surmount by any efforts of our own, for courage, diligence, and skill, were all equally ineffectual ; and death was every day making advances towards us, when we could neither resist nor fly. The power of disease, from the pestiferous air of the country, daily gaining strength, several Malay servants were hired to attend the sick, but they had so little sense either of duty or humanity, that the patient was obliged frequently to get out of bed to seek them.

Friday the 9th, our Indian boy Tayeto paid the debt of nature, and poor Tupia was so affected at the loss, that it was doubted whether he would survive it till the next day. In the mean time the ship's bottom having been carefully examined, it was found to be in a worse condition than we apprehended. The false keel was considerably gone to within twenty feet of the stern post ; the main keel was injured in many places ; much

of

of the
great
partic
that t
and t
bers :
many
ous as
we esc
of the
a shoe
flight
ocean !

Dr.
by thei
no cha
country
hired fo
the tow
who en
use of
unfeelin
bought
tenderne
these ge
covery
the deat
after the
the tend
seized wi
approach
about hir
he was ve
offered h
Edam.

On the
repaired,
bestowed
men at t
one in the
more con

of the sheathing was torn off; and several planks were greatly damaged; two of them, and half of a third, particularly, for the length of six feet, were so worn, that they were not above an eighth part of an inch thick, and the worms had made their way quite into the timbers: yet, in this condition, the Endeavour had sailed many hundred leagues, where navigation is as dangerous as in any part of the globe. How much misery did we escape, by being ignorant that so considerable a part of the bottom of the vessel was thinner than the sole of a shoe, and that every life on board depended on so slight a barrier between us and the unfathomable ocean!

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were now so worn down by their disorders, that the physician declared they had no chance for recovery but by removing into the country. In consequence of this advice a house was hired for them, at the distance of about two miles from the town, which belonged to the master of the hotel, who engaged to supply them with provisions, and the use of flaves. As they had already experienced the unfeeling inattention of these fellows to the sick, they bought each of them a Malay woman, who, from the tenderness of their sex made them good nurses. While these gentlemen were taking measures for the recovery of their health, we received an account of the death of our faithful Tupia, who sunk at once after the loss of his boy, Tayeto, whom he loved with the tenderness of a parent. When Tayeto was first seized with the fatal disorder, he seemed sensible of his approaching end, and frequently said to those that were about him Tyau mate see, "My friends I am dying;" he was very tractable, and took any medicines that were offered him: they were both buried in the island of Edam.

On the 14th, the bottom of the ship was thoroughly repaired, and much to Capt. Cook's satisfaction, who bestowed great encomiums on the officers and the workmen at the Marine-yard; in his opinion there is not one in the world, where a ship can be laid down with more convenient speed and safety, nor repaired with
more

more diligence and skill. At this place they heave down with two masts, a method we do not now practise; it is, however, unquestionably more safe and expeditious to heave down with two masts than one, and the man must want common sense, or be strangely attached to old customs, who will not allow this, after seeing with what facility the Dutch heave down and refit their largest vessels at Ourust. At this time Capt. Cook was taken ill. Mr. Sporing also, and a sailor who attended Mr. Banks, were seized with the deadly intermittents, and only ten of the ship's company were capable of doing duty. As to Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, they recovered slowly at their country-house, which was open to the sea-breeze, and situated upon a running stream; circumstances that contributed not a little to a free circulation of air. Yet notwithstanding these perplexing obstacles, though harrassed by a contagious disease; and alarmed by frequent deaths, we proceeded in rigging the ship, and getting water and necessary stores aboard: the stores were easily obtained and shipped, but the water we were obliged to procure from Batavia, at the rate of six shillings and eight-pence a leger, or one hundred and fifty gallon.

On the 25th, in the night there fell such a shower of rain, for the space of four hours, as even all of us had cause ever to remember. The water poured through every part of Mr. Banks's house, and the lower apartments admitted a stream sufficient to turn a mill. As this gentleman was now greatly restored in health, he went to Batavia the following day, and was surprized to see that the inhabitants had hung their bedding to dry. About the 26th of this month the westerly monsoon set in; it blows in the day-time from the N. or N. W. and from the S. W. during the night; previous to this, there had been violent showers of rain for several nights. The musquitoes and gnats, whose company had been sufficiently disagreeable in dry weather, now began to swarm in immense numbers, rising from the puddles of water like bees from a hive; they were extremely troublesome during the night, but the pain arising from the sting, though very severe, seldom lasted more than half

an

an hour, and in the day-time they seldom made their attack. The frogs kept a perpetual croaking in the ditches, a certain sign that the wet season was commenced, and that daily rain might be expected.

The ship being repaired, the sick people received on board her, and the greater part of her water and stores taken in, she sailed from Ourust on the 8th of December, and anchored in the road of Batavia: twelve days were employed in receiving the remainder of her provisions, water, and other necessaries, though the business would have been done in much less time, but that some of the crew died, and the majority of the survivors were so ill, as to be unable to give their assistance.

On the 24th, Capt. Cook took leave of the governor, and some other gentlemen, who had distinguished themselves by the civilities they shewed him; but at this juncture an incident occurred, that might have produced consequences by no means desirable. A sailor belonging to one of the Dutch ships in the road of Batavia, deserted from the vessel, and entered himself on board the Endeavour. The captain of the Dutch ship having made application to the governor, claiming the delinquent as a subject of the States General, the governor issued his order for the restoration of the man; when this order was delivered to him, he said, that the man should be given up, if he appeared to be a Dutchman. As the captain was at this time on shore, and did not intend going on board till the following day, he gave the Dutch officer a note to the lieutenant, who commanded on board the Endeavour, to deliver the deserter on the condition above-mentioned. On the following day the Dutchman waited on Capt. Cook, informing him, that the lieutenant had absolutely refused to give up the seaman, saying he was an Irishman, and of course a subject of his Britannic Majesty; Capt. Cook applauded the conduct of his officer, and added, that it could not be expected that he should deliver up an English subject. The Dutch officer then said, he was authorized, by the governor, to demand the fugitive as a Danish subject, adding that his name was entered in the ship's books as having been born at Elfineur;

to this Capt. Cook very properly replied, that the governor must have been mistaken, when he gave this order for delivering the deserter, who had his option whether he would serve the Dutch or the English; but in compliment to the governor, the man should be given up, as a favour, if he appeared to be a Dane, but that in this case, he should by no means be demanded as a right; and that he would certainly keep him, if he appeared to be a subject of the crown of Great Britain. The Dutchman now took his leave, and he had not been long gone before the captain received a letter from the commanding officer on board, containing full proof, that the man was an English subject. This letter the captain carried to the shebander, desiring him to lay it before the governor, and to inform him, that the man should not be delivered up on any terms whatever. This spirited conduct on the part of Capt. Cook, had the desired effect; and thus the matter ended.

This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen who had hitherto lived in the town, repaired on board the ship, which got under sail the next morning. The Endeavour was saluted by the fort; and by the Elgin East Indiaman, which then lay in the road; but soon after these compliments were returned, the sea-breeze setting in, they were obliged to come to anchor. Since the arrival of the ship in Batavia Road every person belonging to her had been ill, except the sail-maker, who was more than seventy years old, yet this man got drunk every day while we remained there. The Endeavour buried seven of her people at Batavia, viz. Tupia and his boy, three of the sailors, the servant of Mr. Green the astronomer and the surgeon; and at the time of the vessel's sailing, forty of the crew were sick, and the rest so enfeebled by their late illness, as to be scarcely able to do their duty.

A desc.
circu-
lariz
the
from
the
View
Jave
Good
to th
mark
land,
1771

B At
10
of Gree
thing
Sunda,
boggy
miles u
Berg,
having
There a
every st
with tre
trees an
Some o
miles u
to have
sake of
exceeds
Holland
place n
at that
Chines
houses,
with 12
No. 9

C H A P. XII.

A descriptive Account of the Town of Batavia, and the circumjacent Country—Its various Productions particularized—The Manners, Customs, and Way of Living of the Inhabitants fully described—The Endeavour sails from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope—An Account of the Inhabitants of Prince's Island, with a comparative View of their Language, with that of the Malay and Javanese—The Arrival of the Endeavour at the Cape of Good Hope—Observations on the Run from Java Head to that Place—The Cape and St. Helena described—Remarks on the Hottentots—The Endeavour returns to England, and anchors in the Downs on Wednesday, June 12, 1771.

BATAVIA, situated in 6 deg. 10 min. S. latitude, and 106 deg. 50 min. E. longitude from the meridian of Greenwich, is built on the bank of a large bay, something more than twenty miles from the Streight of Sunda, on the north side of the island of Java; on a low boggy ground. Several small rivers, which rise forty miles up the country, in the mountains of Blacuwert Berg, discharge themselves into the sea at this place, having first intersected the town in different directions. There are wide canals of nearly stagnated water in almost every street, and as the banks of the canals are planted with trees, they appear at first very agreeable; but these trees and canals combine to render the air pestilential. Some of the rivers are navigable, more than thirty miles up the country; and indeed, the Dutch appear to have chosen this spot to build the town on, for the sake of water-carriage, in which convenience Batavia exceeds every place in the world, except the towns of Holland. A writer who published an account of this place near 50 years ago, makes the number of houses at that time 4760, viz. 1242 Dutch houses, and 1200 Chinese houses, within the walls; and 1066 Dutch houses, and 1240 Chinese houses, without the walls, with 12 houses for the vending of arrack. The streets

of Batavia being wide, and the houses large, it stands on more ground than any place that has only an equal number of houses. In dry weather a most horrid stench arises from the canals, and taints the air to a great degree; and when the rains have so swelled their canals that they overflow their banks, the ground-floors of the houses, in the lower part of the town, are filled with stinking water, that leaves behind it dirt and slime in amazing quantities. The running streams are sometimes as offensive as the stagnated canals, for the bodies of dead animals are frequently lodged on the shallow parts, where they are left to putrify and corrupt the air, except a flood happens to carry them away; this was the case of a dead buffalo, while the crew of the Endeavour were there, which lay stinking on the shoal of a river, in one of the chief streets for several days. They sometimes clean the canals; but this business is performed in such a manner, as scarcely to make them less a nuisance than before, for the bottom being cleared of its black mud, it is left on the side of the canal till it is hard enough to be taken away in boats, and as there are no houses for necessary retirement in the whole town, the filth is thrown into the canals regularly once a day; so that this mud is a compound of every thing that can be imagined disagreeable and offensive.

The new church in Batavia, is a fine piece of building, and the dome of it may be seen far off at sea. This church is illuminated by chandeliers of the most superb workmanship, and has a fine organ: most of the other public buildings are ancient, constructed in an ill taste, and gave a very compleat idea of Dutch clumsiness. Their method of building their houses seems to have been taught them by the climate. On the ground-floor there is no room but a large hall, a corner of which is parted off for the transaction of business; the hall has two doors, which are commonly left open, and are opposite each other, so that the air passes freely through the room, in the middle of which there is a court, which at once increases the draft of air, and affords light to the hall; the stairs, which are at one corner, lead to large and lofty apartments above.

abr
any
is th
B
the
whic
old
in t
othe
but b
the
there
N, E
broac
furni
the la
Ap
verno
siege
are li
effects
comp
gun-p
lightn
great
the ca
rent p
tavia,
mission
fied h
station
the bo
parts
its nei
possess
in the
lified
which
are a f
The
the di

above. The female slaves are not permitted to sit in any place but the alcove formed by the court, and this is the usual dining place of the family.

Batavia is encompassed by a river of shallow water, the stream of which is very rapid; within this river, which is of different widths in various places, is an old stone wall, much decayed in many places, and within the wall is a canal wider in some places than in others, so that there is no entering the gates of the town but by crossing two draw-bridges; there are but few on the ramparts, and no persons are permitted to walk there. There is a kind of citadel, or castle, in the N. E. corner of the town, the walls of which are both broader and higher than they are in other parts; it is furnished with a number of large guns, which command the landing-place.

Apartments are provided in this castle for the governor-general and all the council; and in case of a siege they have orders to retire thither. In the castle are likewise a number of store-houses, in which the effects belonging to the company are deposited. The company have in their possession large quantities of gun-powder, which is kept in different places, that the lightning may not destroy the whole stock at once; a great number of cannon are likewise laid up within the castle. There are a great many forts built in different parts of the country, several miles distant from Batavia, most probably erected to keep the natives in submission; and besides these there are a number of fortified houses, each mounting eight guns, which are so stationed as to command the canals and the roads on the borders. There are houses of this kind in many parts of the island of Java, and the other islands in its neighbourhood, of which the Dutch have obtained possession. The Chinese having rebelled against them in the year 1740, all their principal houses were demolished by the cannon of one of these fortified houses, which is in the town of Batavia, where, likewise, there are a few more of them.

The roads of this country are only banks between the ditches and canals, and the fortified houses being erected

erected among the morasses near these roads, nothing is easier than to destroy them, and consequently to prevent an enemy from bringing any heavy artillery near the town: if, indeed, an enemy be only hindered a short time in his approach, he is effectually ruined, for the climate will preclude the necessity of the use of weapons for his destruction. Before the Endeavour had been a week at Batavia, her crew began to feel the ill effects of the climate; half of them were rendered incapable of doing their duty before the expiration of a month. They were informed, that it was a very uncommon thing for 50 soldiers out of 100 brought from Europe, to be alive at the expiration of the first year, and that of the fifty who might happen to be living, not ten of those would be in sound health, and, probably, not less than half of them in the hospital.

In Batavia all the white inhabitants are soldiers, and, at the expiration of five years service, they are bound to hold themselves in readiness to go to war, if they should be wanted, and the younger inhabitants are frequently mustered; but as they are neither trained nor exercised after the expiration of the five years before-mentioned, the little they have learned is soon forgotten. The Indians, of whatever nation, who reside here, and have either been made free, or were born so, are called Mardykers; but neither these nor the Chinese are acquainted with fire-arms, yet as these people are said to possess great personal bravery, much might be expected from their expert use of their daggers, swords and lances. It would be a laborious task to attack Batavia by land, and it is not possible to make any attack at all by sea, for the shallowness of the water would hinder any vessels from advancing within cannon-shot of the walls; indeed there is barely depth of water for a ship's long-boat, except a narrow channel, called the river, which extends half a mile into the harbour, and is strongly bounded on each side with piers, the other end of it being directly under the fire of the castle, while its communication with the canals of the town is prevented by a boom of wood, which is every

ever
open

In
may
will
dang
but,
com
ber o
the H
Dut
one
is ere
at Ba
are en
the ri
the I
ships
repair
here t
laid u
Manil
been
were
before
A thin
is app
whose
thither
ed from
ness o
ropes
crimin
The
pearan
an env
countr
with t
cleared
wholly
jacent

every night shut precisely at six o'clock, and never opened till the following day.

In the harbour of Batavia, any number of ships may anchor, the ground is so excellent that the anchor will never quit its hold. This harbour is sometimes dangerous for boats, when the sea-breezes blow fresh; but, upon the whole, it is deemed the best and most commodious in all India. There is a considerable number of islands, which are situated round the outside of the harbour, and all these are in the possession of the Dutch, who destine them to different purposes. On one of them, which is called Purmerent, an hospital is erected, on account of the air being purer than it is at Batavia. In a second, the name of which is Kuyper, are erected numbers of warehouses, wherein are lodged the rice and some other commodities, which belong to the Dutch East-India Company; at this island those ships belonging to different nations, which are to be repaired at Ourust, unload their cargoes: and it was here that the stores of the Falmouth man of war were laid up, when she was condemned on her return from Manilla; her warrant officers, of whom mention has been made in the account of Captain Willis's voyage, were sent to Europe in Dutch ships about half a year before the Endeavour anchored in the road of Batavia. A third of these islands, the name of which is Edam, is appropriated to the reception of certain offenders, whose crimes are not deemed worthy of death, and thither they are transported from Holland, and detained from five to forty years, in proportion to the heinousness of the offence they have committed: making of ropes is the principal part of the employment of these criminals.

The environs of Batavia have a very pleasing appearance, and would in almost any other country, be an enviable situation. Gardens and houses occupy the country for several miles, but the former are so covered with trees, that the advantage of the land having been cleared of the wood that originally covered it, is almost wholly lost; while these gardens and the fields adjacent to them are surrounded by ditches which yield a
disagreeable

disagreeable smell; and the bogs and morasses in the adjacent fields are still more offensive. For the space of more than thirty miles beyond the town, the land is totally flat, except in two places, on one of which the governor's country-seat is built, and on the other they hold a large market; but neither of these places is higher than ten yards from the level of the plain. At near forty miles from the town the land rises into hills, and the air is purified in a great degree; to this distance the invalids are sent by their physicians when every other prospect of their recovery has failed, and the experiment succeeds in almost every instance, for the sick are restored to health; but they no sooner return to the town, than their former disorders revisit them. On these hills the most opulent of the inhabitants have country seats, to which they pay an annual visit. Those who reside constantly on the hills, enjoy an almost perpetual flow of health; and most of the vegetables of Europe grow as freely there as in their native ground: the strawberry in particular flourishes greatly, which is a sufficient proof of the coolness of the air.

In this country rice is very plentiful, and, in order to be brought to perfection, should lie under water more than half the time it is growing: but they have a sort which grows on the sides of the hills, which is unknown in the West-India islands; this sort is planted when the wet season commences, and the crop is gathered in, soon after the rains are over. The maize, which grows near Batavia, is gathered while young, and roasted in the ear. The land likewise produces carrots, celery, parsley, asparagus, onions, radishes, cabbages, lettuces, cucumbers, lentiles, kidney-beans, hyssop, sage, rue, Chinese white radishes, which when boiled, are not unlike a parsnip, common potatoes, sweet potatoes, wet and dry yams, millet, and the egg plant, the fruit of which, when broiled and eaten with salt and pepper, is most exquisite food. Amazing crops of sugar are produced here, and, while the quantity is beyond comparison greater, the care of cultivation is inconceivably less than in the West-India islands. White sugar is retailed at two-pence half-penny the pound; and arrack

is ma
and th
raise
port i
The
and o
ples g
chased
farthin
half-pe
very ex
or eigh
The fw
but ver
the W
agreeab
Endeav
as plen
score.
but no
plenty,
peace: o
It is faic
climate
different
amazing
are eater
are a no
fruit, th
markabl
common
to eighte
being go
but as t
salt, renc
nauseatin
melons a
in great a
nips, and
mirably a
many mo

is made of the molasses, with a small addition of rice, and the wine of the cocoa-nut. The inhabitants likewise raise a little indigo for their own use, but do not export it.

The fruits of this country are near forty in number, and of some of these there are of several kinds. Pine-apples grow in such abundance, that they may be purchased at the first hand, for the value of an English farthing; and we bought some very large ones for a half-penny a piece at the fruit-shops, and their taste is very excellent. They grow so luxuriantly, that seven or eight suckers have been seen adhering to one stem. The sweet oranges of Batavia are good of their kind, but very dear at particular times. The shaddocks of the West-Indies, called here pamplemooses, have an agreeable flavour. Lemons were very scarce when the Endeavour lay in the harbour, but limes were altogether as plentiful, and sold at little more than two-pence the score. There are many kinds of oranges and lemons, but none of them excellent. Of mangoes there are plenty, but their taste is far inferior to the melting peach of England, to which they have been compared. It is said that the heat, and extreme dampness of the climate does not agree with them, yet there are many different kinds of them. Of bananas, there are an amazing variety of sorts, some of which being boiled, are eaten as bread, while others are fried in batter, and are a nourishing food: but of the numerous sorts of fruit, three only are fit to be eaten: one indeed is remarkable, because it is filled with seeds, which are not common to the rest. Grapes are sold from one shilling to eighteen pence a pound, though they are far from being good. The tamarinds are cheap and plentiful; but as the method of preserving them, which is in salt, renders them a mere black lump, they are equally nauseating to the sight, and to the palate. The water melons are excellent of their kind, and are produced in great abundance. The pumpions are boiled as turnips, and eaten with salt and pepper. This fruit is admirably adapted to the use of voyagers, as it will keep many months without care, and makes an excellent

pye,

pye; when mixed with the juice of lemons and sugar. The papans of this country are superior to turnips, if the cores are extracted, after paring them when they are green. The guava has a strong smell, and a taste not less disagreeable: it is probable, that the guava of the West-Indies, which many writers have distinguished by their praises, has a very different flavour. The sweet sop is a fruit that has but little flavour: it abounds in large kernels, from which the pulp is sucked. The taste of the custard-apple very much resembles the dish from which its name is taken. The casheu apple produces a nut which is not unknown in England, but the fruit has such an astringent quality, that the Batavians seldom eat of it: the nut grows on the top of the apple. The cocoa-nut is plentiful in this country, and there are several kinds of this fruit, the best of which is very red between the shell and the skin. The jamboo is a fruit that has but little taste, but is of a cooling nature: it is considerably less than a common-sized apple, and those that have grown to their full size, are always the best; its shape is oval, and its colour a deep red. Of the Jambu-eyer, there are two kinds, the white and the red: they are shaped like a bell, and are something bigger than a cherry: they have no kind of taste but that of a watry acid. The Jambu-eyer mauw r, smells like a rose, and its taste is not unlike that of conserve of roses. The mangostan is of a dark red colour, and not larger than a small apple: to the bottom of this fruit adhere several little leaves of the blossoms, while on its tops are a number of triangles combined in a circle, it contains several kernels ranged in a circular form, within which is the pulp, a fruit of most exquisite taste; it is equally nutritious and agreeable, and is constantly given to persons who are troubled with inflammatory or putrid fevers. The sweet orange of this country is likewise given in the same disorders. The pomegranate of these parts differs in nothing from that generally known in England. The durion takes its name from the word dure, which, in the language of that country, means prickles, and the name is well adapted to the fruit, the shell of which is covered

verec
cont
are su
and o
finell
other
onion
the du
veral
garlick
dens o
lized p
covere
inform
known
the stre
in all r
The ran
that is
hot util
with fr
to yeld
sembles
very aft
apple, a
that of
yellow.
fried in
of it is r
shape no
the cana
are like t
most imp
pulp of
fruit is co
scarcely f
and of a
the street
which are
of the siz
few kerne
No. 9.

vered with sharp points, shaped like a sugar-loaf: its contents are nuts not much smaller than chefnuts, which are surrounded with a kind of juice resembling cream; and of this the inhabitants eat with great avidity: the smell of this fruit is more like that of onions, than any other European vegetable, and its taste is like that of onions, sugar, and cream intermixed: the inside of the durien, when ripe, is parted, lengthways, into several divisions. The nanca is a fruit that smells like garlick and apples mixed together: its size in the gardens of Batavia, is not bigger than that of a middling sized pompion, and its shape is nearly the same: it is covered with prickles of an angular form. We were informed that, at a place called Madura, it has been known to grow to such an enormous size as to require the strength of two men to carry it. The champada is in all respects like the nanca, only that it is not so large. The rambutan contains a fruit within which is a stone, that is perhaps the finest acid in the world: this fruit is not unlike a chefnut with its husk on; and it is covered with small prickles of a dark red colour, and so soft as to yield to the slightest impression. The gambolan resembles a damascen both in colour and size, and is of a very astringent nature. The boa bidarra tastes like an apple, and is likewise extremely astringent: its size is that of a gooseberry, its form round, and its colour yellow. The nam nam makes an excellent fritter, if fried in batter, but is not esteemed when raw: the rind of it is rough, its length is about three inches, and its shape not unlike that of a kidney. The catappa and the canare are two species of nuts, the kernels of which are like those of an almond, but so hard, that it is almost impossible to break them. The madja contains a pulp of a sharp taste, which is eaten with sugar: this fruit is covered with a hard shell. The funtal is a fruit scarcely fit to be eaten, being at once astringent, acid, and of a most unpleasant taste, yet it is publicly sold in the streets of Batavia: it contains a number of kernels, which are inclosed in a thick skin. The salack is nearly of the size of a small golden pippin, and contains a few kernels of a yellow colour, the taste of which is

not unlike that of a strawberry; but the covering of this fruit is very remarkable, as it consists of a number of scales, resembling those of a fish. The chefrema and the blimbing, are two sour fruits, exceedingly well adapted to make sour sauce, and pickles. The blimbing besse is another fruit of the same kind, but considerably sweeter.

Of the fruits not in season when Captain Cook was at Batavia, are the boa atap, and the kinship, which he saw preserved in sugar: and there are several other sorts which the Batavians are fond of, but they are never eaten by strangers: among those are the moringa, the guilindina, the killer, and the foccum; this last has the appearance of the bread-fruit which is produced in the islands of the South Seas, but it is not near so good, though the tree on which it grows is almost exactly like the bread-fruit tree. At Batavia vast quantities of fruit are eaten. There are two markets held weekly, at distant places, for the better accommodation of those who reside in different parts of the country. Here the fruit-sellers meet the gardeners, and purchase the goods at low rates. We are told it is not uncommon to see fifty or sixty loads of pine-apples carelessly thrown together at those markets. Flowers are strewn by the inhabitants of Batavia and Java, about their houses, and they are constantly burning aromatic woods and gums, which is supposed to be done by way of purifying the air from the stench that arises from the canals and ditches about the town.

In this country sweet scented flowers are plentiful, many species of which being entirely unknown, are worth remarking. The combang tonquin, and combang carenassi, are particularly fragrant flowers, which bear scarcely any resemblance to any of those flowers with which we are acquainted. They are very small, and seem to be of the dog's-bane species. The camunga which is more like a bunch of leaves than a flower, is of a singular smell, but very grateful. The bon tanjong is of a pale yellow cast, and has a very agreeable smell; it is about an inch and a half in circumference, and consists of pointed leaves, which give it

it the appearance of a star. The champacka smells somewhat like a jonquil, but is rather of a deeper yellow. A large tree upon the island produces this flower. There is also an extraordinary kind of flower called fundal malam, which signifies the intriguer of the night. This flower has no smell in the day-time, but as night comes on, it has a very fragrant scent, and is very much like the English tuberose. These flowers being made into nosegays of different shapes, or strung on a thread, are carried through the street for sale on evening. The gardens of the gentlemen produce several other sorts of flowers besides these which we have mentioned, but they are not offered to sale, because there is not a sufficient plenty of them. A plant, called the pandang, is produced here, the leaves of which being shred small, and mixed with other flowers, the natives of both sexes fill their cloaths and hair with this mixture, which they likewise sprinkle on their beds, and sleep under this heap of sweets, a thin piece of chintz being their only covering.

Formerly the only spice that grew on the island of Java was pepper. A considerable quantity is brought from thence by the Dutch, but very little of it is made use of in the country. The inhabitants prefer cayen pepper, and are fond of cloves and nutmeg, but these first are too dear to be commonly used. Near the island of Amboyna are some little isles, on which the cloves grow, and the Dutch were not easy till they all became their property. Scarcely any other nutmegs are found but on the island of Banda, which however furnishes enough for all the nations that have a demand for that commodity. There are but few nutmeg-trees on the coast of New Guinea. The island of Java, of which we have already spoken, produces horses, buffaloes, sheep, goats, and hogs. The sort of horses said to have been met with here when the country was first discovered, appeared to be nimble animals though small, being generally seldom above thirteen hands high. The horned cattle of this country are different from those of Europe. They are quite lean, but of a very fine grain. The Chinese and the natives of Java

eat the buffaloes flesh, which the Dutch constantly refuse, being impressed with a strange idea that it is feverish. The sheep are hairy like goats, and have long ears: they are mostly found to be tough and ill-tasted. There happening to be a few from the Cape of Good Hope at Batavia, some of them were purchased at the rate of one shilling a pound. The hogs, especially those of the Chinese stock, are very fine food, but so fat, that the lean is separately sold to the butchers, who are Chinese; the fat, they melt and sell to their countrymen to be eaten with their rice. Yet though these hogs are so fine, the Dutch prefer their own breed, and the consequence is that these latter are sold at extravagant rates.

As the Portuguese shoot the wild hogs and deer, they are sold at a moderate price, and are good eating. As to the goats of this country they are as indifferent as the sheep. Dogs and cats are found here in abundance, and there are numbers of wild horses at a considerable distance from Batavia, on the mountains. There are a few monkeys seen near the town; but there are many on the mountains and desert-places, where there are also tygers, and a few rhinoceroses.

Of fish an astonishing quantity is taken here, and all are fine food, except a few that are scarce; yet the inhabitants will not eat those that are found in abundance, but purchase those which are worse and scarcer, a circumstance that contributes to keep up the price of the latter. A prejudice likewise prevails among the Dutch which prevents them from eating any of the turtle caught in these parts, which are very good food, though not equal to those that are found in the West-Indies. Very large lizards are common at Batavia; some of them are said to be as thick as a man's thigh; and Mr. Banks shot one five feet long, which being dressed, proved very agreeable to the taste. We found snipes of two different sorts; and thrushes might have been purchased of the Portuguese, who were the only dealers in this sort of birds, and venders of wild fowl in the country. In the island are palm-wine, and arrack. Of the former are three sorts, the first of which is drunk in a few hours after it is drawn from the tree, and is moderately sweet;

sweet
tation
into t

In J
which
licly;
also ch
recom

If w
ferent
the inh
fifth pa
descent
settlers
states o
most all
of them
side at B
to serve
applies f
ing gran
fines th
a sort of
always a
this coun
and prof
any share

Notw
bound to
men from
peared t
males w
abounde
European
the men
that the
faster tha
cate cust
native J
manners
ness is co

sweet; the second and third sorts are made by fermentation, and by putting several sorts of herbs and roots into the liquor.

In Java, the religion of Mahomet is professed, for which reason the natives do not make use of wine publicly; but in private few of them will refuse it. They also chew opium, whose intoxicating qualities prove its recommendation to the natives of India.

If we exclude the Chinese, and the Indians of different nations, who inhabit Batavia and its environs, the inhabitants only amount to a small number, not a fifth part of whom are said to be Dutchmen, even by descent. The Portuguese out-number all the European settlers on the island. The troops in the service of the states of Holland, are composed of the natives of almost all the nations of Europe; but the greater part of them are Germans. When any person goes to reside at Batavia, he is obliged to enter first as a soldier, to serve their company for five years. Afterwards he applies for a leave of absence to the council, which being granted as a thing of course, he engages in any business that he thinks proper to chuse. There is however a sort of policy in this matter, since the Dutch have thus always a force ready to arm and join their troops in this country upon any emergency; all places of power and profit are held by the Dutch, and no foreigner has any share in the management of public affairs.

Notwithstanding all the men of other countries are bound to observe the rules above-mentioned, yet women from all parts may remain here unmolested. It appeared that the whole place could not furnish fifty females who were natives of Europe; yet the town abounded with white women, who were descended from Europeans, that had settled there at different times, all the men having paid the debt of nature; for so it is, that the climate of Batavia destroys the men much faster than the women. These women follow the delicate custom of chewing beetle, after the example of the native Javanese, whose dress they imitate, and whose manners they copy, in all respects. Mercantile business is conducted at Batavia with the slightest trouble imaginable.

imaginable. When a merchant receives an order for goods of any kind, he communicates the contents of it to the Chinese, who are the universal manufacturers. The Chinese agent delivers the effects on board the ship for which they are bespoke, and taking a receipt for them from the master of the vessel, he delivers it to the merchant, who pays the Chinese for the goods, and reserves a considerable profit, without the least trouble, risque, or anxiety. But when a merchant imports goods of any kind, he receives them himself, and lodges them in his own warehouses. It may be wondered that the Chinese do not ship the goods on their account, but from this they are restricted, and compelled to sell them to the merchants only. The inhabitants of Java distinguish the Portuguese by the name of Oranferanc, that is, Nazaren-men; but these use the general term of Caper, or Casir, respecting all who do not profess the religion of Mahomet, and in this they include the Portuguese. But the Portuguese of Batavia are so only in name; for they have neither any connection with, or knowledge of the kingdom of Portugal, and they have changed the religion of the church of Rome, for that of Luther; with the manners of the natives, they are wholly familiarised, and they commonly speak their language, though they are able to converse in a corrupt kind of Portuguese. They dress in the habit of the country, with a difference only in the manner of wearing their hair; their noses are more peaked and their skin of a deeper cast than that of the natives. Some of them are mechanics and artificers, others subsist by washing of linen, and the rest procure a maintenance by hunting.

The Indians of Batavia, and the country in its neighbourhood, are not native Javanese, but are either born on the several islands from whence the Dutch bring their slaves, or the offspring of such as have been born on those islands; and these having been made free either in their own persons or in the persons of their ancestors, enjoy all the privileges of freemen. They receive the general appellation of believers of the true faith. The various other Indian inhabitants of this country attach themselves

them
them
selves
both
tries.
quent
numb
tle an
substa
Indian
wome
dies m
tics, t
breath
ans an
live, i
respec
goods
The O
on boi
shrimp
and a
are fo
and w
pastry-
ments,
but, i
wine t
Mahon
When
the go
borrow
occasio
ance;
who ca
days, a
women
wife pr
ous to
from c
it dese

themselves each to the original customs of that in which themselves or their ancestors were born; keeping themselves apart from those of other nations, and practising both the virtues and vices peculiar to their own countries. The cultivation of gardens, and the consequent sale of flowers and fruit afford subsistence to great numbers of them: these are the people who raise the beetle and areca, which being mixed with lime, and a substance that is called gambir, the produce of the Indian continent, is chewed by persons of all ranks, women as well as men: indeed some of the politer ladies make an addition of cardamom, and other aromatics, to take off the disagreeable smell with which the breath would be otherwise tainted. Some of the Indians are very rich, keep a great number of slaves, and live, in all respects, according to the custom of their respective countries, while others are employed to carry goods by water: and others again subsist by fishing. The Oranlams, or believers of the faith, feed principally on boiled rice, mixed with a small quantity of dried shrimps and other fish, which are imported from China, and a little of the flesh of buffaloes and chickens; they are fond of fruit, of which they eat large quantities, and with the flour of the rice they make several sorts of pastry. They sometimes make very superb entertainments, after the fashion of their respective countries; but, in general, they are a very temperate people; of wine they drink very little, if any, as the religion of Mahomet, which they profess, forbids the use of it. When a marriage is to be solemnized among them, all the gold and silver ornaments that can be procured, are borrowed to deck out the young couple, who, on these occasions, never fail to make the most splendid appearance; sumptuous entertainments are given by those who can afford them, which continue twelve or fourteen days, and frequently more, during all which time the women take care that the bridegroom shall not visit his wife privately, though the wedding takes place previous to the festival. All these Indians, though they come from different countries, speak the Malay language if it deserves that name. On the island of Java there

are two or three different dialects, and there is a language peculiar to every small island; it is conjectured that the Malay tongue is a corruption of the language of Malacca. The hair of these people, which is black without a single exception, grows in great abundance; yet the women make use of oils, and other ingredients, to increase the quantity of it: they fasten it to the crown of the head with a bodkin, having first twisted it into a circle, round which they place an elegant wreath of flowers, so that the whole head-dress has a most beautiful appearance. It is the universal custom both with the men and women, to bathe in a river once every day, and sometimes oftener, which not only promotes health, but prevents that contraction of filth, that would be otherwise unavoidable in so hot a climate. The teeth of the Oranlams have some particulars in them well worthy of notice. With a kind of whetstone they rub the ends of them till they are quite flat and even; they then make a deep groove in the teeth of the upper jaw, in the centre between the bottom of each tooth and the gum, and horizontally with the latter; this groove is equal in depth to a quarter of the thickness of the teeth; yet none of these people have a rotten tooth, though according to the dentists of England and France, such a thing must be unavoidable, as the tooth is placed much deeper than what we call the enamel. The teeth of these people became very black by the chewing of beetle, yet a slight washing will take off this blackness, and they will then become perfectly white; but they are very seldom washed, as the depth of the colour is very far from being thought disagreeable. Most of our readers must have heard of the Mohawks; and these are the people who are so denominated, from a corruption of the word amock, which will be explained by the following story and observations. To run amock is to get drunk with opium, and then seizing some offensive weapon, to sally forth from the house, kill the person or persons supposed to have injured the Amock, and any other person that attempts to impede his passage, till he himself is taken prisoner or killed on the spot. While Captain Cook was at Batavia, a person,

perform
being
opium
men v
trary
but m
ken fu
which
quets,
prime
these
the fir
they fu
business
furnish
hold o
point o
which
but the
physicia
thinks
slicted i
rally th
A num
people,
that the
sickness
they off
tory fac
should l
imagin
when,
ment w
comma
spicuity
his wits
or figur
explana
or prief
night,
that Sa
No.

person, whose circumstances in life were independent, being jealous of his brother, intoxicated himself with opium, and then murdered his brother, and two other men who endeavoured to seize him. This man, contrary to the usual custom, did not leave his own house, but made his resistance from within it; yet he had taken such a quantity of the opium, that he was delirious, which appeared from his attempting to fire three muskets, neither of which had been loaded, nor even primed. Jealousy of the women is the usual reason of these poor creatures running amock [or a-muck] and the first object of their vengeance is the persons whom they suppose to have injured them. The officer, whose business it is to apprehend these unhappy wretches, is furnished with a long pair of tongs, in order to take hold of them without coming within the reach of the point of their weapon. Those who may be taken alive, which is not often the case, are generally wounded; but they are always broken upon the wheel; and if the physician, who is appointed to examine their wounds, thinks them likely to be mortal, the punishment is inflicted immediately, and the place of execution is generally the spot where the first murder was committed. A number of absurd customs prevailed among these people, and opinions no less ridiculous. They believe that the devil, whom they call Satan, is the author of sickness and adversity; therefore, when sick, or in distress, they offer meat, money, and other things, as propitiatory sacrifices. Should one among them be restless, or should he dream for two or three nights successively, he imagines the devil has laid his commands upon him, when, upon neglect to fulfil, he concludes his punishment will certainly be sickness or death, though such commands may not be revealed with sufficient perspicuity. To interpret his dream therefore, he strains his wits to the uttermost, and if, by taking it literally, or figuratively directly, or by contraries, he can put no explanation that satisfies him, he applies to the Cawin or priest, who unravels the mysterious suggestions of the night, by a comment, in which it generally appears, that Satan wants victuals or money. These are placed

on a little plate of cocoa-nut leaves, and hung upon the branch of a tree near the river, so that it seems not to be the opinion of these people, that in prowling the earth the devil "walketh through dry places." Mr. Banks once asked, whether they thought Satan spent the money, or eat the victuals; they said, that as to the money it was considered rather as a mulet upon an offender, than a gift to him who had enjoined it; and that therefore if it was devoted by the dreamer, it did not signify into whose hands it came, and they supposed it was generally the prize of some stranger who wandered that way; but respecting the meat, they were clearly of opinion, that, although the devil did not eat the gross parts, yet by bringing his mouth near it, he sucked out all its savour without changing its position, so that afterwards it was as insipid as water.

Another superstitious notion of this people is still more unaccountable. They imagine that women, when delivered of children, are at the same time delivered of a young crocodile; and that those animals being received carefully by the midwives, are immediately carried down to the river, and put into the water. The family in which such a birth is supposed to have happened, constantly puts victuals into the river for their amphibious relation, especially the twin, who as long as he lives, goes down to the river at stated times, to fulfil his fraternal duty; for an omission of which, according to the general opinion, he will be visited with sickness or death. We are at a loss to account for an opinion so extravagant and absurd, especially as it seems to be unconnected with any religious mystery, and how it should be pretended to happen by those who cannot be deceived into a belief of it by appearances, nor have any apparent interest in the fraud, is a problem still more difficult to solve. The strange belief of this absurdity, however, is certain, for which we had the concurrent testimony of every Indian who was questioned about it; and as to its origin, it seems to have taken its rise in the islands of Celebes and Boutou, at which places many of the inhabitants keep crocodiles in their families; but however that be, this opinion has spread
over

ov
and
cod
late
pro
from
this
A
a yo
gua
on l
for
give
in w
wha
quer
part
the l
upon
eat f
Bein
that
some
that
rings
tale
he th
a cro
with
Mr.
by a
seen
by se
crocc
long
gold.
The
rings
codil
sudan
five t

over all the eastern islands, even to Timor and Cream, and westward as far as Java and Sumatra. The crocodile twins are called sudaras, and we shall here relate one of the innumerable and incredible stories, in proof of their existence, as was confidently affirmed, from ocular demonstrations; yet for the credibility of this relation we will not vouch.

At Bencoolen was born and bred among the English a young female slave, who had learnt a little of the language. This girl told Mr. Banks that her father, when on his death bed, informed her that he had a crocodile for his sudara, and in a solemn manner charged her to give him meat when he should be dead, telling her in what part of the river he was to be found, and by what name he was to be called up. That in consequence of her father's injunctions, she repaired to that part of the river he had described, and standing upon the bank, called out Radja Pouti, "white king;" whereupon the crocodile came to her out of the water, and eat from her hand the provisions she had brought him. Being desired to describe this paternal uncle, she said, that he was not like other crocodiles, but much handsomer, that his body was spotted and his nose red; that he had bracelets of gold upon his feet, and earrings of the same metal in his ears. This ridiculous tale was heard by Mr. Banks patiently to the end, and he then dismissed the girl, without reminding her, that a crocodile with ears was as strange a monster as a dog with a cloven foot. Not long after this a servant whom Mr. Banks had hired at Batavia, a son of a Dutchman by a Javanese women, told his master, that he had seen a crocodile of the same kind, and it had been seen by several others both Dutchmen and Malays. This crocodile the servant said was very young, two feet long, and its feet were ornamented with bracelets of gold. I cannot credit these idle stories, said Mr. Banks. The other day a person asserted that crocodiles had earrings, and you know that cannot be true, because crocodiles have not ears. Ah, Sir, replied the man, these sudara oran are unlike other crocodiles; for they have five toes upon each foot, a large tongue that fills their

mouth, and ears likewise, though indeed they are very small. Who can set bounds to the ignorance of credulity and folly! However, in the girl's relation were some things in which she could not be deceived; and therefore must be guilty of wilful falsehood. Her father might command her to feed a crocodile, in consequence of his believing it to be his *sudara*; but its coming out of the river at her call, and eating the food from her hand, must have been a fable of her own invention, and being such, it was impossible that she could believe it to be true. However, the girl's story, and that of the man's, evinces, that they both believed the existence of crocodiles that were *sudaras* to men; and the fiction invented by the girl may be easily accounted for, if we do but consider, how earnestly every one desires to make others believe what he believes himself. The *Bougis*, *Macassars*, and *Boetons*, are so firmly persuaded that they have relations of the crocodile species, that they perform a periodical ceremony in remembrance of them. Large parties go out in a boat, furnished with great plenty of provisions, and all kinds of music. They then row backwards and forwards, in places of the river where crocodiles and allegators are most common, singing and weeping by turns, each invoking his kindred, till a crocodile appears, when the music instantly stops, and provisions, beetle, and tobacco, are thrown into the water. This civility is intended to recommend themselves to their relations at home; not without hopes, perhaps, that it will be accepted instead of more expensive offerings which may not be in their power to pay.

The Chinese stand in the next rank to the Indians, and are very numerous, but possess very little property. Many of them live within the walls, and are shopkeepers. We have already mentioned the fruit-sellers of *Passar Piffang*; but others have a rich stock of European and Chinese goods. However, the far greater part of these people live without the walls, in a quarter by themselves, which is called *Campang China*. Most part of them are carpenters, joiners, smiths, taylor, slipper-makers, dyers of cotton, and embroiderers. They maintain

maintain the character of industry, universally bestowed upon them; and many are scattered about the country, where they cultivate gardens, sow rice and sugar, or keep cattle and buffaloes, whose milk they bring every day to town. Yet notwithstanding their commendable spirit of industry, we must observe, there is nothing honest or dishonest, provided there is no danger of a halter, that the Chinese will not readily do for money; and though they work with much diligence, nor are sparing of their labour, yet no sooner have they laid down their tools, than they begin to game either at cards or dice, or at other diversions altogether unknown among Europeans. To these they apply with such eagerness, as scarcely to allow time for necessary refreshments of food and sleep. In manners they are always rather obsequious; and in dress they are remarkably neat and clean, in whatever rank of life they are placed. A description of their persons or dress is unnecessary, seeing the better kind of China paper common in England, exhibits an exact representation of both, though perhaps with some slight exaggerations. With respect to their eating, they are easily satisfied; but the few that are rich have many savory dishes. The food of the poor is rice, with a small proportion of flesh or fish; and they have the advantage of the Mahomedan Indians, on account of their religion; for the Chinese, being under no restraint, eat, besides pork, dogs, cats, frogs, lizards, serpents, and a great variety of sea animals, which the other inhabitants do not consider as food. They also eat many vegetables, which an European, except he was perishing with hunger, would not taste. They have a singular custom respecting the burying their dead; for they cannot be prevailed upon to open the ground a second time, where the body has been deposited. On this account, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, their burying-grounds contain many hundred acres; and the Dutch, pretending this to be a waste of land, will not sell any for this purpose, unless at an exorbitant price. The Chinese, however, contrive to raise the purchase money, and afford another instance of the folly and weakness of human nature, in transferring

transferring a regard for the living to the dead, and making that an object of solicitude and expence, which cannot receive the least benefit from either. Under the influence of this universal prejudice, they take an uncommon method to preserve the body entire, and to prevent the remains of it from mixing with the earth that surrounds it. To this end they enclose it in a large thick wooden coffin, hollowed out of solid timber like a canoe. This when covered and let down into the grave, is surrounded with a coat of mortar, called chinam, about eight or ten inches thick, which in a short time cements, and becomes as hard as stone. The relatives of the deceased attend the funeral ceremony, with a considerable number of female mourners, hired to weep. In Batavia, the law requires, that every man should be interred according to his rank, which is in no case to be dispensed with; so that if the deceased has not left sufficient to pay his debts, an officer takes an inventory of what was in his possession when he died, and out of the produce buries him in the manner prescribed, leaving only the overplus to his creditors.

The lowest class of people in this country are the slaves, by whom the Dutch, Portuguese, and Indians, whatever their rank or situation, are constantly attended. They are bought in Sumatra, Malacca, and almost all the Eastern Islands: but the natives of Java, very few of whom live in Batavia, are exempted from slavery, under the sanction of very severe penal laws, seldom we believe violated. These slaves are sold from ten to twenty pounds sterling each; but girls, if handsome, will fetch some times a hundred. Being of an indolent disposition, they will not do much work, and are therefore content with a little victuals, subsisting altogether upon boiled rice, and a small quantity of the cheapest fish. They are natives of different countries, on which account they differ from each other extremely both in person and temper. The Papua, as they are here called, or the African negroes are the worst, most of them thieves and all incorrigible; consequently they may be purchased for the least money. The next class to these are the Bougis and Macassars, both from the island of Celebes;

Celebes
not so
are o
rende
their
nor o
Malay
and o
island
a smal
a tend
sacrific
slaves
inflict
away l
ment,
been in
count,
this re
hands,
is stati
is to q
more
punish
ed by p
inflicte
appoint
the nur
fence;
which a
every st
the ma
about s
obliged
dubbele
week;
strong t
Respe
but litt
among
specific

Celebes; who, in the highest degree are lazy, though not so much addicted to theft as the negroes; yet they are of a cruel and vindictive spirit, whereby they are rendered exceeding dangerous, especially as to gratify their resentment, they make no scruple of any means, nor of sacrificing life itself. Besides these there are Malays and slaves of other denominations: but the best, and of course the dearest, are those brought from the island of Bali; and the most beautiful women from Nias; a small island on the coast of Sumatra; but being of a tender and delicate constitution, they quickly fall a sacrifice to the unwholesome air of Batavia. All these slaves are wholly in the power of their masters, who may inflict upon them any punishment that does not take away life; and should one die in consequence of punishment, though his death may be proved not to have been intended, yet the master is called to a severe account, and generally sentenced to suffer capitally. For this reason a master seldom corrects a slave with his own hands, but by an officer called a *marineu*, one of whom is stationed in every district. The duty of this officer is to quell riots, and take offenders into custody; but more particularly to apprehend runaway slaves, and punish them for such crimes as the master has supported by proper evidence; the punishment, however, is not inflicted by the *marineu* in person, but by slaves who are appointed to the business. The punishment is stripes, the number being proportioned to the nature of the offence; and the instruments are rods made of rattans, which are split into tender twigs for the purpose, and every stroke draws blood. A common punishment costs the master a rixdollar, and a severe one a ducatoon, about six shillings and eight-pence. The master is also obliged to allow a slave, as an encouragement, three *dubbelcheys*, equal to about seven-pence half-penny a week; this is also done to prevent his indulging his strong temptations to steal.

Respecting the government of this place we can say but little. We observed a remarkable subordination among the people. Every house-keeper has a certain specific rank, according to the length of time he has served

served the company. The different ranks thus acquired are distinguished by the ornaments of the coaches, and the dresses of the coachmen: some ride in plain coaches, some are allowed to paint them with different devices, and some to gild them. The coachmen also are obliged to appear in clothes quite plain, or ornamented in various manners and degrees.

The chief officer in this place has the title of governor-general of the Indies, to whom the Dutch governors of all other settlements are subordinate; and they are obliged to repair to Batavia in order to have their accounts passed by him. Should they appear to have been criminal, or even negligent, he detains them during pleasure; sometimes three years; for they cannot without his permission quit the place. The members of the council, called by the natives Edele Heeren, and by the English, Idoleers, are next in rank to the governor-general. These assume so much state, that whoever meets them in a carriage, are expected to rise up and bow, and after this compliment, they drive to one side of the road and stop, till the members of the council are past: their wives and children expect also the same homage, and it is commonly paid them by the inhabitants. Some English Captains have thought this a slavish mark of respect, derogatory to their dignity as servants of his Britannic majesty, and for this reason have refused to pay it; nevertheless, when in a hired coach, nothing but a menace of immediate death could prevent the coachman from honouring the Dutch grandee, at the expence of their mortification.

With respect to the distribution of justice, it is administered in Batavia by the lawyers, who have peculiar ranks of distinction among themselves. Their decisions in criminal cases seem to be severe with respect to the natives, but lenient in a partial degree to their own people. A christian is always indulged with an opportunity of escaping before he is brought to trial, whatever may be his offence, and when convicted, he is seldom punished with death. On the contrary, the poor Indians are hanged, broken upon the wheel, and even impaled alive. As to the Malays and Chinese, they

they h
and li
to an
upon
among
hair is
and to
notice
of a h
find th
ment i

At
lued at
eighty
schellin
and do
Spanish
told th
pence,
guinea
shilling
shilling
much
There
denom
former
valued
than se
stivers,
tency.
which
ling.

On
mornin
stood c
contrar
for the
between
On Sun
Babi ill
over to
No.

they have judicial officers of their own, named captains and lieutenants, who determine in civil cases, subject to an appeal to the Dutch tribunal. The taxes laid upon these people by the company are very considerable, among which, that exacted for liberty to wear their hair is not the least. The time of payment is monthly, and to save the charge and trouble of collecting them, notice is given of this by hoisting a flag upon the top of a house in the middle of the town, and the Chinese find that it is their interest to repair thither when a payment is due without delay.

At Batavia the current money consists of ducates, valued at one hundred and thirty-two stivers; ducatoons, eighty stivers: imperial rix-dollars, sixty; rupees, thirty; schellings, six; double cheys, two stivers and a half; and doits one fourth of a stiver. During our stay here Spanish dollars were at five and five-pence; and we were told they were never lower than five shillings and four-pence, even at the company's warehouse. For English guineas the exchange upon an average was nineteen shillings; for though the Chinese would give twenty shillings for some of the brightest, those that were much worn were valued at only seventeen shillings. There are two sorts of coin current here of the same denomination; these are milled and unmilled; the former of which is of most value. A milled ducatoon is valued at eighty stivers; and an unmilled one at no more than seventy-two. A rix-dollar is equal to forty-eight stivers, about four shillings and six-pence English currency. All accounts are kept in rix-dollars and stivers, which here, at least, are nominal, like our pound sterling.

On Thursday, the 27th of December, early in the morning, we weighed, left the harbour of Batavia, and stood out to sea. On the 29th, after much delay by contrary winds, we weathered Pulo Pare, and stood for the main. On the same day passed a small island between Batavia and Bantam, called Maneater's island. On Sunday the 30th, we weathered Wapping and Pulo Babi islands, and the next day, being the 31st, we stood over to the Sumatra shore.

On the morning of this new year's day, being Tuesday, January the 1st, we steered for the Java shore, and continued our course, as the wind permitted us, till three o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th, when we cast anchor on the south-east side of Prince's Island, in eighteen fathom water, in order to recruit our stores, and procure refreshments for the sick, many of whom were much worse than they were at our departure from Batavia. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solandar, accompanied by the captain and other gentlemen, went ashore. We met upon the beach some Indians, by whom we were conducted to one, who, they said, was their king. Having exchanged a few compliments with this person, we entered upon business, but in settling the price of turtle could not agree. Upon this we took leave, the Indians dispersed; and we proceeded along shore in search of a watering-place. We happily succeeded in finding a very convenient one, and had no reason to believe, with care in filling, it would prove agreeable to our wishes. On our return, some Indians, who remained with a canoe upon the beach, sold us three turtle, but we were obliged to promise, that we would not tell the king. On Sunday the 6th, we renewed with better success our traffic for turtle. About noon the Indians lowered their demands slowly, insomuch, that before the evening they accepted our stipulated price, and we had turtle in plenty. In the mean time, the three we had purchased were served to the ship's company, who, till yesterday, had not fed on salt provisions from the time of our arrival at Savu, which was now near three months. Mr. Banks, in the evening, paid a visit to the king, by whom he was received very graciously at his palace, in the middle of a rice field, notwithstanding his majesty was busily employed in dressing his own supper. The day following, Monday the 7th, the Indians resorted to the trading place with fowls, fish, monkeys, small deer, and some vegetables; but no turtle appeared till next day, Tuesday the 8th, after which some were brought to market every day, while we staid,

but

but the
we bou
Frida
gence fr
Indians
to the w
same.
compan
ing his
told such
plants, v
a place v
with an
few enq
persuade
perceiving
and went
veral tim
out succe
of the ho
conducted
Samadan
and is di
called th
they had
veral Indi
and one o
new tow
ing made
along-side
vent their
not witho
the new t
a cordial
king and
open at
their resic
crops again
necessary
curiosity

but the whole quantity together was not equal to that we bought the day after our arrival.

Friday the 11th, Mr. Banks having received intelligence from a servant he had hired at Batavia, that the Indians of this island had a town situated near the shore, to the westward, he determined to go in search of the same. With this view he set out in the morning, accompanied by the second lieutenant; and apprehending his visit might not be agreeable to the natives, he told such of them as he met, that he was in search of plants, which was indeed also true. Having come to a place where there were three or four houses, they met with an old man, of whom they ventured to make a few enquiries concerning the town. He would have persuaded them, that it was at a great distance; but perceiving they proceeded forward, he joined company, and went on with them. The old man attempted several times to lead them out of the way, though without success; but when at length they came within sight of the houses, he entered cordially into their party, and conducted them into the town, the name of which is Samadang. It consists of about four hundred houses, and is divided by a brackish river into two parts, one called the old, and the other the new town. When they had entered the former, they were accosted by several Indians whom they had seen at the trading place, and one of them undertook to carry them over to the new town, at two-pence per head. The bargain being made, they embarked in two small canoes, placed along-side of each other, and lashed together, to prevent their over-setting. They landed safely, though not without some difficulty; and when they came to the new town, the people shewed them every mark of a cordial friendship, shewing them the houses of their king and principal people. Few of the houses were open at this time, the inhabitants having taken up their residence in the rice-grounds, to defend their crops against the birds and monkeys, who without this necessary precaution would destroy them. When their curiosity was satisfied, they hired a large sailing boat

for two rupees, value four shillings, which conveyed them to the bark time enough to dine upon one of the small deer, weighing only forty pounds, which proved to be exceeding good and savory food. In the evening we again went on shore, to see how our people went on, who were employed in wooding and watering; when we were told, that an axe had been stolen. Application was immediately made to the king, who, after some altercation, promised, that the axe should be restored in the morning; and it was accordingly brought to us by a man, who pretended, that the thief, afraid of a discovery, had left it at his house in the night.

On Sunday, the 13th, having nearly compleated our wood and water, Mr. Banks took leave of his majesty, to whom he had made several trifling presents, and at parting gave him two quires of paper, which he graciously accepted. During their conversation, the king enquired, why the English did not touch at the island as they had used to do. Mr. Banks replied, that the reason was, he supposed, because they found a deficiency of turtle, of which there not being enough to supply one ship, many could not be expected; and to supply this defect, Mr. Banks advised his majesty to breed cattle, buffaloes, and sheep; but he did not seem disposed to adopt this prudent measure.

On Monday, the 14th, we had got on board a good stock of fresh provisions, consisting of turtle, fowl, fish, two species of deer, one about the size of a sheep, the other not bigger than a rabbit; also cocoa-nuts, plantains, limes, and other vegetables. The deer, however, served only for present use, for we could seldom keep one of them alive more than twenty-four hours.

The trade on our parts, was carried on chiefly with Spanish dollars, the natives seeming not to set value upon any thing else; so that our people who had a general permission to trade, parted with old shirts and other articles, which they were obliged to substitute for money to great disadvantage. On Tuesday, the 15th, in the morning, we weighed, with a light breeze at

N. E.

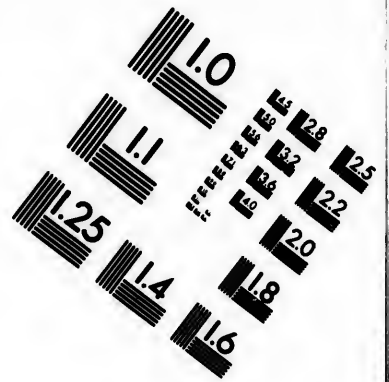
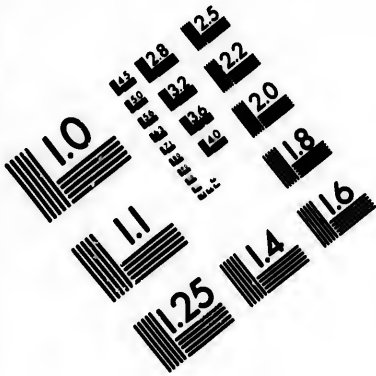
N.
fro
S. a
I
day
tha
isla
Sun
beer
upo
plac
mer
belo
but
bad,
a few
whic
visio
must
more
have
the l
exce
Th
arriv
turtle
with
green
thing
your
long
The f
for a
The
larger
rupee
and w
they
for a d
and t

N. E. and stood out to sea. We took our departure from Java Head, which is in latitude 6 deg. 49 min. S. and in longitude 253 deg. 12 min. West.

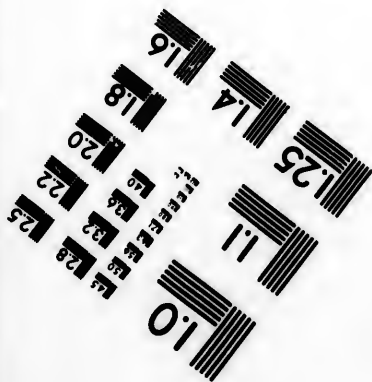
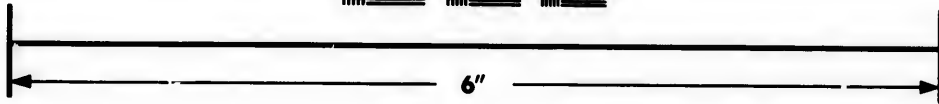
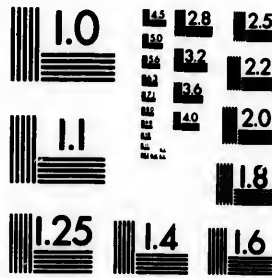
Prince's Island, where we were stationed about ten days, in the Malay language, called Pulo Selan, and in that of the inhabitants, Pulo Paneitan, is a small island, situated in the western mouth of the streight of Sunda. It is woody, a very small part of it having been cleared. We could perceive no remarkable hill upon it; but a small eminence, just over the landing place, has been named, by the English, the Pike. Formerly this place was much frequented by India ships belonging to various nations, especially from England; but of late they have forsaken it, because the water is bad, and touch either at North Island, or at New Bay, a few leagues distant from Prince's Island, at neither of which places any considerable quantity of other provisions can be procured; and, upon the whole, we must give it as our opinion, that Prince's Island is more eligible than either of them; for though, as we have already observed, the water is brackish, if filled at the lower part of the brook, yet higher up we found it excellent.

The first, second, and perhaps the third ship, that arrives here in the season, may be well supplied with turtle; but such as come afterwards must be content with small ones. What we purchased were of the green kind, and cost us, at an average, about three farthings a pound. They were neither fat nor well flavoured, which circumstance we imputed to their being long kept in pens of brackish water, without food. The fowls are large, and we bought a dozen of them for a Spanish dollar, which is about five pence a piece. The small deer cost us two-pence a piece, and the larger, two only of which were brought to market, a rupee. The natives sell many kinds of fish by hand, and we found them tolerably cheap. Cocoa-nuts, if they were picked, we bought at the rate of a hundred for a dollar; and if taken promiscuously, one hundred and thirty. Plantains we found in abundance; also pine-





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.5 1.8
2.0 2.2
2.5 2.8
3.2 3.6
4.0 4.5

10
5

pine-apples, water-melons; jaccas, and pompions, besides rice, yams, and several other vegetables, all which we purchased at reasonable rates.

In this island the inhabitants are Javanese, and their Raja is subject to the Sultan of Bantam. In their manners and customs they resemble the Indians about Batavia; but they are more jealous of their women, for all the time we were there, we saw not any of them, except one by chance in the woods, as she was running away to hide herself. They profess the Mahomedan religion; but not a mosque did we discover in the whole island. While we were among them, they kept the fast called by the Turks Ramadan, with extreme rigour, not one of them touching a morsel of victuals, nor would they chew their beetle till sun-set. Their food is likewise the same with that of the Batavian Indians; except the addition of the nuts of the palm, by eating of which, upon the coast of New Holland, some of our people were made sick, and some of our hogs poisoned. We enquired by what means these nuts were deprived of their noxious deleterious quality, and were informed, that they first cut them into thin slices, and dried them in the sun, then steeped them in fresh water for three months, and afterwards, pressing out the water, dried them a second time in the sun; but after all, we found they are eaten only in times of scarcity, when they mix them with their rice to make it go farther.

The houses of these people are built upon piles, or pillars, and elevated about four or five feet above the ground. Upon these is laid a floor of bamboo canes, at such a distance from each other, as to leave a free passage for the air from below. The walls also are of bamboo, interwoven hurdlewise, with small sticks, and fastened perpendicularly to the beams which form the frame of the building; it has a sloping roof, so well thatched with palm-leaves, that neither the sun, nor rain can find entrance. The ground plot, upon which the building is erected, is an oblong square. On the side is the door, and in the space between that and the other end of the house, in the center, towards the left hand,

han
enc
ope
the
into
the
left
oppo
room
and
renc
these
the r
next
instea
enclo
house
fested
from
of fou
The
sition
Indian
ask tw
moditi
to mark
siderabl
bought
and wh
ney tha
proport
Sometin
giving u
Spanish
lings, fo
The n
their ow
Their ow
of the mo
migrated

hand, is a window. A partition runs out from each end of the house, which continues so far as to leave an opening opposite the door. Each end of the house, therefore, to the right and left of the door, is divided into two apartments, all open towards the passage from the door to the wall on the opposite side. In that on the left hand, next to the door, the children sleep; that opposite to it is for the use of strangers; in the inner room, on the left hand, the master and his wife sleep; and that opposite to it is the kitchen. The only difference between the poor and the rich, with respect to these houses, consists in their size: but we must except the royal palace, and the house of one Gundang, the next man in riches and influence to the king; for those instead of being wattled with sticks and bamboos, are enclosed with boards. These people have occasional houses in the rice fields, at the season when they are infested with the birds and monkeys. They differ only from their town houses, by being raised ten feet instead of four from the ground.

The inhabitants of this island are of a good disposition; and dealt with us very honestly; only like other Indians, and the retailers of fish in London, they would ask twice, and sometimes thrice as much for their commodities as they would take. As what they brought to market belonged, in different proportions, to a considerable number of the natives, they put all that was bought of one kind, as cocoas or plantains together, and when we had purchased a lot, they divided the money that was paid for it among the proprietors, in a proportion corresponding with their contributions. Sometimes, indeed, they would change our money, giving us 240 doits, amounting to five shillings, for a Spanish dollar, and ninety-six, amounting to two shillings, for a Bengal rupee.

The natives of Prince's Island have a language of their own, yet they all speak the Malay language. Their own tongue they call Catta Gunung, the language of the mountains. They say, that their tribe originally migrated from the mountains of Java to New Bay, and then

then to their present station, being driven from their first settlement by tygers, which they found too numerous to subdue. Several languages are spoken by the native Javanese, in different parts of their island; but the language of these people is different from that spoken at Samarang, though distant only one day's journey from the residence of the Emperor of Java. The following list contains several corresponding words in the languages of Prince's Island, Java, and Malacca.

PRINCE'S ISLAND.	ENGLISH.	JAVANESE.	MALAY.
Jalma,	- <i>A man.</i>	Oong Lanang,	Oran Lacki Laki.
Becang,	- <i>A woman.</i>	Oong Wadong,	Parampuan.
Oroculatacke,	<i>A child.</i>	Lari,	Anack.
Holo,	- <i>The head.</i>	Undafs,	Capalla.
Erung,	- <i>The nose.</i>	Erung,	Edung.
Mata,	- <i>The eyes.</i>	Moto,	Mata.
Chole,	- <i>The ears.</i>	Cuping,	Cuping.
Cutock,	- <i>The teeth.</i>	Untu,	Ghigi.
Beatung,	- <i>The belly.</i>	Wuttong,	Prot.
Serit,	- <i>The backside.</i>	Celit,	Pantat.
Pimping,	- <i>The thigh.</i>	Poopoo,	Paba.
Hulloctoor,	<i>The knee.</i>	Duncul,	Lontour.
Metis,	- <i>The legs.</i>	Sickil,	Kauki.
Cucu,	- <i>A nail.</i>	Cucu,	Cucu.
Langan,	- <i>A hand.</i>	Tangan,	Tangan.
Ramo Langan,	<i>A finger.</i>	Jari,	Jaring.

In this specimen the different parts of the body are chosen, because they are easily obtained from those whose language is unknown; and it is worthy of observation, that the Malay, the Javanese, and the language in Prince's Island, have words, which if not exactly similar to those used in the South-Sea Islands, are manifestly derived from the same source, as will appear from the following list.

SOUTH-

SOUTH
SEA
Mata,
Maa,
Einu,
Matte,
Outou
Euwa,
Owhe,

Eu,
Mannu
Eyea,
Tapao,
Tooura
Eufwhe
Etannon
Enamm
Hearu,
Taro,
Uta,

But t
able in
prove th
with the
and who
up the
will app
are in a
must ob
names of
these, w
the fact
list of w
Banks.

No. 10

SOUTH-SEA.	MALAY.	JAVANESE.	PRINCE'S ISLAND.	ENGLISH.
Mata,	Mata,	Moto,	Mata,	<i>An eye.</i>
Maa,	Macan	Mangan,	—	<i>The ear.</i>
Einu,	Menum,	Gnumbe,	—	<i>To drink.</i>
Matte,	Matte,	Matte,	—	<i>To kill.</i>
Outou,	Coutou,	—	—	<i>A louse.</i>
Euwa,	Udian,	Udan,	—	<i>Rain.</i>
Owhe,	—	—	Awe,	<i>Bamboo-cane.</i>
Eu,	Soufou,	Soufou,	—	<i>A beast.</i>
Mannu,	—	Manny,	Mannuck,	<i>A bird.</i>
Eyca,	Ican,	Iwa,	—	<i>A fish.</i>
Tapao,	—	Tapaan,	—	<i>The foot.</i>
Tooura,	Udang,	Urang,	—	<i>A lobster.</i>
Eufwhe,	Ubi,	Urve,	—	<i>Yams.</i>
Etannou,	Tannam,	Tandour,	—	<i>To bury.</i>
Enammou,	Gnamuck,	—	—	<i>A muschito.</i>
Hearu,	Garru,	Garu,	—	<i>To scratch.</i>
Taro,	Tallas,	Talus,	—	<i>Cocoa-roots.</i>
Uta,	Utan,	—	—	<i>In-land.</i>

But the similitude in these languages is more remarkable in words expressing number, which seems to prove that they have one common root. Mr. Banks, with the assistance of a negro slave, born at Madagascar, and who was on board an English ship at Batavia, drew up the following comparative table, from whence it will appear, that the names of numbers, in particular, are in a manner common to all these countries: but we must observe, that in the island of Madagascar, the names of numbers, in some instances, are similar to all these, which is a difficulty not easy to be solved; yet the fact will appear unquestionable from the following list of words, drawn up, as we have observed, by Mr. Banks.

SOUTH-SEA ISLANDS.	MALAY.	JAVANESE.	PRINCE'S ISLE.	MADAGASCAR.	ENGLISH.
Tahie,	Satou,	Sigi,	Hegie,	Iffe,	<i>One.</i>
Rua,	Dua,	Lorou,	Dua,	Rua,	<i>Two.</i>
Torou,	Tiga,	Tullu,	Tollu,	Tellou,	<i>Three.</i>
Haa,	Ampat,	Pappat,	Opat,	Effats,	<i>Four.</i>
Reina,	Lima,	Limio,	Limah,	Limi,	<i>Five.</i>
Whenev,	Annam,	Nunnam,	Gunnap,	Ene,	<i>Six.</i>
Hetu,	Tudju,	Petu,	Tudju,	Titou,	<i>Seven.</i>
Waru,	Delapau,	Wolo,	Delapan,	Walou,	<i>Eight.</i>
Iva,	Sembilan,	Songo,	Salapan,	Sivi,	<i>Nine.</i>
Ahoura,	Sapoulou,	Sapoulou,	Sapoulou,	Tourou,	<i>Ten.</i>

From the similitude between the Eastern Tongue and that of the South-Sea, many conjectures may be formed concerning the peopling of those countries, which cannot easily be referred to Madagascar. The people of Java and Madagascar appear to be a different race: the Javaneſe has long hair, and his complexion is of an olive caſt; whereas a native of Madagascar is black, and his hair woolly; yet this will not conclude againſt the opinion of their having had common anceſtors: and, poſſibly, the learning of ancient Egypt might run in two courſes, one through Africa, and the other through Aſia, diſſeminating the ſame words in each, eſpecially terms of number, which might thus become part of the language of people who never had any communications with each other.

In the month of February we held on our courſe, and made the beſt of our way for the Cape of Good Hope; but now the fatal ſeeds of diſeaſe, our people had imbibed at Batavia, began to appear, with the moſt alarming ſymptoms, in dyſenteries and ſlow fevers. Our ſituation in a ſhort time was truly deplorable, and the ſhip was little better than an hoſpital, in which thoſe who did duty, were too few to attend thoſe who were confined to their hammocks. Many of theſe were in the laſt ſtage of the deſtructive diſorder; and almoſt every

every
Banks
time we
we bur
retinue.
Green t
his mat
fail-mak
the mar
and nin
the fever
havock
though
might b
spreadin
Iſland w
tween de
Friday
we brou
Good Ho
governor
ment th
hired for
lodged a
Our run
obſervati
but ſome
We had
general S
advance
the W. ha
by the lo
weſterly
which bl
there. C
poisonou
the flux,
any medi
ſidered h
into the

every night we committed a body to the sea. Mr. Banks was among the number of the sick, and for some time we despaired of his life. In the course of six weeks we buried Mr. Spring, a gentleman of Mr. Banks's retinue, Mr. Parkinson, his natural history painter, Mr. Green the astronomer, the boatswain, the carpenter, and his mate. Mr. Monkhouse the midshipman, our jolly sail-maker, and his assistant, the cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenter's crew, a midshipman, and nine sailors; in all three and twenty persons, besides the seven that we had buried at Batavia. Such was the havock disease made among our ship's company, though we omitted no means, which we conceived might be a remedy; and to prevent the infection from spreading, we purified the water taken in at Prince's Island with lime, and washed all parts of the bark between decks with vinegar.

Friday the 15th of March, about ten o'clock P. M. we brought the ship to an anchor off the Cape of Good Hope. Capt. Cook repaired immediately to the governor, who cheerfully promised him every refreshment the country afforded; on which a house was hired for the sick, and it was agreed they should be lodged and boarded for two shillings each man per day. Our run from Java Head to the Cape afforded few observations that can be of use to future navigators, but some occurrences we must not pass over in silence. We had left Java Head eleven days before we got the general S. E. trade-wind, during which time, we did not advance above 5 deg. to the southward, and 3 deg. to the W. having an unwholesome air, occasioned probably by the load of vapours, which the eastern wind, and westerly monsoons, bring into these latitudes, both of which blew in these seas, at the time we happened to be there. Our diseases were certainly aggravated by those poisonous vapours, and unwholesome air, particularly the flux, which was not in the least degree checked by any medicine; so that whoever was seized with it, considered himself as a dead man; but we no sooner got into the trade wind, than we felt its salutary effects.

It is true, we buried several of our crew afterwards, but they were such as had been taken on board in a state so low and feeble, that there were scarcely a possibility of their recovery. We suspected at first, that this dreadful disorder might have been generated by the water that we took on board at Prince's Island, or by the turtle we purchased there; but this suspicion we found to be groundless; because all the ships that came from Batavia at the same season, suffered in like manner, and some even more severely, though none of them touched at Prince's Island in their way.

Not many days after our departure from Java we were attended by the boobies for several nights successively, and as these birds are known to roost every night on shore, we concluded land was not far distant; perhaps it might be the island of Selam, which in different charts is very differently laid down both in name and situation. After these birds had left us, we were visited by no more, till we got nearly a-breast of Madagascar, where in latitude 27 deg. three quarters S. we saw an albatross, the number of which increased every day, with others of different kinds, particularly one about the size of a duck, of a very dark brown colour, with a yellowish bill; and they became more numerous as we approached the shore. When we got into soundings, we were visited by gannets, which we continued to see as long as we were upon the bank that stretches off Anguillas to the distance of forty leagues, and extends along shore to the eastward, from Cape False, according to some charts, one hundred and sixty leagues. The real extent of this bank is not exactly known; it is however useful as a direction to shipping when to haul in, in order to make the land.

At the time the Endeavour lay at the Cape of Good Hope, the Houghton Indiaman sailed for England. She had buried near forty of her crew, and when she left the Cape, had many of her hands in a helpless condition, occasioned by the scurvy. Other ships likewise experienced a proportionable loss by sickness; so that

our

our f
we h
tinu
reco
sary
finis
were
havin
got r
Th
and a
given
a par
to ou
some
have
other
Ca
and
wholl
fertil
habit
are al
mind
cultiv
forma
these
a gre
about
that i
from
Spirit
and pr
line, i
miles
in oth
named
author
given

our sufferings were comparatively light, considering that we had been absent near three times as long. We continued at the cape till the 13th of April, in order to recover the sick, procure stores, and to do some necessary work upon the ship and rigging. When this was finished we got all the sick on board, several of whom were still in a dangerous state; and on Sunday the 14th, having taken leave of the governor, we unmoored, and got ready to sail.

The history of Caffraria is well known in Europe, and a description of the Cape of Good Hope has been given by most of our circumnavigators; yet we think a particular account of this country will be acceptable to our numerous subscribers; and they will meet with some particulars which fell under our observation, that have either been wholly omitted or misrepresented in other narratives.

Caffraria, or Caffreria is well situated for navigation and commerce, both which advantages are almost wholly neglected. The interior part of the country is fertile, but wants the benefit of cultivation. The inhabitants are naturally sagacious, but their faculties are absorbed in indolence; thus both the lands and minds of the people require improvement; but lest cultivation in the first should introduce luxury, and information in the last produce disobedience, neither of these are encouraged by the politic Dutch, who possess a great part of the sea coast. This country extends about seven hundred and eighty miles from N. to S. that is, from Cape Negro to the Cape of Good Hope, from hence turning N. E. to the mouth of the river Spiritu Santo, it runs about six hundred and sixty miles; and proceeding up the country almost to the equinoxial line, it is about one thousand seven hundred and forty miles farther. In some places it is nine hundred, and in others not above six hundred broad. Caffraria is so named from the Caffres, its inhabitants; though some authors affirm, that this name is a term of reproach given by the Arabs to all who have but confused notions of

of the deity, and which the Portuguese have by mistake applied to these people.

The Cape of Good Hope, which is the most southern part of Africa, was first discovered, A. D. 1493, by Bartholomew Diaz, admiral of a Portuguese fleet, who on account of the boisterous weather he met with when near it, distinguished it by the name of Cabodos totos Tormentos, or the Cape of all Plagues; since which, no place in the universe has been more spoken of, though little of the country, except the coast, has been penetrated or known. The reason why it has so much attracted the attention of mariners of all nations, is, their being under a necessity of frequently calling there for water or other refreshments, and also of doubling it, in their voyages to the East-Indies. But John king of Portugal, not liking the name which his admiral had bestowed upon this large promontory, changed it to that of Cabode Bona Esperanca, the "Cape of Good Hope," which appellation it has ever since retained.

Neither Diaz, nor his successor Vasco de Gama, though they saw the Cape, thought proper to land: but in 1498 the Portuguese admiral, Rio del Infanta, was the first who ventured ashore; and from his report, Emanuel, king of Portugal, on account of the eligibility of the situation, determined to establish a colony there; but the Portuguese, who are naturally pusillanimous, having taken it into their heads, that the inhabitants of the Cape were cannibals, were too much afraid of being devoured, to obey their sovereign in making the settlement he intended: however, some time after, another body of those timid adventurers made good their landing, under the conduct of Francis d'Almeyda, a viceroy of Brasil, when the Portuguese were shamefully defeated by the scarce armed, and unwarlike natives. The viceroy and fifty of his men being killed in the engagement, the remainder retired with precipitation to their ships. The Portuguese were much disappointed and chagrined at the idea of such martial superiority in a people by them deemed at once savage and despicable.

ble.
mag
they
ent.
they
pani
this
with
by th
by th
viou
hold
of tr
off th
of the
were
aband
sent.
Ab
the c
and b
of the
since t
and b
Ricbee
ing th
laying
its adv
jector
with f
with th
sand g
venty-
Dutch
Van Ri
mediat
garden
duction
as com
successf

ble. They determined to be revenged; but not having magnanimity enough to shew a becoming repentment, they contrived a most inhuman and cowardly expedient. About two years after, touching at the cape, they landed with all the appearance of amity, accompanied with strong professions of friendship, and under this mask brought with them a large cannon loaded with grape shot. The unsuspecting natives, overjoyed by the gift of so great a treasure, began to drag it away by the means of two long ropes, which had been previously fastened to the muzzle. Great numbers laid hold of the ropes, and many others went before by way of triumph, when the treacherous Portuguese firing off the cannon, a prodigious slaughter ensued, as most of the people stood within the range of the shot. Many were killed, several wounded; and the few who escaped, abandoned with the utmost precipitation the fatal present.

About the year 1600, the Dutch began to touch at the cape, in their way to and from the East-Indies; and becoming annually more sensible of the importance of the place, they effected a settlement in 1650, which since that time hath risen to great power and opulence, and been of essential service to that nation. M. Van Ricbeeck, a surgeon, in his return from India, observing the conveniency of the place for a settlement, and laying before the Dutch East-India Company a plan of its advantages, the scheme was approved, and the projector appointed governor. This adventurer sailing with four ships to the cape, entered into a negotiation with the people, who, in consideration of fifty thousand guilders, or four thousand three hundred and seventy-five pounds sterling, agreed to yield up to the Dutch a considerable tract of country round the cape. Van Ricbeeck, in order to secure his new purchase, immediately erected a strong square fort; laid out a large garden, and planted it with a great variety of the productions from Europe, that he might render the place as commodious and agreeable as possible. Having thus successfully founded a settlement, the Dutch Company

proposed,

proposed, in order the more effectually to establish it, that every man, who would settle three years at the cape, should have an inheritance of sixty acres of land, provided that during that space he would so improve his estate, as to render it sufficient to maintain himself, and contribute somewhat towards the maintenance of the garrison; and at the expiration of the time, he might either keep possession of it, or sell it, and return home. Induced by these proposals, many went to seek their fortunes at the cape, and were furnished on credit with cattle, grain, plants, utensils, &c. The planters, however, at length grew weary of their habitations for want of conjugal society: therefore the governors of the company, to prevent their leaving the place, provided them with wives from the Orphan-houses, and other charitable foundations. In process of time they greatly increased, and spread themselves farther up the country, and along the coast, till they occupied all the lands from Saldanna Bay, round the southern point of Africa, to Noffel Bay, on the E. and afterwards purchased Terra de Natal, in order to extend their limits still farther.

It appears, however, that on the first settlement of the Dutch at the cape, all the Hottentot tribes did not acquiesce in the sale of the country to foreigners; for the Gunyemains dissented from the agreement of the others, and, in 1659, disputed the possession of the purchased territories with the Dutch. They always made their attack in boisterous weather, as thinking the fire-arms then of less use and efficacy; and upon these occasions they would murder indiscriminately all the Europeans they could meet, burn down their houses, and drive away their cattle. At length a Hottentot, called by the Dutch Doman, who had resided some time at Batavia, and afterwards lived at Cape Town, retired to his countrymen, and persuaded them, that it was the intent of the Europeans to enslave them, and stirred them up to war. Accordingly they took up arms, and, being headed by Doman; attended by another chief named Garabinga, they committed great depredations.

But

But
of
nati
of t
for
gran
test,
reap
N
trary
more
defar
penin
Bay
nake
whic
vast
of sea
is utt
will a
the s
thous
kitch
confid
the gr
of the
peciall
coast,
is barr
ments
equal a
bring
reason
had wi
a farm
tance o
with hi
if it wo
his nex
no neig
No.

But the Hottentots themselves at length growing tired of the war, one hundred of them, belonging to one nation, came unarmed to the Dutch fort, with a present of thirteen head of fine excellent cattle, in order to sue for peace. This, it may be imagined, was readily granted by the Dutch, who were heartily sick of a contest, in which themselves were such great losers, without reaping any advantages from it.

Notwithstanding all that has been said to the contrary, no country we saw during the voyage, makes a more forlorn appearance, or is in reality a more sterile desert. The land over the cape, which constitutes the peninsula formed by Table Bay on the N. and False Bay on the S. consists of high mountains, altogether naked and desolate: the land behind these to the E. which may be considered as the isthmus, is a plain of vast extent, consisting almost wholly of a light kind of sea sand, which produces nothing but heath, and is utterly incapable of cultivation. All the spots that will admit of improvement, which together bear about the same proportion to the whole as one to one thousand, are laid out in vineyards, orchards, and kitchen grounds; and most of these little spots lie at a considerable distance from each other. There is also the greatest reason to believe, that in the interior parts of the country, that which is capable of cultivation, especially what is situated at no great distance from the coast, does not bear a greater proportion to that which is barren; for the Dutch told us, that they had settlements eight and twenty days up the country, a distance equal at least to nine hundred miles, from which they bring provisions to the cape by land; so that it seems reasonable to conclude, that provisions are not to be had within a less compass. While we were at the cape, a farmer came thither from the country, at the distance of fifteen days journey, and brought his children with him. We were surprised at this, and asked him, if it would not have been better to have left them with his next neighbour. Neighbour! said the man, I have no neighbour within less than five days journey of me.

Surely the country must be deplorably barren in which those who settle only to raise provisions for a market, are dispersed at such distances from each other. That the country is every where destitute of wood is a certain fact; for timber and planks are imported from Batavia, and fuel is almost as dear as food. We saw not a tree, except in plantations near the town, that was six foot high; and the stems, that were not thicker than a man's thumb, had roots as thick as an arm or leg, such is the influence of the winds here to the disadvantage of vegetation, without considering the sterility of the soil.

Cape Town is the only one the Dutch have built here, and it consists of about a thousand houses neatly built of brick, whited in general on the outside. They are covered only with thatch, for the violence of the S. E. winds would render any other roof inconvenient and dangerous. The streets are broad and commodious, crossing each other at right angles. In the main one is a canal, on each side of which is planted a row of oaks, that have grown tolerably well, and yield an agreeable shade. In another part of the town is also a canal, but the slope of the ground in the course of both is so great, that they are furnished with locks at intervals of little more than fifty yards. The houses in general have pleasant gardens behind, and neat court yards before them. Building, as well as tillage, is greatly encouraged here, and land given for either purpose to those who chuse to accept of it; but then the government claims an annual tenth of the value of the former, and produce of the latter, and a tithe of all purchase money when estates are sold. The town extends from the sea shore to the Company's garden, spreading along Table Bay. The fort is in a valley at a small distance, its form pentagonal, it commands the landing-place, and is garrisoned by two hundred soldiers. The governor's storehouses are within it, other officers besides himself have apartments here, as well as six hundred servants: the same number of slaves are lodged in a commodious building in the town, which is divided into two wards, the one for the men, the other for the

women;

wom
ceptio
pital
fleets
is a
steep
That
seems
which
quent
there
sides t
but th
and in
order
contin
them,
fire.
the stre
ing th
force, a
tentot,
and tha
to the
kept th
for it is
Hotten
if they
What
pany's
the fruit
quarter
flourish
and cou
garden
ble mou
planted
of Euro
excellen
and a gr

women; and there is a house of correction for the reception of dissolute persons of either sex. The hospital for sick seamen is of essential use to the Dutch fleets in going to or returning from India. The church is a large edifice, elegantly plain; but the roof and steeple are thatched, for the reason already mentioned. Thatching indeed, from the nature of the hurricanes, seems absolutely necessary; but from the method in which it was formerly done, it appears that it was frequently attended with danger, and we were informed, there used to be shelving pent houses erected on both sides the streets, to shelter passengers in rainy weather; but these brought the inhabitants under such dangers and inconveniences, that they were all pulled down by order of government. Sailors and Hottentots were continually assembling, and smoking their pipes under them, and sometimes, through carelessness set them on fire. The government laid hold of that occasion to rid the streets of those fellows that were continually pestering them, by publishing an order, which is still in force, and from time to time republished, that no Hottentot, or common sailor, shall smoke in the street, and that upon presuming so to do they should be tied to the whipping post and be severely lashed. This has kept the streets clear of all who have no business there; for it is with great difficulty that either the seamen or Hottentots can forbear smoking while they are awake, if they have tobacco, which they are seldom without. What is most to be admired at the cape is the company's garden, where they have introduced almost all the fruits and flowers that are found in the other three quarters of the globe; most of which are improved, and flourish more than they did in their respective climates and countries from whence they were brought; and the garden is watered with springs that fall down from Table mountain just above them. Apples and pears are planted here, with the grapes of Asia, as well as those of Europe, all of a delicious flavour. Here are also excellent lemons, oranges, citrons, figs, Japan apples, and a great variety of other fruits. In this place a much

greater proportion of the inhabitants are Dutch than in Batavia; and as the town is supported principally by entertaining strangers, and supplying them with necessaries, every man to a certain degree, imitates the manners and customs of the nations with which he is chiefly concerned. The ladies, however, are so faithful to the mode of their country, that not one of them will stir without a chaudpied, or chauffet, which is carried by a servant, that it may be ready to place under her feet, whenever she sits down: though few of these chauffets have fire in them, which indeed the climate renders unnecessary.

Notwithstanding the natural sterility of the climate, industry has supplied this place with all the necessaries, and even luxuries of life in the greatest profusion. The beef and mutton are excellent, though the oxen and sheep are natives of the country: the cattle are lighter than ours, more neatly made, and have horns that spread to a much wider extent. The sheep are clothed with a substance between wool and hair, and have tails of an enormous size: we saw some that weighed twelve pounds, and we heard there were many much larger. Good butter is made from the milk of cows, but the cheese is very much inferior to our own. Here are hogs and a variety of poultry; also goats, but these last are never eaten. Hares are to be found exactly like those in Europe; likewise many kinds of antelopes; quails of two sorts, and bustards, all well flavoured, but not juicy. The fields produce European wheat and barley; the gardens European vegetables; fruit of all kinds; besides plantains, guavas, jambu, and other Indian fruits, but these are not in perfection; the plantains, in particular, are very bad, and the guavas no larger than gooseberries. The vineyards also produce wines of various sorts, but not equal to those of Europe, except the Constantia, which is made genuine only at one vineyard, about ten miles distant from the town. There is another vineyard near it, where wine is made, and called by the same name, but it is greatly inferior.

With

V
diffe
are
colo
and
whic
bay
have
Amo
place
has a
from
of a
grou
over
a mo
long,
his ea
acute.
right
eyes b
frait
ping a
and lo
will no
he is c
ture,
tongue
thistles
from i
blood,
used, a
Wine,
in a str
ing. S
wine, t
the cup
made o
on that
lities, a

With respect to the animals of this country, the wild differ in nothing from those found in other parts. There are great numbers of domestic animals in the various colonies and settlements at the cape, and the woods and mountains abound with wild beasts. The horses, which were brought originally from Persia, are of a bay or chestnut colour, and rather small. The dogs have a very unsightly appearance, and are of little use. Among the wild beasts, the elephant claims the first place. The rhinoceros is of a dark ash colour, and has a snout like a hog. A horn projects about two feet from the nose, resembling in shape a plough share, and of a grey dingy colour. With this he tears up the ground, pulls up trees by their roots, throws large stones over his head, and rips up the elephant, to whom he is a mortal enemy. Another horn of about six inches long, turns up from his forehead. His legs are short, his ears small, and his sense of smelling surprizingly acute. When he scents any thing he pursues in a right line, and tears up every thing in his way; but his eyes being exceeding small and fixed, he can only see strait forward, so that it is easy to avoid him by stepping aside, as he is a long time in turning himself about, and longer still in getting sight again of the object. He will not attack a man without being provoked, or unless he is dressed in scarlet. When he has killed any creature, he licks the flesh from its bones with his rough tongue, which is like a rasp. He feeds much on herbs, thistles, and a plant resembling juniper, and which, from its fondness of it, is called rhinoceros-bush. The blood, skin, and horn of this animal, are medicinally used, and said to be very efficacious in many disorders. Wine, poured into cups made of the horn, bubbles up in a strange kind of fermentation, appearing as if boiling. Should a small portion of poison be put into the wine, the cup splits; but if poison only is poured into the cup, it flies into a thousand pieces; hence cups made of this horn are deemed excellent safeguards, and, on that account, independent of their salubrious qualities, are highly valued. At the cape, wolves are of

two

two kinds; the one resembles a sheep-dog, and is spotted like a tyger; the other is like an European wolf: they both prowl about, and do great mischief in the night-time, but lie concealed in the day. Lions, tygers, leopards, &c. also abound here, and are so troublesome, that the person who kills one of either sort, is rewarded with twenty-five florins, or fifty shillings. The flesh of the lion is esteemed equal to venison, and the fat is much valued. Here are much larger buffaloes than in Europe. They are of a brown colour: the horns are short, and curve towards the neck, where they incline to each other. Between them is a tuft of hair upon the forehead, which adds to the fierceness of the look. The skin is exceeding hard, and the flesh rather tough. He is a strong fierce creature, and is enraged at any thing red, like many other animals. We saw here elks five feet high, with horns a foot long. This is a very handsome creature, having a beautiful head and neck, slender legs, and soft smooth hair of an ash colour. Their upper jaw is larger than the under, the tail about a foot in length, and the flesh by the cape epicures is said to exceed the best beef. They run swift, and climb the rocks with great agility, though they usually weigh about four hundred pounds each. Another singular animal is that called stink-box, from its offensive smell both living and dead; it is about the size of a common house dog, and made much like a ferret. The goats are of various species. One, called the blue goat, is of a fine azure colour. The spotted goat is larger, and beautifully marked with brown, white, and red spots. The horns are a foot long. The flesh fine eating. The rock-goat is no larger than a kid, but very mischievous in the plantations. The diving-goat is much like the tame one, and receives its name from its method of squatting down in the grass to hide itself. We saw another animal called a goat, without any additional appellation, it is of the size of a hart, and extremely beautiful. The hair of the sides and back is grey, streaked with red, and that on the belly white. A white streak passes from his forehead to

the
in c
the
ceed
bran
every
The
really
fine
cat, f
The
the ta
specie
havin
down
this o
the siz
its tail
and pu
countr
which
earth h
this lo
ants;
tongue
great n
mines,
cape;
orchard
mon, a
sorts of
beautif
affinity
Indeed
animal,
noble ap
ing live
most eve
has a tw
skin. T

the ridge of his tail, and three others furround his body in circles. The female hath no horns; but those of the male are three feet in length, and the flesh is exceedingly delicate. The horns of the hart do not branch like those of Europe; but the roebuck is in every respect like ours. Wild cats are of several sorts. The first the Dutch call the civit cat, not that it is really the animal of that name, but because of the fine scent of the skin. The next is called the tyger-cat, from its being very large, and spotted like a tyger. The third sort is the mountain cat, which, as well as the tame cat, resembles those of Europe. The fourth species is denominated the blue cat, from its colour, having a fine blue tinge, with a beautiful red list down its back. There is a species of mice peculiar to this country, called the rattle-mouse, which is about the size of a squirrel, and makes a rattling noise with its tail. It is very nimble, lives upon nuts and acorns, and purs like a cat. Among the hogs with which this country abounds, is the wild hog, or rather wild boar, which is very fierce, and harbours in woods; and the earth hog, which is of a red colour, and without teeth: this lodges like a badger in holes, and feeds upon ants; these he procures by forcing his long rough tongue into their hills, from whence he draws it with a great number glued thereto. Many jackalls, some ermines, baboons, monkeys, &c. are found about the cape; and frequently do great mischief in the gardens, orchards, and vineyards. The porcupine is very common, and its flesh esteemed delicious. There are two sorts of wild asses in this country, one of which is a beautiful creature, called the zebra, and bears a greater affinity in make and shape to the horse than the ass. Indeed the ears are somewhat like those of the latter animal, but in all other respects it has a much more noble appearance. It is admirably well made, exceeding lively, and so extremely swift, that it throws almost every pursuer at a distance. Its legs are fine; it has a twisted tail, round fleshy haunches, and a smooth skin. The females are white and black, and the males
white

white and brown. These colours are placed alternately in the most beautiful stripes, and are parallel, distinct, and narrow. The whole animal is streaked in this admirable manner, so as to appear to a distant beholder as if covered with ribbons. Most naturalists affirm, that the zebra never can be tamed. That which was presented to her present majesty queen Charlotte, and kept several years at the stables near Buckingham-gate, continued vicious till its death, though it was brought over young, and every possible means used to render it tractable; it fed upon hay, and the noise it made rather resembled the barking of a mastiff dog, than the braying of an ass. The camelopardalis, we were informed, has been found in the countries round the cape. Captain Carteret, having, by order of his present majesty, performed a voyage round the world in the Swallow sloop of war, mentions this animal in a letter to the late Dr. Matty, secretary to the Royal Society. "From the scarcity of this creature (says he) as I believe none have been found in Europe, since Julius Cæsar's time (when I think there were two of them at Rome) I imagine a more certain knowledge of its reality will not be disagreeable to you, as the existence of this fine animal has been doubted by many. The present governor of the Cape of Good Hope has sent out parties of men on inland discoveries, some of which have been absent from eighteen months to two years, in which traverse they have discovered many curiosities. One of these parties crossed many mountains and plains, in one of which they found two of these creatures, but they only caught the young one. This they endeavoured to bring alive to Cape Town, but unfortunately it died. They took off his skin, and it has, as a confirmation of this truth, been sent to Holland." The skin here alluded to is now in the cabinet of natural history at Leyden. Linnæus ranks this animal among the deer kind. Its head is like that of a stag; the horns are blunt, about six inches long, covered with hair, but not branched. The neck resembles a camel's, only longer, being seven feet. It has a mane like that of a horse;

ears,
the fo
the b
spotte
end;
both
after
long f
feet fr
A g
cape,
eagles
tortois
gular
air, it
the she
prey.
of ani
comme
3. The
pally o
1. The
mount
green-l
named
pocket
kinds o
so easil
think
But of
the flan
neck, a
ably lon
like the
black p
the upp
lour, an
Repti
the foll
from re
No. 4

ears, and a tongue like those of a cow; slender legs, the fore ones being considerably longer than the hinder; the body is but small, covered with white hair, and spotted with red; the tail is long, and bushy at the end; the upper jaw contains no fore teeth; he moves both the fore feet together when he runs, and not one after the other like other animals; he is eighteen feet long from the tail to the top of the head, and is sixteen feet from the ground when he holds up his head.

A great variety of birds and fowls are found at the cape, both wild and tame. Here are three sorts of eagles, namely, 1. The bone breaker, who feeds on tortoises; to obtain the flesh of which it uses this singular method. Having carried the tortoise aloft in the air, it drops it upon some hard rock, by which means the shell is broken, and the eagle can easily come at its prey. 2. The dung-eagle, which tears out the entrails of animals to subsist on, and, though no bigger than a common goose, is exceeding strong and voracious. 3. The duck-eagle, so called because it feeds principally on ducks. Here are also wild geese of three sorts.

1. The water goose, which resembles ours. 2. The mountain goose, which is the largest of all, having a green head, and green wings. 3. The crop goose, so named from its remarkable large craw, of which bags, pockets, and tobacco-pouches are made. All these kinds of geese are such good eating, so plentiful, and so easily taken, that the people of the cape do not think the tame goose worth the trouble of breeding. But of all the numerous birds that are to be found here, the flamingo is one of the most singular. It has a long neck, and is larger than a swan: the legs are remarkably long, and of an orange tawny, and the feet are like those of a goose: the bill contains blue teeth with black points; the head and neck are intirely white; the upper part of the wings are of a bright flame colour, and the lower black.

Reptiles are very numerous at the cape, particularly the following serpents, 1. The tree serpents, so called from resembling the branch of a tree, and from being

fond of winding itself about trees: 2. The ash coloured asp, speckled with white and red, which is several yards long. 3. The shoot serpent, so named from the amazing velocity with which it darts itself at an enemy. Some call it the eye serpent, on account of the numerous white spots resembling eyes, with which its skin is marked. 4. The blind slow-worm, a black scaly serpent, spotted with brown, white, and red. 5. The thirst serpent, or inflamer, a most venomous and dangerous serpent, about three quarters of a yard long; it has a broad neck, black back, and is very active. 6. The hair serpent, which is about three feet in length, as thick as a man's thumb, and received its name from its yellow hair. Its poison is so malignant, that nothing but the serpent stone can prevent its being mortal. This stone is said to be an artificial composition, prepared by the Bramins in India, who keep the secret to themselves. It is shaped like a bean, in the middle whitish, the rest of a sky-blue. Whenever this is applied, it sticks close without bandage or support, and imbibes the poison till it can receive no more, and then drops off. Being laid in milk, it purges itself of the venom, turning the milk yellow, and so is applied again, till by its not sticking, it proves that the poison is exhausted.

The neighbouring sea affords a plentiful supply of fish to the inhabitants of the cape. The meat of the sea cows is much admired. The flying fish, which has wings like a bat, is reckoned a great delicacy. The brown fish is as big as an ox, and is deemed good food either fresh or salted. The bennet is near three feet long, and weighs about seven pounds: the eyes and tails are red; the fins yellow, and the scales purple, with gold streaks. The meat is of a crimson colour, and so remains after it is dressed; nevertheless it is delicious eating. The gold fish has a streak from head to tail, circles round his eyes of a gold colour, it is eighteen inches long, weighs about a pound, and its flesh of an exquisite taste. The brassem is found only about the cape. Of this fish there are two sorts; the one has a black

black
blue
They
brass
in m
this f
and i
stone
fite to
and b
and fu
a pale
a car
pound
a sing
per an
In vin
bits an
are sm
tions
from t
has a p
of the
turns
prevent
sticking
emits w
The ton
body is
marked
the tail
five to
quality
furnishe
all ages
deprive
effect if
upon it
the thig
are seiz

black back, and purple head; the other is of a dark blue colour, and the former is rounder than the latter. They are both cheap and wholesome food. The stone brasse is good either fresh or salted, resembles a carp in make, but is more delicious in taste. One species of this fish is called flat-nose, from the shape of the head, and is much more valued than the other sort. The red stone fish is exceeding beautiful to the eye, and exquisite to the taste: the back is scarlet spotted with blue, and bespangled with gold; the eyes are of a bright red, and surrounded with a silver circle, and the belly is of a pale pink colour, has a shining silver tail, resembles a carp both in shape and taste, and weighs about a pound. Of shell-fish, which are innumerable, there is a singular species called klin-koufen, which has an upper and under shell, thick, rough, twisted, and incrusted. In vinegar the crust will drop off, and the shell exhibits an admirable pearl colour. Sea-funs and sea-stars, are small round shell-fish, and receive their denominations from the great variety of prickles, which shoot from them like rays of light. The fish called pagger has a prickly shell, and is much dreaded by the people of the cape, as a wound from one of its protuberances turns to a mortification, unless great care is taken to prevent it. The sea-spout resembles a piece of moss sticking fast to the rocks. It is of a green colour, emits water, and within is like a tough piece of flesh. The torpedo, or cramp-ray is a very curious fish. The body is circular, the skin soft, smooth and yellow, marked with large annular spots; the eyes small, and the tail tapering. It is of different sizes, and weighs from five to fifteen pounds. The narcotic or benumbing quality of this fish was known to the ancients, and hath furnished matter of speculation to the philosophers of all ages. If a person touches it when alive, it instantly deprives him of the use of his arm, and has the same effect if he touches it with a stick. Even if one treads upon it with a shoe on, it affects not only the leg, but the thigh upwards. They who touch it with the feet are seized with a stronger palpitation than even those

who touch it with the hand: this numbness bears no resemblance to that which we feel when a nerve is a long time pressed, and the foot is said to be asleep: it rather appears to be like a sudden vapour, which passing through the pores in an instant, penetrates to the very springs of life, from whence it diffuses itself all over the body, and gives real pain. The nerves are so affected, that the person struck imagines all the bones of his body, and particularly those of the limb that received the blow, are driven out of joint. All this is accompanied with a universal tremor, a sickness of the stomach, a general convulsion, and a total suspension of the faculties of the mind. In short, such is the pain, that all the force of our promises and authority could not prevail upon a seaman to undergo the shock a second time. It has been observed, that the powers of this fish decline with its strength, and intirely ceases when it expires. This benumbing faculty is of double use to the torpedo: first it enables it to get its prey with great facility; and secondly it is an admirable defence against its enemies, as by numbing a fish of superior force with its touch, it can easily escape. The narcotic power of the torpedo is greater in the female than the male. According to Appian, it will benumb the fisherman through the whole extent of hook, line and rod. The flesh of this remarkable fish having, however, no pernicious quality, is eaten by the people of the cape in common with others.

The air at the Cape of Good Hope is salutary in a high degree; so that those who bring diseases from Europe generally recover health in a short time; but the diseases that are brought hither from India are not so certainly cured. The weather at the cape may be divided into two seasons, namely, the wet monsoon, and the dry monsoon; the former begins in March, and the latter in September; so that summer commences at the cape about the time that it concludes with us. The inconveniences of the climate are excessive heat in the dry season, and heavy rains, thick fogs, and N. W. winds in the wet season. Thunder and lightning are never

nev
ter
thin
fun
the
sea-
corr
clou
the
mon
nost
first
unit
whe
who
of t
the
of a
No
hum
issui
cont
first
and
the
torn
down
the b
to b
gins
prop
trans
ance
furio
neral
soon
sure
or mi
after
Ne

never known here but in March and September. Water seldom freezes, and when it does, the ice is but thin, and dissolves upon the least appearance of the sun. In the hot weather, the people are happy when the wind blows from the S. E. because it keeps off the sea-weeds which otherwise would float to the shore, and corrupt there. The appearance of two remarkable clouds, which frequently hang over the summits of the two mountains of Table-hill and Devil-hill, commonly enable the inhabitants of this country to prognosticate what weather will happen. The clouds are at first small, but gradually increasing, they at length unite into one cloud, which envelops both mountains, when a terrible hurricane soon ensues. A gentleman, who resided many years at the cape, says, "The skirts of this cloud are white, but seem much compacter than the matter of common clouds. The upper parts are of a lead colour, owing to the refracted rays of light. No rain falls from it, but at times it discovers great humidity, when it is of a darker hue; and the wind issuing from it is broken, raging by gusts of short continuance. In its usual state, the wind keeps up its first fury, unabated, for one, two, three, or eight days, and sometimes a whole month. The cloud seems all the time undiminished, though little fleeces are seen torn from the skirts from time to time, and hurried down the sides of the hills, vanishing when they reach the bottom; so that during the storm the cloud seems to be supplied with new water. When the cloud begins to brighten up, those supplies fail, and the wind proportionably abates. At length the cloud growing transparent, the wind ceases." During the continuance of the S. E. winds, the Table-valley is torn by furious whirlwinds. If they blow warm, they are generally of short duration, and in this case the cloud soon disappears; but when the wind blows cold, it is a sure sign it will last long, except an hour or two at noon, or midnight when it seems to recover new strength, and afterwards renews its boisterous rage.

Near the cape the water of the ocean is of a green colour,

colour, owing principally to the coral shrubs, and the weed called tromba. The first, while in the water, are green and soft; but when exposed to the air, they grow hard, and change their colour to white, black, or red. The latter are ten or twelve feet in length, hollow within, and when dry, become firm and strong. They are often framed into trumpets, and the sound they produce is very agreable to the ear.

The sources of the rivers in this country are in the mountains: they glide over a gravelly bottom, are clear, pleasant, and salubrious; but other streams are dark, muddy, and unwholesome. Here are a few brackish springs, whose waters medicinally used, greatly purify the blood, and several hot baths are very efficacious in various disorders. Upon the whole, the reputation of the cape waters is so great, that every Danish ship returning from India, is obliged to fill a large cask with the clear sweet water that abounds here for the use of his Danish majesty.

The soil in general about the cape consists of a clayey earth, and is so fat, that it requires but little manuring. White and red chalk are found in abundance; the former is used by the Dutch, to whitewash their houses, and the latter by the Hottentot women to paint their faces. Various bituminous substances of several colours are found in Drakenstein colony, particularly a kind of oil which trickles from the rocks, and has a very rank smell. With respect to minerals, silver ore has been found in some of the mountains, and also several iron mines. The Namaqua Hottentots, who are situated above three hundred miles from the cape, bring copper to trade with the Dutch.

When we speak of agriculture, it is to be observed, that the Europeans of the cape, and their lands, are implied; for the Hottentots in general detest the very idea of cultivation, and would sooner starve than till the ground, so greatly are they addicted to sloth and indolence. The working of the plough here is so laborious from the stiffness of the soil, that it frequently requires near twenty oxen to one plough. The sowing

season

season
corn
or o
and
soon
form
from
midd
conti
a do
dozer
to th
at a
band
We
cape,
the na
have d
handse
colour
health
as mis
scarcely
The co
to lodg
of who
the rate
all nec
twenty-
country
There a
are priv
always a
We c
this cou
tain the
days jou
cape we
they tak
of the

season is in July, and the harvest about Christmas. The corn is not thrashed with a flail, but trod out by horses or oxen, on an artificial floor made of cow-dung, straw, and water, which when mixed together cements, and soon becomes perfectly hard. It is laid in an oval form. The cattle are confined by halters which run from one to the other, and the driver stands in the middle, where he exercises a long stick to keep them continually to a quick pace. By this method half a dozen horses will do more in one day, than a dozen men can in a week. A tythe of the corn belongs to the Dutch Company, and the rest they purchase at a price stipulated between them and the husbandmen.

We have already observed of the inhabitants of the cape, that their numbers bear a greater proportion to the natives and strangers, than those in Batavia; and have only to add, that the women in general are very handsome: they have fine clear skins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of constitution, and high health. They make the best wives in the world, both as mistresses of a family and mothers, and there is scarcely a house that does not swarm with children. The common method in which strangers live here, is to lodge and board with some of the inhabitants, many of whose houses are always open for their reception; the rates are from five shillings to two a day, for which all necessaries are found. Coaches may be hired at twenty-four shillings a day, and horses at six; but the country affords very little temptation to use them. There are no public entertainments, and to those that are private, all strangers of the rank of gentlemen are always admitted.

We come now to speak of the Caffres or natives of this country, none of whose habitations, where they retain their original customs, are within less than four days journey from Cape Town; those that we saw at the cape were all servants to Dutch farmers, whose cattle they take care of, and are employed in other drudgery of the meanest kind. There are sixteen Hottentot nations,

nations, which inhabit this southern promontory; at least, there are so many that hold a correspondence with the Dutch, though it is presumed, there are many more to the northward.

The stature of the Hottentot men is from five to six feet in height. Their bodies are proportionable, and well made: they are seldom either too fat or lean, and scarce ever any crooked or deformed persons amongst them, any farther than they disfigure their children themselves by flattening and breaking the gristles of their noses, looking on a flat nose as a beauty. Their heads as well as their eyes, are rather of the largest: their lips are naturally thick; their hair black and short like the negroes, and they have exceeding white teeth: and after they have taken a great deal of pains with grease and soot to darken their natural tawny complexions, resemble the negroes pretty much in colour. The women are much less than the men; and what is most remarkable in them, is a callous flap or skin that falls over the pudenda, and in a manner conceals it. The report of which usually excites the curiosity of the European sailors, to visit the Hottentot villages near the cape, where a great many of those ladies, on seeing a stranger, will offer to satisfy his curiosity for a half-penny, before a crowd of people, which perfectly spoils the character that Mr. Kolben has given of their modesty.

The head of the men are covered with grease and soot mixed together; and going without any thing else on their heads in the summer-time, the dust sticks to it, and makes them a very filthy cap, which they say cools them, and preserves their heads from the scorching heat of the sun; and in the winter, they wear flat caps of cat-skin or lamb-skin, half dried, which they tie with a thong of the same leather under their chins. The men also wear a krosse or mantle, made of sheep-skins or other skins, over their shoulders, which reaches to the middle; and, being fastened with a thong about their neck, is open before. In winter they turn the woolly or hairy sides next their backs, and in summer the other: this serves the man for his bed at night; and
this

th
If
in
fk
va
ge
wh
ha

in
fon
litt
aga
rin
visi
two
feet
the
and
used
whic
his l
whic
serve
They
hide
trave
buski
but o
Th
raised
under
or day
or mar
ed wi
down
that o
larger
their l
thickn
No.

this is all the winding-sheet or coffin he has when he dies. If he be a captain of a village, or chief of his nation, instead of a sheep-skin, his mantle is made of tyger-skins, wild cat-skins, or some other skins they set a value upon: but though these mantles reach no lower, generally, than their waists, yet there are some nations who wear them as low as their legs, and others that have them touch the ground.

A Hottentot also hangs about his neck a greasy pouch, in which he keeps his knife, his pipe and tobacco, and some dahka (which intoxicates like tobacco) and a little piece of wood, burnt at both ends, as a charm against witchcraft. He wears also three large ivory rings on his left arm, to which he fastens a bag of provisions when he travels. He carries in his right hand two sticks, the first called his kirri, which is about three feet long, and an inch thick, but blunt at both ends; the other, called his rackum-stick, about a foot long, and of the same thickness, but has a sharp point, and is used as a dart, to throw at an enemy or wild beast; which he seldom misses, if he be within distance. In his left hand he has another stick, about a foot long, to which is fastened a tail of a fox or wild cat; and this serves him as a handkerchief to wipe off the sweat. They wear a kind of sandals, also made of the raw hide of an ox or elephant, when they are obliged to travel through stoney countries; and sometimes have buskins, to preserve their legs from bushes and briars; but ordinarily their legs and thighs have no covering.

The women wear caps, the crowns whereof are a little raised; and these are made of half dried skins, and tied under their chins. They scarce ever put them off night or day, winter or summer. They usually wear two crosses or mantles, one upon another, and, as these are only fastened with a thong, about their necks, they appear naked down to the middle: but they have an apron, larger than that of the men to cover them before, and another of still larger dimensions that cover their hind parts. About their legs they wrap thongs of half dried skins, to the thickness of a jack-boot, which are such a load to them,

that they lift up their legs with difficulty, and walk very much like a trooper in jack-boots: this serves both for a distinction of their sex, and for ornament. But this is not all their finery: if they are people of any figure, instead of a sheep skin, they wear a tyger skin, or a mantle of wild cat skin. They have also a pouch hanging about their necks, in which they carry something to eat, whether they are at home or abroad, with their dahka, tobacco, and pipe. But the principal ornaments both of men and women are brass or glass beads, with little thin plates of glittering brass and mother of pearl, which they wear in their hair, or about their ears. Of these glass or brass beads strung, they also make necklaces, bracelets for the arms, and girdles, wearing several strings of them about their necks, waist, and arms, chusing the smallest beads for their necks: those are finest that have most strings of them, and their arms are sometimes covered with bracelets from the wrist to the elbow. The largest beads are on the strings about the middle: in these they affect a variety of colours, all of which the Dutch furnish them with, and take their cattle in return. There is another kind of ornament peculiar to the men, and that is, the bladder of any wild beast they have killed, which is blown up, and fastened to the hair as a trophy of their valour. Both sexes powder themselves with a dust they call bachu; and the women spot their faces with a red earth or stone (as ours do with black patches) which is thought to add to their beauty, by the natives; but, in the eyes of Europeans, renders them more frightful and shocking than they are naturally. But as part of their dress, we ought to have mentioned, in the first place, the custom of daubing their bodies, and the inside of their caps and mantles, with grease and foot. Soon after their children are born, they lay them in the sun, or by the fire, and rub them over with fat or butter, mixed with foot, to render them of a deeper black, it is said; for they are naturally tawny: and this they continue to do almost every day of their lives, after they are grown up, not only to increase their beauty, but to render their limbs supple

supple and pliable. As some nations pour oil upon their heads and bodies, so these people make use of melted fat : you cannot make them a more acceptable present than the fat or scum of the pot that meat is boiled in to anoint themselves.

Nor are the Hottentots more cleanly in their diet than in their dress; for they choose the guts and entrails of cattle and of some wild beasts (with very little cleansing), rather than the rest of the flesh, and eat their meat half boiled or broiled; but their principal food consists of roots, herbs, fruits or milk : they seldom kill any of those cattle, unless at a festival ; they only feed on such as die of themselves, either of diseases or old age, or on what they take in hunting ; and, when they are hard put to it, they will eat the raw leather that is wound about the womens legs, and even soles of shoes ; and, as their mantles are always well stocked with lice of an unusual size, they are not ashamed to sit down in the public streets at the cape, pull off the lice, and eat them. And we ought to have remembered, that they boil their meat in the blood of beasts when they have any of it. They rather devour their meat than eat it, pulling it to pieces with their teeth and hands, discovering a canine appetite and fierceness : they abstain, however, from swines-flesh, and some other kinds of meat, and from fish that have no scales, as religiously as ever the Jews did. And here it may not be improper to say something of the management of their milk and butter: they never strain their milk, but drink it with all the hairs and nastiness with which it is mixed in the milking by the Hottentot women. When they make butter of it, they put it into some skin made in the form of a soldier's knapsack, the hairy side inwards ; and then two of them taking hold of it, one at each end, they whirl and turn it round till it is converted into butter, which they put up for anointing themselves, their caps and mantles with, for they eat no butter ; and the rest they sell to the Dutch, without clearing it from the hairs and dirt it contracts in the knapsack. The Hollanders, when they have it indeed, endeavour to separate the

nastiness from it, and sell to the shipping, that arrives there, frequently for butter of their own making; and some they eat themselves (but surely none but a Dutchman could eat Hottentot butter) and the dregs and dirt that is left they give to their slaves; which having been found to create diseases, the governor of the cape sometimes prohibits their giving their slaves this stuff by public edict; which is not, however, much regarded. The butter-milk, without any manner of cleaning or straining, the Hottentots drink themselves; giving what they have to spare to their lambs and calves. Their usual drink is cow's milk or water, and the women sometimes drink ewe's milk; but this the men never touch: and it is observed, that the women are never suffered to eat with the men, or come near them, during the time of their menses.

Since the arrival of the Dutch among them, it appears that the Hottentots are very fond of wine, brandy, and other spirituous liquors; these, and the baubles already mentioned, the Hollanders truck for their cattle; and though a Hottentot will turn spit for a Dutchman half a day for a draught or two of four wine, yet do they never attempt to plant vineyards (as they see the Dutch often do) or think of making wine themselves.

We shall proceed, in the next place, to give an account of their towns and houses, or rather, their camps and tents.

Like the Tartars and Arabs, they remove their dwellings frequently for the conveniency of water and fresh pasture: they encamp in a circle formed by twenty or thirty tents, and sometimes twice the number, contiguous to each other; within the area whereof they keep their lesser cattle in the night, and the larger on the outside of their camp: their tents, or, as some call them, houses, are made with slender poles, bent like an arch, and covered with mats or skins, and sometimes both: they are of an oval figure, the middle of the tent being about the height of a man, and decreasing gradually (the poles being shorter) towards each end, the lowest arch, which is the door or entrance, being about three feet high, as is the opposite arch

arch
being
ten;
about
and
or te
day i
sing
to be
but t
of for
them
descri
times
to be
more
being
these
tent-p
able,
ever th
As to
more t
skins o
earth
perhap
animal
their m
and de
The
neratio
dried s
food;
chace,
and dex
Europe
tion, w
they are
will sca
have ca

arch at the other end; the longest diameter of the tent being about twelve or fourteen feet, and the shortest ten; and in the middle of the tent is a shallow hole about a yard diameter, in which they make their fire, and round which the whole family, consisting of nine or ten people of all ages and sexes, sit or lie night and day in such a smoak (when it is cold, or they are dressing of victuals) that it is impossible for an European to bear it, there being usually no vent for the smoak but the door, though some have seen a hole in the top of some of their huts, to let out the smoak, and give them light. Such a circle of tents or huts as has been described, is called by the Hottentots a kraal, and sometimes by the Europeans a town or village; but seems to be more properly a camp: for a town consists of more substantial buildings, and is seldom capable of being removed from one place to another: whereas these dwellings consist of nothing more than small tent-poles, covered with skins or mats, which are moveable, and carried away upon their baggage oxen whenever they remove with their herds to a distant pasture. As to the furniture of their tents; they consist of little more than their mantles which they lie on, some other skins of wild beasts they have killed or purchased, an earthen pot they boil their meat in, their arms, and perhaps some other trivial utensils. The only domestick animals they keep are dogs, as ugly in their kind as their masters, but exceeding useful to them in driving and defending their cattle.

The Hottentots are agreed by all to be the laziest generation under the sun: they will rather starve, or eat dried skins, or shoe soles at home, than hunt for their food; and yet, when they apply themselves to the chase, or any other exercise, no people are more active and dexterous than the Hottentots; and they serve the Europeans often with the greatest fidelity and application, when they contract to serve them for wages: they are also exceeding generous and hospitable; they will scarce eat a piece of venison, or a dish of fish they have caught, or drink their beloved drams alone, but call

call in their neighbours to partake with them as far as it will go.

Concerning their government, people agree, that every nation has its king or chief, called konquer, whose authority devolves upon him by hereditary succession; and that they do not pretend to elect their respective sovereigns. That this chief has the power of making peace and war, and presides in all their councils and courts of justice: but then his authority is said to be limited; and that he can determine nothing without the consent of the captains of the several kraals, who seem to be the Hottentot senate. The captain of every kraal, whose office is hereditary also, is their leader in time of war, and chief magistrate of his kraal in time of peace; and, with the head of every family, determines all civil and criminal causes within the kraal; only such differences as happen between one kraal and another, and matters of state, are determined by the king and senate. The Dutch, since their arrival at the cape, have presented the king, or chief of every nation of the Hottentots in alliance with them, with a brass crown; and the captains of each kraal with a brass-headed cane, which are now the badges of their respective offices; formerly they were distinguished only by finer skins, and a greater variety of beads and glittering trifles. In their councils their king sits on his heels in the center, and the captains of the kraals sit in like manner round about him. At his accession, it is said, he promises to observe their national customs; and gives them an entertainment, killing an ox, and two or three sheep, upon the occasion; on which he feasts his captains, but their wives are only entertained with the broth: but then the next day, we are told, her Hottentot majesty treats the ladies, and their husbands are put off in like manner with the soup.

The captain of each kraal also, at his accession, engages to observe the customs of his kraal, and makes an entertainment for the men, as his lady does the next day for the women; and, though these people shew their chiefs great respect, they allow neither their king

or in
other
they
Hay
no wr
from
tery,
and, i
the wh
the gu
mound
secure
the nei
of Ho
know
his ow
tain af
who, r
heels,
witness
to mak
sidered,
and, if
cuted o
trunche
the jud
wrappin
carried
bury it.
a major
dered t
person t
appeal t
constit
unless in
kraals a
the Ho
his elde
effects t
lands, o

or inferior magistrates any revenue; they subsist, as other families do, upon their stock of cattle, and what they take in hunting.

Having no notion of writing or letters, they can have no written laws: but there are some antient customs, from which they scarce ever deviate. Murder, adultery, and robbery, they constantly punish with death; and, if a person is suspected of any of these crimes, the whole kraal join in seizing and securing him; but the guilty person sometimes makes his escape to the mountains, where robbers and criminals like himself, secure themselves from justice, and frequently plunder the neighbouring country; for no other kraal or nation of Hottentots will entertain a stranger, unless he is known to them, and can give a good reason for leaving his own kraal. If the offender is apprehended, the captain assembles the people of his kraal in a day or two; who, making a ring, and sitting down upon their heels, the criminal is placed in the center of them: the witnesses on both sides are heard, and the party suffered to make his defence: after which, the case being considered, the captain collects the suffrages of the judges; and, if a majority condemn him, the prisoner is executed on the spot. The captain first strikes him with a truncheon he carries in his hand, and then the rest of the judges fall upon him and drub him to death: then wrapping up the corpse in his krosse or mantle, it is carried to some place distant from the kraal, where they bury it. In civil cases also, the cause is determined by a majority of voices, and satisfaction immediately ordered to the injured person, out of the goods of the person that appears to be in the wrong. There is no appeal to any other court: the king and his council, consisting of the captains of the kraals, never interpose unless in matters that concern the public, or where the kraals are at variance. To which we may add, that the Hottentots cattle and personal estate descend to his eldest son: he cannot disinherit him, or give his effects to his other children; but, as for property in lands, or any certain real estate, no man has any; the whole

whole country is but one common; where they feed their cattle promiscuously, moving from place to place, to find water or fresh pasture as necessity requires. Even the several nations have no stated bounds; but use such tracts of land as their ancestors did before them: it is true, their respective limits sometimes create great differences between the several nations, and occasion bloody wars; which brings us now to treat of their arms, and the arts and stratagems they use in war.

The arms of a Hottentot are, 1. His lance, which resembles a half-pike, sometimes thrown, and used as a missive weapon; and at others, serves to push with in close fight, the head or spear whereof is poisoned. 2. His bow and arrows, the arrows bearded and poisoned likewise, when they engage an enemy or wild beast they do not intend for food. Their bows are made of iron, or olive-wood; the string, of the sinews or guts of some animal: the quiver is a long narrow case, made of the skin of an elephant, elk, or ox, and slung at their backs, as soldiers sling their knapsacks. 3. A dart of a foot long, which they throw exceeding true, scarce ever missing the mark they aim at, though it is not above the breadth of half a crown; these also are poisoned, when they engage an enemy or a wild beast that is not to be eaten: and lastly, when they have spent the rest of their missive weapons, they have recourse to stones, seldom making a discharge in vain; and, what is most remarkable in their shooting or throwing arrows, darts, or stones, they never stand still, but are all the while skipping and jumping from one side to the other, possibly to avoid the stones and darts of the enemy. They are all foot, and never engage on horseback; but have disciplined bulls or oxen taught to run upon the enemy, and to toss and disorder them; which these creatures will do with the utmost fury on the word of command, not regarding the weapons that are thrown at them: for though the Hottentots have number of large elephants in their country, they have not yet learned the art of taming them, or training them up to war, as the military men in the East Indies do.

do.
of
the
wit
and
lasts
so n
nou
zard
T
of d
the c
capt
meth
marc
two
whic
they
sion,
their
anima
plined
tots t
enteri
their
ten tr
they f
spectiv
grazes
fatisfac
given,
But th
Hotter
tuous
tempti
amiabl
carrion
bouring
assist hi
frequen
No.

do. Every able bodied man is a soldier, and possessed of a set of such arms as has been described; and on the summons of his prince, appears at the rendezvous with all imaginable alacrity and contempt of danger, and every man maintains himself while the expedition lasts. As their officers, civil and military, have no pay, so neither do the private men expect any; a sense of honour, and the public good, are the sole motives for hazarding their lives in their country's service.

The Hottentots, in war, have very little conception of discipline, nor indeed is it possible they should; for the only method of raising an army, is, for the kraal captains to order the people to follow them; the only method of maintaining one, is by hunting as they march: and the only way of deciding a dispute between two nations, is, by fighting one battle; the success of which determines the whole affair. In an engagement, they attack with an hideous yell, fight in great confusion, and put more confidence in their war oxen than their own skill: for, as we have hinted above, these animals, when trained to the business, are better disciplined and much more formidable, than the Hottentots themselves. The principal inducements to their entering into a war at any time, is the preservation of their territories. As they have no land marks or written treaties to adjust the exact bounds of every nation, they frequently disagree about the limits of their respective countries; and, when any neighbouring nation grazes their cattle upon a spot of ground another claims, satisfaction is immediately demanded; and, if it be not given, they make reprisals, and have recourse to arms. But this is not the only occasion of wars amongst the Hottentots: they are not always that chaste and virtuous people Mr. Kolben has represented them; some tempting Helen (for Hottentots possibly may appear amiable in one another's eyes, with all the grease and carrion they are cloathed with) has smitten a neighbouring chief, perhaps, who prevails on his people to assist him in the rape of the desired female; and this frequently sets their tribes together by the ears. The

stealing each others cattle is another cause of deadly strife; for though each kraal punishes theft among themselves with death, yet it is looked upon as an heroic act to rob those of another nation; at least the body of the people are so backward in giving up the offender, that they frequently come to blows upon it.

When they march into the field, every man follows his particular captain, the chief of his kraal: they observe little order; neither do they take the precaution of throwing up trenches to defend themselves: and what is still more surprising, have no shields to defend themselves against missive weapons, though some say they will ward off a lance or dart, and even a stone, with a little truncheon about a foot long, which they carry in their hand. The several companies advance to the charge, at the command of their chief; and, when those in the front have shot one flight of arrows, they retreat and make room for those in the rear; and, when they have discharged, the former advance again, and thus alternately they continue till they have spent all their missive weapons, and then they have recourse to stones, unless they are first broken and dispersed by a troop of bulls: for the wise chiefs and generals of each side, according to the European practice, remaining on an eminence in the rear, to observe the fortune of the day, when they observe their people are hard pressed, give the word of command to their corps de reserve of bulls, who break into the body of the enemy, and generally bring all into confusion; and that side that preserves their order best, on this furious attack of these bulls of Basan, are sure to be victorious. The skill of the general seems to be chiefly in managing his bulls; who never charge each other, but spend their whole rage upon the men, who have, it seems, no dogs of English breed to play against them, or this stratagem would be of little service: but we should have observed, that as the battle always begins with horrid cries and noise, which perhaps supplies the place of drums and trumpets; so the victors insult with no less noise over the conquered enemy, killing all that

fall

fall
one
to m
form
their
natu
whic
peop
have
enem
Inf
singl
but u
wild
divid
roun
set up
vours
to be
lances
throu
the fir
with t
the pe
him ch
turns
consta
wards
ture d
them.
may ap
sport;
ing sw
aim at
by the
nions,
or mal
roufly
the cha
force.

fall into their hands : but they seldom fight more than one battle, some neighbouring power usually interposing to make up the quarrel ; and of late the Dutch perform this good office, between such nations as lie near their settlements. From their wars with each other, we naturally proceed to their wars with wild beasts, with which their country abounds more than any other ; these people, it seems, esteem it a much greater honour to have killed one of these foes to mankind, than an enemy of their own species.

Instances are not wanting of a Hottentot's engaging singly with the fiercest wild beasts, and killing them ; but usually the whole kraal or village assemble, when a wild beast is discovered in their neighbourhood, and, dividing themselves in small parties, endeavour to surround him. Having found their enemy, they usually set up a great cry, at which the frightened animal endeavours to break through and escape them : if it prove to be a rhinoceros, an elk, or elephant, they throw their lances at him, darts and arrows being too weak to pierce through their thick hides : if the beast be not killed at the first discharge, they repeat the attack, and load him with their spears ; and, as he runs with all his rage at the persons who wound him, those in his rear follow him close, and ply him with their spears, on whom he turns again, but is overpowered by his enemies, who constantly return to the charge, when his back is towards them, and scarce ever fail of bringing the creature down, before he has taken his revenge on any of them. How hazardous soever such an engagement may appear to an European, these people make it their sport ; and have this advantage, that they are exceeding swift of foot, and scarce ever miss the mark they aim at with their spears : if one of them is hard pressed by the brute, he is sure to be relieved by his companions, who never quit the field till the beast is killed, or makes his escape : though they sometimes dexterously avoid the adversary, they immediately return to the charge, subduing the fiercest either by stratagem or force. When attacking a lion, a leopard, or a tyger,

their darts and arrows are of service to them; and therefore they begin the engagement at a greater distance, than when they charge an elephant or rhinoceros; and the creature has a wood of darts and arrows upon his back, before he can approach his enemies, which make him fret and rage and fly at them with the greatest fury; but those he attacks, nimbly avoid his paws, while others pursue him, and finish the conquest with their spears. Sometimes a lion takes to his heels, with abundance of poisoned darts and arrows in his flesh: but, the poison beginning to operate, he soon falls, and becomes a prey to those he would have preyed upon. The elephant, the rhinoceros, and the elk, are frequently taken in traps and pitfalls, without any manner of hazard. The elephants are observed to go in great companies to water, following in a file one after another, and usually take the same road till they are disturbed: the Hottentots therefore dig pits in their paths, about eight feet deep, and four and five over; in which they fix sharp stakes pointed with iron, and then cover the pit with small sticks and turf, so as it is not discernable: and as these animals usually keep in one track, frequently one or other of them falls in with his fore feet into the pit, and the stake pierces his body; the more he struggles, the deeper the weight of his monstrous body fixes him on the stake. When the rest of the herd observe the misfortune of their companion, and find he cannot disengage himself, they immediately abandon him: whereupon the Hottentots, who lie concealed, in expectation of the success of their stratagem, approach the wounded beast, stab him with their spears, and cut his largest veins, so that he soon expires; whereupon they cut him to pieces, and, carrying the flesh home, feast upon it as long as it lasts. His teeth they make into rings for their arms, and, when they have any ivory to spare, dispose of it to the Europeans. The rhinoceros and elk are frequently taken in pitfalls, as the elephants are. The Hottentot, who kills any of these, or a lion, leopard, or tyger, singly, has the highest honour conferred upon

upon him, and several privileges, which belong only to such intrepid heroes. At his return from his hazardous and important service, the men of the kraal depute one of the seniors to congratulate him on his victory, and desire that he will honour them with his presence; whereupon he follows the old deputy to the assembly, whom he finds, according to custom, sitting upon their heels in a circle; and, a mat of distinction being laid for him in the center, he sets himself down upon it: after which the old deputy urines plentifully upon him, which the hero rubs in with great eagerness, having first scratched the grease off his skin with his nails; the deputy all this while pronouncing some words unintelligible to any but themselves. After this, they light a pipe of tobacco, which they smoke and hand one to another till there remain nothing but ashes in the pipe, and these the old deputy strews over the gallant man, who rubs them in as they fall upon him, not suffering the least dust to be lost. After which the neighbours having severally congratulated him on his advancement to the high honour, they disperse, and go to their respective tents. The conqueror, afterwards, fastens the bladder of the furious beast he has killed to his hair, which he ever after wears as a badge of his knight-hood; and is from that time esteemed by every one a brave man, and a benefactor to his country. When retired to his tent, his neighbours seem to vie which of them shall oblige him most, and are, for the next three days, continually sending him one delicious morsel or other; nor do they call upon him to perform duty during that time, but suffer him to indulge his ease: but, what is still more unaccountable, his wife, or wives, (for he may have more than one) are not allowed to come near him for three days after this honour is conferred on him; but they are forced to ramble about the fields, and to keep to a spare diet, lest they should, as Mr. Kolben surmises, tempt the husbands to their embraces: but on the third day in the evening, we are told the women return to the tent, are received with the utmost joy and tenderness; mutual congratulations pass between

tween them; a fat sheep is killed, and their neighbours invited to the feast, where the prowess of the hero, and the honour he has obtained, are the chief subject of their conversation.

There is scarce any wild beast, but the flesh is good eating, if it be not killed with poisonous weapons; but the tyger is the most delicious morsel; and as the whole kraal partake of the feast, the person who kills him meets with a double share of praise, as he both rids the country of an enemy, and pleases their palates. But to return to the field sports of the Hottentots: when they hunt a deer, a wild goat, or a hare, they go singly, or but two or three in company, armed only with a dart or two, and seldom miss the game they throw at: yet, as has been observed already, so long as they have any manner of food left, if it be but the raw hides of cattle, or shoe soles, they will hardly be persuaded to stir to get more; though it is true, when they apprehend their cattle in danger from wild beasts, no people are more active, or pursue the chase of them with greater alacrity and bravery. From hunting, we proceed to treat of their fishing; at which they are very expert; taking fish with augles, nets, and spears; and they get a certain fish, called rock-fish, particularly by groping the holes of the rocks near the shore, when the tide is out: these are mightily admired by the Europeans; but having no scales, the Hottentots will not eat them.

The manner of the Hottentots swimming, is as particular as of his fishing; for he stands upright in the sea, and rather walks and treads the water, than swims upon it, his head, neck, and shoulders being quite above the waves, as well as his arms, and yet they move faster in the water than any European can; even in a storm, when the waves run high they will venture into the sea, rising and falling with the waves like a cork.

The next thing we shall notice, is the marriages of the Hottentots: and it seems every young fellow has such regard to the advice of his father, (or rather the laws and customs of the country require it) that he al-

ways

...rs
...nd
...eir
...RO
...od
...but
...mole
...him
...rids
...ates.
...ots :
...they
...only
...they
...long
...t the
...ly be
...when
...east,
...them
...g, we
...very
...and
...ly by
...n the
...Euro-
...ll not
...par-
...n the
...wims
...quite
...move
...in a
...into
...ork,
...es of
...w has
...r the
...e al-
...ways



1 Tiger..... 2 Lion..... 3 Lioness.....

way
with
fath
ther
talk
of t
havi
ately
his f
be a
acqu
as fl
can l
gling
the t
gin l
low,
then
herfe
morn
make
is his
cerem
more
dinne
resort
of go
as is u
killed
greafe
themf
add to
chalk,
ready,
(for a
wome
middle
of her
cle, an
map ru

ways consults the old man before he enters into a treaty with his mistress, and if he approves the match, the father and son, in the first place, pay a visit to the father of the damsel, with whom having smoked, and talked of indifferent things for some time, the father of the lover opens the matter to the virgin's father, who having consulted his wife, returns an answer immediately to the proposal: if it be rejected, the lover and his father retire without more words; but if the offer be approved by the old folks, the damsel is called, and acquainted, that they have provided a husband for her; as she must submit to their determination, unless she can hold her lover at arms end, after a night's struggling; for we are told, that when the parents are agreed, the two young people are put together, and if the virgin loses her maidenhead, she must have the young fellow, though she be never so averse to the match: but then she is permitted to pinch and scratch, and defend herself as well as she can; and if she holds out till morning, the lover returns without his mistress, and makes no further attempts; but if he subdues her, she is his wife to all intents and purposes, without further ceremony; and the next day the man kills a fat ox, or more, according to his circumstances, for the wedding dinner, and the entertainment of their friends, who resort to them upon the occasion, bringing abundance of good wishes for the happiness of the married couple, as is usual among politer people. The ox is no sooner killed, but the company get each some of the fat, and grease themselves with it from head to foot, powdering themselves afterwards with buchu, and the women, to add to their charms, make red spots with oker, or red chalk, on their black faces. The entertainment being ready, the men form a circle in the area of the kraal (for a large company cannot sit within doors) and the women form another; the bridegroom sitting in the middle of the men's circle, and the bride in the center of her own sex. Then the priest enters the men's circle, and urines upon the bridegroom, which the young man rubs in very joyfully. He then goes to the ladies circle,

circle, where he does the bride the same favour. Then the old man goes from the bride to the bridegroom, till he has exhausted all his store. The priest then pronounces his benediction in these words: "That they may live long and happily together; that they may have a son before the end of the year; and that he may prove a brave man, and an expert huntsman, and the like." After which, the meat is served up in earthen pots glazed with grease: and some of them having knives since the Europeans came amongst them, they divide their meat pretty decently; but more of them make use of their teeth and claws, pulling it to pieces, and eating it as voraciously as so many dogs, having neither plates or napkins than the stinking corners of the napkins they wear; and sea shells without handles usually serve them for spoons. When they have dined, a pipe is filled with tobacco, which they smoke all round, every one taking two or three whiffs, and then handing it to the next. It is singular, that though the Hottentots are immoderately fond of spirituous liquors, music and dancing, yet they do not drink the first, nor practise the latter at weddings.

The Hottentots allow of polygamy; but seldom have more than three wives at a time; and it seems it is death to marry or lie with a first or second cousin, or any near relation. A father seldom gives his son more than two or three cows, and as many sheep, upon his marriage, and with these he must make his way in the world; and we do not find they give more with their daughters than a cow, or a couple of sheep; but the latter are to be returned to the father, if the bride dies without having had any children: on the contrary, if she ever bore any children to her husband, the portion becomes his, even though the children are defunct. They do not leave their daughters, or younger sons, any thing when they die; but all the children depend upon the eldest brother, and are his servants, or rather slaves, when the father is dead, unless the eldest brother infranchise them; nor has the mother any thing to subsist on, but what the eldest son allows her. Their being no great

gr
lov
ain
poc
no
dau
tim
and
ther
ficie
the
the
as he
neve
his f
busin
after
new
share
week
the m
When
keep l
greate
tle, m
morn
and bo
lies inc
trouble
for him
has, st
making
them.
in the f
do, at
he does
a huntin
piece of
ten; and
it two o
No, 1

great fortunes among them, they match purely for love; an agreeable companion is all their greatest men aim at: their chiefs intermarry frequently with the poorest man's daughter; and a brave fellow, who has no fortune, does not despair of matching with the daughter of a prince. A widow, who marries a second time, is obliged to cut off a joint of one of her fingers; and so for every husband she marries after the first. Either man or woman may be divorced, on shewing sufficient cause before the captain and the rest of the kraal; the woman, however, must not marry again, though the man is allowed to marry, and have as many wives as he pleases at the same time. A young Hottentot never is master of a hut or tent till he marries, unless his father dies and leaves him one: therefore the first business the bride and bridegroom apply themselves to, after their marriage feast, is to erect a tent or hut of all new materials, in which work the woman has as great a share as the man; and this taking them up about a week's time, the new married couple are entertained in the mean time in the tents of some of their relations. When they resort to their new apartment, and come to keep house together, the wife seems to have much the greatest share of the trouble of it: she foddors the cattle, milks them, cuts out the firing, searches every morning for roots for their food, brings them home, and boils or broils them, while the drone of a husband lies indolently at home, and will scarce give himself the trouble of getting up to eat when the food is provided for him by the drudge his wife. The more wives he has, still the more indolent life he leads, the care of making provision for the family being thrown upon them. It is said he will, in his turn, attend his cattle in the field; but expects every one of his wives should do, at least, as much towards taking care of them as he does. He will also, sometimes, but very rarely, go a hunting with the men of his kraal, and bring home a piece of venison, or a dish of fish; but this is not often; and if he is of any handicraft trade, he may work at it two or three hours in a week, and instruct his chil-

dren in the art. He also takes upon him to sell his cattle, and purchase tobacco, and strong liquors of the Dutch, with necessary tools, beads and other ornaments, for which the Hottentots barter away their cattle: their wives are not permitted to intermeddle in the business of buying and selling, this being the sole prerogative of the man. When a woman brings a living son into the world, there is great rejoicing; but the first thing they do with the child, is to daub it all over with cow-dung; then they lay it before the fire, or in the sun, till the dung is dried: after which they rub it off, and wash the child with the juice of certain herbs, laying it in the sun, or before the fire again, till the liquor is dried in, after which they anoint the child from head to foot with butter, or sheeps fat melted, which is dried in as the juice was: and this custom of anointing their bodies with fat, they retain afterwards as long as they live. After the child has been thus smeared and greased, the mother gives it what name she thinks proper, which is usually the name of some wild beast, or domestic animal. When the woman is well again, and able to leave her hut, she rubs herself all over with cow-dung; and this filthy daubing is by these delicate people termed a purification. Being thus delightfully perfumed, and elegantly decorated with sheep's guts, she is permitted to go abroad, or to see company at home.

If the woman has twins, and they are girls, the man proposes it to the kraal, that he may expose one of them, either upon pretence of poverty, or that his wife has not milk for them both; and this they usually indulge one another in; they do the same when they have a boy or a girl; but always preserve the boys, though they happen to have two at a birth. The exposed child is carried to a distance from the kraal; and if they can find a cave or hole in the earth, that some wild beast has made, they put the child alive into it; and then having stopped up the mouth of the den with stones or earth, leave it there to starve: if they cannot meet such a cavity, they tie the infant to the lower bough

bo
wh
do
the
a b
mak
con
wit
fir
T
depr
form
pear
ver
joici
serve
the v
abfur
know
run
their
wher
pract
and
mori
being
men
and f
sions,
distan
the ci
the ac
acqu
the kr
which
ture.
and w
compa
the fo
him, t

bough of a tree, or leave it in some thicket of bushes, where it is frequently destroyed by wild beasts. They do not deal thus, however, as has been observed, by their male children: on the birth of a boy, they kill a bullock; and if they have twins, two bullocks; and make an entertainment for all the neighbourhood, who congratulate the parents on their good fortune; and, as with us, the greatest rejoicings are on the birth of the first son.

The males, at about ten years of age, are always deprived of their left testicle: the operation is performed with a dexterity that would surprize an European surgeon, and bad consequences are seldom or never known to ensue. A sheep is killed, and great rejoicings are made upon the occasion; but it is to be observed, that the men devour all the meat, and allow the women nothing but the broth. The reason of this absurd custom of mutilating their male youth is unknown: some of the Hottentots say, it is to make them run swift; but the greatest part of these people give their general reason, which they use upon all occasions, when they are unable to account for any of their absurd practices; namely, That it is the Hottentot custom; and has been practised by their ancestors time immemorial. At the age of eighteen, the male Hottentots, being deemed men, are admitted into male society: the men of the village (if it may be so called) squat down, and form a circle, as is usual upon most public occasions, the youth squats down without the circle, at some distance. The oldest man of the kraal then rises from the circle, and, having obtained the general consent for the admission of a new member, he goes to the youth, acquaints him with the determination of the men of the kraal, and concludes his harangue with some verses, which admonish him to behave like a man for the future. The youth being then daubed with soot and fat, and well sprinkled with urine, is congratulated by the company in general in a kind of chorus, which contains the following wishes: that good fortune may attend him, that he may live long, and thrive daily; that he

may soon have a beard, and many children; till it is universally allowed he is a useful man to the nation: A feast concludes the ceremony; but the youth himself is not permitted to participate of any part thereof till all the rest are served. Having been thus admitted into male society, it is expected that he should behave ill to women in general, and to his mother in particular, in order to evince his contempt of every thing feminine. Indeed it is usual for a youth as soon as admitted, to go to his mother's hut, and cudgel her heartily, for which he is highly applauded by the whole kraal; and even the suffering parent herself admires him for his spirit, and protests that the blows do not give her so much pain, as the thoughts of having brought such a mettlesome son into the world afford her pleasure. The more ill treatment he gives his mother, the more esteem he obtains; and every time he strikes her she is in the highest raptures, and thanks providence for having blessed her with such a spirited child. So egregiously will custom counteract the very dictates of nature, and impose upon the understanding of the ignorant.

It may be proper now to say something of those officers amongst them, which the Europeans generally denominate their priests. These persons are called *furri* or *master*, and are elected by every kraal: they are the men who perform the ceremony of making water at their weddings, and other festivals; the *furri* also is the person who extracts the left testicle from the young males at eight years of age; for all which he has no stated revenue, but a present now and then of a calf or a lamb, and makes one at all their entertainments. Every kraal also has its physician, as well as its priest, who are persons that have some skill in physic and surgery, and particularly in the virtues of salutary herbs; these also are chosen by a majority of voices, and make it their business to look after the people's health: but have no other reward neither for their pains, than voluntary presents. And such is the opinion of the Hottentots of these physicians, that, if they cannot effect a cure, they conclude they are certainly bewitched; as
the

the
up
for
the
Th
sam
saw
not
tion
ty:
cup
very
the
main
he p
cifo
havi
cup
the p
If th
not f
cup a
cupp
ward
dried
and i
ment
effect
achs,
weath
when
usuall
plicati
They
finger
oftner
which
and th
ping t
which

the doctor himself also never fails to give out : whereupon application is made to some pretended conjurer for relief ; and if the patient happens to recover, it gives the cunning man, as we call him, a mighty reputation. The physician and surgeon, as has been hinted, is the same person ; and though these gentlemen scarce ever saw a body dissected, it is said, they have pretty good notions of anatomy : they cup, bleed, make amputations, and restore dislocated limbs, with great dexterity : cholicks and pains in the stomach they relieve by cupping. Their cup is an horn of an ox, the edges cut very smooth : the doctor, having sucked the part where the pain lies, claps on the cup ; and, after it has remained some time, till he thinks the part is insensible, he pulls off the horn-cup, and makes two or three incisions, half an inch in length, with a common knife, having no other instrument : after which, he applies the cup again, which falls off when it is full of blood, but the patient, it is said, suffers great pain in the operation. If the pain removes to another part, they rub it with not fat ; and, if that does not ease the pain, they use the cup again on the part last affected ; and, if the second cupping does not relieve the patient, they give him inward medicines, being infusions or powders of certain dried roots and herbs. They let blood in plethories and indispositions of that kind, having no other instrument than a common knife ; and, if bleeding will not effect the cure, they give the patient physic. For head-achs, which they are pretty much subject to in calm weather, they shave their heads in furrows, as they do when they are in mourning ; but a brisk gale of wind usually carries off the head-ach, without any other application ; and this they do not often want at the cape. They seldom make any other amputations, than of the fingers of such women as marry a second time, or oftner : and, in this case, they bind the joint below that which is to be cut off very tight, with a dried sinew, and then cut off the joint at once with a knife, stopping the blood with the juice of myrrh-leaves ; after which, they wrap up the finger in some healing herbs,

and never any part of the finger receives any hurt beyond the amputation. They have little or no skill in setting fractured limbs; but are pretty dexterous at restoring of dislocations.

The Hottentot physician, in case he meets with a foul stomach, gives the juice of aloe leaves; and, if one dose will not do, repeats it two or three days; and, for any inward ail, they give chiefly the powders, or infusions of wild sage, wild figs and fig leaves, buchu, garlic or fennel: but, whatever the disease be, it seems the patient never fails to sacrifice a bullock, or a sheep, upon his recovery.

The Hottentots are exceedingly superstitious, and fond of divination. In order to know the fate of a sick person, they slay a sheep alive; after having its skin intirely taken off, if the poor animal is able to get up and run away, it is deemed a propitious omen; but, on the contrary, if the excruciating pain kills it, they imagine that the patient will certainly die, and accordingly give him up intirely to nature, without taking any further care of him.

Whatever they believe of departed souls, they have no notion either of heaven or hell, or of a state of rewards or punishments; this is evident from the behaviour of a dying Hottentot, and those about him; neither he or his friends offer up any prayers to their gods for the salvation of his soul; or even mention the state of departed souls, or their apprehensions of his being happy or miserable after death: however, they set up terrible howlings and shriekings, when the sick man is in his last agonies; and yet these very people are frequently guilty of murdering their antient parents, as well as their innocent children; for when the father of a family is become perfectly useles and superannuated, he is obliged to assign over his stock of cattle, and every thing else he has in the world, to his eldest son; and in default of sons, to his next heir male: after which, the heir erects a tent or hut in some unfrequented place, a good distance from the kraal or camp he belongs to; and, having assembled the men of the kraal, acquaints them

the
and
hud
Wh
to t
shee
men
all t
the
vou
laid
last h
aliv
take
for
neve
neve
death
of, t
they
noth
assign
tots a
barit
to fun
and t
dispat
tende
wretc
inhun
on th
sided
of one
part c
and, i
from s
he is a
leads u
the pe
The

them with the condition of his superannuated relation, and desires their consent to expose him in the distant hut; to which the kraal scarce ever refuse their consent. Whereupon a day being appointed to carry the old man to the solitary tent, the heir kills an ox, and two or three sheep, and invites the whole village to feast and be merry with him; and at the end of the entertainment, all the neighbourhood come and take a formal leave of the old wretch, thus condemned to be starved or devoured by wild beasts: then the unfortunate creature is laid upon one of their carriage oxen, and carried to his last home, attended to the place, where he is to be buried alive, by most of his neighbours. The old man being taken down, and set in the middle of the hut provided for him, the company return to their kraal, and he never sees the face of a human creature afterwards; they never so much as enquire whether he was starved to death, or devoured by wild beasts: he is no more thought of, than if he had never been. In the same manner they deal with a superannuated mother; only as she has nothing she can call her own, she has not the trouble of assigning her effects to her son. Whenever the Hottentots are upbraided with this unparalleled piece of barbarity, they reply, it would be a much greater cruelty to suffer an old creature to languish out a miserable life, and to be many years a dying, than to make this quick dispatch with them; and that it is out of their extreme tenderness they put an end to the lives of these old wretches; all the arguments in the world against the inhumanity of the custom, can make no impression on them: and, indeed, as long as the Dutch have resided at the cape, they have not been able to break them of one single custom, or prevail with them to alter any part of their conduct, how barbarous or absurd soever: and, it seems, the captain of a kraal is not exempted from seeing his funeral solemnized in this manner, while he is alive, if he happens to become useless. And this leads us to treat of such funerals as are solemnized after the person is really dead.

The sick man, having resigned his breath, is immediately

mediately bundled up, neck and heels together, in his sheep-skin mantle, exceeding close; so that no part of the corpse appears: then the captain of the kraal with some of the seniors, search the neighbouring country for some cavity in a rock, or the den of a wild beast, to bury it in, never digging a grave, if they can find one of these within a moderate distance. After which, the whole kraal, men and women, prepare to attend the corpse, seldom permitting it to remain above ground more than six hours. When all things are ready, all the neighbourhood assemble before the door of the deceased, the men sitting down on their heels in one circle, and resting their elbows on their knees (their usual posture) as the women do in another: here they clap their hands, and howl, crying, Bo, bo, bo; (i. e. father) lamenting their loss. The corpse being then brought out on that side the tent, where the person died, and not at the door, the bearers carry him in their arms to the grave, the men and women follow it in different parties, but without any manner of order, crying all the way, Bo, bo, bo! and wringing their hands, and performing a thousand ridiculous gestures and grimaces, which is frequently the subject of the Dutchmen's mirth; it being impossible, it is said, to forbear laughing at the antic tricks they shew on such an occasion. Having put the corpse into the cavity prepared for it, they stop up the mouth of it with ant hills, stones, and pieces of wood, believing the ants will feed on the corpse, and soon consume it. The grave being stopped up, the men and women rendezvous again before the tent of the deceased, where they repeat their howling, and frequently call upon the name of their departed friend: after which two of the oldest men get up; and one of them going into the circle of the men, and the other into the circle of the women, urine upon every one of the company; and, where the kraals are so very large, that two cannot find water enough for this ceremony, they double or treble the number. Then the old men go into the tent of the deceased; and, having taken up some ashes from the

the
the
cea
aga
tha
me
on
buc
wea
stin
also
it fe
dece
and
inch
betw
It
ligio
in hi
topic
ment
whet
most
affirm
stile C
his pl
that C
they h
give t
havin
poste
They
and th
has th
pray t
to affe
moon
distort
looks,
No.

the fire-place, they sprinkle them upon the bodies of the people, blessing them as they go: and, if the deceased was a person of distinction, this is acted over again several days. But we should have remembered, that the ceremony always concludes with an entertainment. If the deceased had any cattle, a sheep is killed on the occasion; and the caul being powdered with buchu, is tied about the heir's neck, who is forced to wear it while it rots off, which is no great penance, all stinks being perfumes to a Hottentot. All the relations also wear the cauls of sheep about their necks; which it seems is their mourning, unless the children of the deceased are so poor, that they cannot kill a sheep; and then they shave their heads in furrows of about an inch broad, leaving the hair on of the same breadth between every furrow.

It is not an easy matter to come at a Hottentot's religious notions; he is sparing of his words, and laconic in his answers upon all occasions; but when religious topics are introduced, he generally conceals his sentiments in silence. Some on this account have doubted whether the Hottentots have any religion at all: but the most intelligent among the Dutch at the cape positively affirm, that they believe in a Supreme Being, whom they stile Gounya Taquoa, or God of gods, and fancy that his place of residence is beyond the moon. They allow that Gounya Taquoa is a humane benevolent being, yet they have no mode of worshipping him; for which they give this reason, "That he cursed their first parents for having greatly offended him, on which account their posterity have never from that time paid him adoration." They believe that the moon is an inferior visible god, and the representative of the high and invisible: that she has the direction of the weather; and therefore they pray to her when it is unseasonable. They never fail to assemble and worship this planet at the new and full moon, let the weather be never so bad; and though they distort their bodies, grin and put on very frightful looks, crying and howling in a terrible manner, yet they

have some expressions that shew their veneration and dependance on this inferior deity ; as, ' Mutschi Atze, I salute you ; you are welcome : Cheraqua kaka chori Ounqua, grant us pasture for our cattle and plenty of milk.' These and other prayers to the moon they repeat, frequently dancing and clapping their hands all the while ; and, at the end of every dance, crying, Ho, ho, ho, ho ! raising and falling their voices, and using abundance of odd gestures, that appear ridiculous to European spectators ; and which no doubt, made them at first, before they knew any thing of their language, conclude, that this could not be the effect of devotion, especially when the people themselves told them, it was not an act of religion, but only intended for their diversion. They continue thus shouting, singing and dancing, with prostrations on the earth, the whole night, and even part of the next day, with some short intervals, never resting, unless they are quite spent with the violence of the action ; and then they squat down upon their heels, holding their heads between their hands, and resting their elbows on their knees ; and, after a little time, they start up again, and falling to singing and dancing in a circle as before, with all their might.

The Hottentots also adore a fly about the bigness of a hornet, called by some the gold beetle : whenever they see this insect approach their kraal, they all assemble about it, and sing and dance round it while it remains there, strewing over it the powder of buchu, by botanists called *spiræam* ; which when it is dried and pulverized, they always powder themselves with it at festivals. They strew the same powder also over the tops of their tents, and over the whole area of the kraal, as a testimony of their veneration for the adored fly. They sacrifice also two sheep as a thanksgiving for the favour shewn their kraal, believing they shall certainly prosper after such a visit : and, if this insect happens to light upon a tent, they look upon the owner of it for the future as a saint, and pay him more than usual respect.

respect. The best ox of the kraal also is immediately sacrificed, to testify their gratitude to the little winged deity, and to honour the saint he has been pleased thus to distinguish: to whom the entrails of the beast, the choicest morsel in their opinion, with the fat and the caul is presented; and the caul being twisted like a rope, the saint ever after wears it like a collar about his neck day and night, till it putrifies and rots off; and the saint only feasts upon the entrails of the beast, while the rest of the kraal feed upon the joints, that are not in so high esteem among them: with the fat of the sacrifice also the saint anoints his body from time to time, till it is all spent; and, if the fly lights upon a woman she is no less revered by the neighbourhood, and entitled to the like privileges. It is scarce possible to express the agonies the Hottentots are in, if any European attempts to take or kill one of these insects, as the Dutch will sometimes seem to attempt, to put them in a fright: they will beg and pray, and fall prostrate on the ground, to procure the liberty of this little creature, if it falls into a Dutchman's hands; they are on such an occasion, in no less consternation than the Indians near Fort St. George, when the kite, with a white head, which they worship, is in danger. If a soldier takes one of these alive, and threatens to wring the neck of it off, the Indians will gather in crowds about him, and immediately collect the value of a shilling or two, to purchase the liberty of the captive bird they adore. But to return to the Hottentots: they imagine if this little deity should be killed, all the cattle would die of diseases, or be destroyed by wild beasts; and they themselves should be the most miserable of men, and look upon that kraal to be doomed to some imminent misfortune, where this animal seldom appears.

The Hollanders have sent several reverend divines to the cape as missionaries, who have spared no pains to bring the Hottentots off from their idolatry, and induce them to embrace Christianity; even their covetousness and ambition have been applied to, and temporal re-

wards offered them, on condition of their being instructed in the principles of Christianity. But no motives whatever, whether those relating to this or another state, have yet been able to make the least impression on any one of them: they hold fast and hug their ancient superstitions, and will hear of no other religion. The reason that they neither imitate the Europeans in their building, planting or cloathing, is because they imagine themselves to be religiously obliged to follow the customs of their ancestors; and that, if they should deviate from them in the least of these matters, it might make way for a total change of their religion and manners, which they cannot think of without abhorrence. One of the Dutch governors at the cape bred up an Hottentot from his infancy, obliging him to follow the fashions and customs of the Europeans, to be taught several languages, and to be fully instructed in the principles of the Christian religion, cloathing him handsomely, and treating him, in all respects, as a person for whom he had a high esteem; and let him know, that he designed him for some beneficial and honourable employment. The governor afterwards sent him a voyage to Batavia, where he was employed, under the commissary his friend, for some time, till that gentleman died; and then he returned to the Cape of Good Hope: but, having paid a visit to the Hottentots of his relations and acquaintance, he threw off all his fine cloaths, bundled them up, and laid them at the governor's feet, and desired he would give him leave to renounce his Christianity, and live and die in the religion and customs of his ancestors; only begged the governor would give him leave to keep the hanger and collar he wore for his sake; which while the governor was deliberating with himself upon, scarce believing the fellow to be in earnest, the young Hottentot took the opportunity of running away, and never came near the cape afterwards, thinking himself extremely happy that he had exchanged his European cloaths for a sheep skin, and the rest of the Hottentots dress and ornaments:

the

the
the
hit
pea
gre
mea
cou
mak
lear
ing
after
at t
pear
tle a
cape
T
in r
darts
the v
they
them
the l
Terr
tern
Dut
eleph
cattle
and a
bacco
the r
ever
Dut
cape
find
they
cape,
ing p
his tr

the English East India company, we are informed, made the like experiment, bringing over two of that nation hither, whom they cloathed decently after the European manner, and used them, in all respects, with the greatest goodness and gentleness, hoping, by that means, to be better informed of the condition of their country, and whether it might be worth the while to make a settlement there: but the two Hottentots only learnt English enough to bewail their misfortune in being brought from their country and their friends; and, after two years trial of them, being again set on shore at the cape, they immediately stripped off their European cloaths, and, having taken up the sheep skin mantle again, rejoiced beyond measure for their happy escape from the English.

The poor Hottentots sometimes employ themselves in making arms, viz. bows and arrows, lances and darts, bartering them with the rich for cattle, to begin the world with: others get elephants teeth, and what they do not use in making rings and ornaments for themselves, are generally disposed of, it is thought, to the Portuguese and other Europeans, who touch at Terra de Natal, and other parts of the eastern or western coast. The Hottentots sell very few teeth to the Dutch; though it is manifest they kill abundance of elephants: they supply the Hollanders however with cattle, and take wine, brandy or tobacco, in return; and an ox may be purchased of them for a pound of tobacco, and a large sheep for half a pound. As to coin, the reader will conclude they have none; nor do they ever see any, unless some small pieces of money the Dutch sometimes give them for their wages at the cape; and it must not be forgot, that the Hottentots find abundance of ostrich's eggs in the sand, which they barter with the sea-faring men, that touch at the cape, for brandy and tobacco; every sailor almost being proud of bringing home one of these egg shells to his friends, after he has fried and eaten the yolk, which makes

makes a large pancake, and is pretty good food, but rather of the strongest.

Their butchers are said to be great artists in their way, and to handle a knife as dexterously as an anatomist: having tied the hind and fore legs of a sheep, they throw the creature on his back, and with cords, two of them extend it to its full stretch, while a third rips it up; so that all the entrails appear: then, with one hand, he tears the guts from the carcase, and, with the other, stirs the blood, avoiding as much as he can the breaking any of the blood-vessels about the heart; so that the sheep is a long time a dying: in the mean time he gives the guts to another, who just rids them of the filth, and rinses them in water, and part of them are broiled and eaten amongst them, before the sheep is well dead: having scooped the blood out of the body of the animal with their hands or sea shells, they cut the rest of the guts in small pieces, and stew them in the blood, which is the Hottentots favourite dish. An ox also is killed in the same barbarous manner; being thrown upon his back, and his legs extended with cords, he is ripped up, and his guts taken out first; in which cruel operation the beast is half an hour a dying: they separate the parts with great exactness, dividing the flesh, the bones, the membranes, muscles, veins, and arteries, and laying them in several parcels every thing entire. The bones also are taken out of the flesh, and laid together in such order, that they might be easily formed into an exact skeleton: these they boil by themselves, and get the marrow out of them, with which they anoint their bodies. Of the sheep skin, as has been observed already, they make a mantle, if it be large; but, if it is small, they cut it into thongs, to adorn their women's legs: and the hide of an ox serves either to cover their tents, or to make girts and straps of, with which they bind their baggage on their carriage oxen when they decamp; and, if they have no other use for their ox-hides, they lay them by, and eat them when they want other food.

They

They have another artificer, who is both felmonger and taylor: that is, he dresses skins after their way, and then makes them into mantles: he takes a sheep skin just flayed off, and, rubbing it well with fat, the skin becomes tough and smooth; and, if it be for one of his countrymen, he rubs it over also with fresh cow-dung, and lays it in the sun till it is dry: then he rubs it with fat and cow dung again; which he repeats several times, till it becomes perfectly black, and stinks so, that no European can bear it; and then, with a little shaping and sewing, it is a compleat mantle for a Hottentot: but, if it be dressed for a Dutchman, he only rubs the skin well with fat, which secures the wool from coming off. If he be to dress an ox's hide, he rubs the hairy side with wood ashes; then sprinkling it with water, rolls it up, and lays it a day or two in the sun; which expedients effectually brings off the hair; this skin is then well greased, stretched out, and dried again, when it is deemed good leather.

Their smiths do not only fashion their iron, but melt it from the ore: they find plenty of iron stones in several parts of their country; and having got a heap of these, they put them into a hole in the ground, heated and prepared for their purpose: then they make a fire over the stones, which they supply with fuel, and keep up till the iron melts; and then it runs into another hole, which they make for a receiver, a little lower than the first: as soon as the iron in the receiver is cold they break it to pieces with stones; and, heating the pieces again in other fires, beat them with stones, till they shape them into the heads of lances, darts, arrows, and bows, and such weapons as they use; for they scarce ever form any other utensils, but arms of this metal: they get the hardest flat stone, according to monsieur Vogel, and, laying the iron upon it, as upon an anvil, beat it with another round stone, which serves them for a hammer; then they grind it upon the flat stone, and polish it as nicely as any European artificer could do with all his tools: they have some copper ore too,

which

which they melt in like manner; but they make only toys and ornaments for their drefs of this metal: nor, indeed, do they ever work in iron, but when they want weapons. They would never labour, if their necessities did not sometimes compel them to it: but, when they do, no people work harder, or more indefatigably; for they never leave a piece of work, till they have finished it.

The ivory-turner makes the ivory rings that are worn ornamentally about the arms; and considering that his only tool is a common clasp knife, which he procures from the Dutch, the wormanhip has great merit.

The potter or maker of earthen vessels is another art; but this, it seems, they are all dexterous at, every family making the pots and pans they want. For these they use only the earth of ant-hills, clearing them of all sand and gravel; after which, they work it together with the bruised ant eggs, that are said to constitute an extraordinary cement. When they have moulded these materials into a kind of paste, they take as much of them as will make one of their pots, and fashion it by hand upon a flat stone, making it of the form of a Roman urn; then they smooth it within and without very carefully, not leaving the least roughness upon the surface; and, having dried it in the sun two or three days, they put the pot into a hole in the ground, and burn it, by making a fire over it; and, when they take it out, it appears perfectly black: every family also make their own mats, with which they cover their tents or huts; but this is chiefly the business of the women: they gather the flags and rushes by the river side, or weave or plat them into mats so closely, it is said, that neither the weather or light can penetrate them.

The last artificer we shall mention is the rope-maker, who has no better materials, than such flags and rushes as the mats are made of; and yet they appear almost as strong as those made of hemp: the Dutch, at the cape, buy

b
ri
or
ca
pl
th
we
th
co
ba
an
lan
no
kra
wi
ma
ple
sect
buf
giv
hol
seiz
T
one
bein
the
seem
they
they
gree
W
for t
lamb
hear
beast
ho,
likha
quan
No

buy and use them in ploughing, and in draught-carriages.

As to the way of travelling here, the natives all travel on foot, except the aged and infirm; and these are carried on their baggage oxen. As there are no inns or places for refreshment, the travelling Hottentot calls at the kraals in his way, where he meets with a hearty welcome from his countrymen, who endeavour to shew their hospitality to strangers, whether of their own country or of Europe. Such indeed is the general urbanity of these people, and their strict integrity when any confidence is placed in them, that when the Hollanders travel either on foot or horseback, if they cannot reach an European settlement, they also call at the kraals of the Hottentots, where they are complimented with a hut, and such provision as they have, or they may lie in the area of the kraal, in the open air, if they please, and the weather be good; and here they are secure, both from robbers and wild beasts; for the bush-banditti on the mountains are dangerous, as they give no quarter; but the Hottentot nations in general hold them in abhorrence, and unanimously concur in seizing and punishing them upon all occasions.

Their language is very inarticulate and defective; one word signifies several things, the definitive meaning being determined by the manner of pronouncing; and the pronounciation is so harsh and confused, that they seem to stammer in all they speak. Hence, though they are easily taught to understand other languages, they can seldom be brought to speak them with any degree of intelligibility.

We shall here subjoin a small Hottentot vocabulary, for the satisfaction of the curious; khauna, signifies a lamb; kgou, a goose; bunqvaa, trees: knomm, to hear; quaqua, a pheasant; tkaka, a whale; horri, beasts in general; knabou, a fowling piece; qua-arah, a wild ox; ounequa, the arms; quienkha, to fall; likhancee, a dog; konkequa, a captain; quas, the neck; quan, the heart; kgoyes, a buck or doe; tikquoa, a

god ; komma, a house ; khoaa, a cat, kowkuri, iron ; konkerey, a hen ; thoukou, a dark night ; tkoume, rice ; ghoundie, a sheep ; toya, the wind ; tkaa, a valley ; tkaonoklau, gunpowder ; kamkamma, the earth ; quaouw, thunder ; duckatere, a duck ; kamma, water ; quayha, an ass ; naew, the ears ; kirri, a stick ; nombha, the beard ; ka-a, to drink ; duriesfa, an ox ; hek-kaa, an ox of burden ; eunvie, butter ; houteo, a sea-dog ; bikgua, the head ; kamma, a stag ; kou, a pigeon ; anthuri, to-morrow ; kou, a tooth ; khamouna, the devil ; hakqua, a horse ; koo, a son ; kammo, a stream ; tika, grass ; toqua, a wolf ; koanqua, the mouth ; khou, a peacock ; gona, a boy ; gois, a girl ; khoakamma, a baboon ; kerhanchou, a star ; mu, an eye ; tquassouw, a tyger.

The Hottentots have only ten numerical terms, which they repeat twice to express the multiplication of the first term, and three times to express the remultiplication of the latter. Their terms are : q'kui, one ; k'kam, two ; kouna, three ; kakka, four ; koo, five ; nanni, six ; hounko, seven ; khiffi, eight ; khaffi, nine ; ghiffi, ten.

Thus have we given a circumstantial and full account of the cape, its inhabitants, productions, and adjacent country ; from whence the French, at Mauritius, are supplied by the Dutch with salted beef, biscuit, flour, and wine : the provisions for which the French contracted this year were five hundred thousand lb. weight of salt beef, four hundred thousand lb. of flour ; four hundred thousand lb. of biscuit, and one thousand two hundred leagers of wine. We have only to add to this account a few observations on the bay, and garrison. The former is large, safe, and exceeding convenient. It is indeed open to the N. W. winds ; but they seldom blow hard ; yet as they sometimes occasion a great sea, the ships moor N. E. and S. W. The S. E. winds blow frequently with great fury, but their direction being right out of the bay prevents them from being dangerous. For the convenience of landing and
shipping

shipping goods, a wharf of wood is run out near the town, to a proper distance. Water is conveyed in pipes to this wharf, and many large boats and hoys are kept by the Company to carry stores and provisions to and from the shipping in the harbour. This bay is covered by a small fort on the E. side of the town, and close to the beach; and is also defended by several outworks and batteries extending along the shore, as well on this side of the town as the other; nevertheless they are by their situation exposed to the shipping, and in a manner defenceless against an enemy of any force by land. As to the garrison, this consists of eight hundred regular troops, besides militia of the country, in which last is comprehended every man able to bear arms. By signals they can alarm the country in a very short time, and when these are made, the militia is to repair immediately to their place of rendezvous in the town.

On Sunday, the 14th of April in the morning, we weighed, stood out of the bay, and anchored at five in the evening under Penguin, or Robin Island. Here we lay all night, and being prevented from sailing by the wind, the captain dispatched a boat to the island for a few trifling articles, which we had omitted to take in at the cape; when our people drew near the shore, they were warned by the Dutch not to land at their peril. At the same time six men, armed with musquets, paraded upon the beach. The commanding officer in the boat did not think it prudent to risk the lives of his men, on account of a few cabbages, and therefore returned without them to the ship. To this island the Dutch at the Cape banish such criminals as are not thought worthy of death, for a certain number of years, according to the nature of their crimes. They are employed as slaves in digging lime-stone, which though scarce upon the continent is here in great abundance. A Danish ship touched at this island, having been refused assistance at the cape, and sending her boat on shore, overpowered the guard, and then took

as many of the criminals as were necessary to navigate her home; for she had lost great part of her crew by sickness. To this incident we attributed our repulse; concluding, that the Dutch, to prevent a similar rescue of their prisoners, had ordered their garrison at this place, not to suffer any boat of foreign nations to land the crew, and come ashore.

On Thursday the 25th, we put to sea, and about four o'clock in the afternoon died our master, Mr. Robert Mollineux, a youth of good parts, but unhappily for his own self preservation too much addicted to intemperance, a habit we would caution all those who undertake long voyages to avoid, if they have any regard to their personal safety. We now continued our voyage without any other remarkable incident; and on Monday the 29th, we crossed our first meridian, having circumnavigated the globe from E. to W. and consequently lost a day, for which upon correcting our reckoning at Batavia, we made an allowance. On Monday the 1st of May, we came to anchor at break of day, before James's fort in the island of St. Helena; and as we proposed to refresh here, Mr. Banks employed his time in visiting the most remarkable places, and in surveying every object worthy of notice.

St. Helena is situated in the Atlantic ocean, in six degrees W. longitude, and sixteen S. latitude; almost in the midway between Africa and America, being twelve hundred miles distant from the former, and eighteen hundred from the latter. It was so named by the Portuguese, who discovered it on St. Helen's-day. This island is 36 miles long, 18 broad, and about 61 in circumference. It is the summit of an immense mountain rising out of the sea, and of a depth unfathomable at a small distance round it. It may be discerned at sea, at above twenty leagues distance, and looks like a castle in the middle of the ocean, whose natural walls are of that height, that there is no scaling them. The small valley called Chapel-valley, in a bay on the east side of it, is defended by a battery of forty or fifty great guns,

guns, planted even with the water; and the waves dashing perpetually on the shore, make it difficult landing even here. There is also one little creek besides, where two or three men may land at a time; but this is now defended by a battery of five or six guns, and rendered inaccessible. No anchorage is to be found any where about the island, but at Chapel-valley bay, and as the wind always sets from the S. E. if a ship overshoots the island ever so little, she cannot recover it again. The seat of volcanoes has been found to be the highest part of the countries in which they are found. Hecla is the highest hill in Iceland; and the Peak of Teneriffe is known to be the covering of subterraneous fire. These are still burning: but there are other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct: among these is St. Helena, where the inequalities of the ground, and its external surface, are evidently the effects of the sinking of the earth; and that this was caused by futerraneous fire, is equally manifest from the stones, for some of them, especially those in the bottom of the valleys, are burnt almost to cinders. This island, as the Endeavour approached it on the windward side, appeared like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by precipices of an amazing height, and consisting of a kind of stone, which shews not the least sign of vegetation: nor is it more promising upon a nearer view. Sailing along shore, we came near the huge cliffs, that seemed to overhang the ship. At length we opened Chapel-valley, which resembles a trench, and in this valley we discovered the town. The sides of it are as naked as the cliffs next the sea; but the bottom is slightly clothed with herbage. In its present cultivated state, such appeared the island to us; and the first hills must be passed, before the country displays its verdure, or any other marks of fertility.

In Chapel-valley, a little beyond the landing place, is a fort where the governor resides with the garrison; and the town stands just by the sea-side. The greater part of the houses are ill built. The church, which

was originally a mean structure, is in ruins; and the market-place nearly in the same condition. The town consists of about forty or fifty buildings, constructed after the English fashion, whither the people of the island resort when any shipping appears, as well to assist in the defence of the island, as to entertain the seamen if they are friends: for the governor has always sentinels, on the highest part of the island, to the windward, who give notice of the approach of all shipping, and guns are thereupon fired, that every man may resort to his post. It is impossible for an enemy to approach by sea in the night time, and if discovered the day before, preparations are speedily made for his reception.

Notwithstanding the island appears a barren rock on every side, yet on the top it is covered with a fine layer of earth, producing grain, fruits, and herbs of various kinds; and the country after we ascended the rock, is diversified with rising hills and plains, plantations of fruit trees and kitchen gardens, among which the houses of the natives are interspersed, and in the open fields are herds of cattle grazing, some of which are fatted to supply the shipping, and the rest furnish the dairies with milk, butter, and cheese. Hogs, goats, turkeys, and all manner of poultry also abound, and the seas are well stored with fish. But amidst all this affluence, the people have neither bread nor wine of their own growth; for though the soil is proper for wheat, yet the rats that harbour in the rocks, and cannot be destroyed, eat up all the seed, before the grain is well out of the ground; and though their vines flourish and produce them grapes enough, yet the latitude is too hot for making wine. This they have therefore from the Canaries, the Madeiras, or the Cape, as well as their flour and malt. Their very houses are some of them brought from Europe ready framed, there being no timber on the island, trees not taking deep root here on account of the rock that lies so near the surface: however, they have underwood enough for necessary uses.

ufes. Besides grapes, they have plantains, bananas, figs, lemons, and fuch other fruits as hot countries ufually produce. They alfo raife kidney beans, and fome other kinds of pulfe in their gardens; and the want of bread they fupply with potatoes and yams.

In the year 1701, there were upon the ifland about two hundred families, moft of them Englifh, or defcended from Englifh parents. Every family has a houfe and plantation on the higher part of the ifland, where they look after their cattle, fruits, and kitchen garden. They fcarce ever come down to the town, unlefs it be to church, or when the fhipping arrives, when moft of the houfes in the valley are converted into punch-houfes, or lodgings for their guefts, to whom they fell their poultry, and other commodities; but they are not fuffered to purchafe any merchandize of the fhips that touch here. Whatever they want of foreign growth or manufacture, they are obliged to buy at the company's warehouse, where twice every month, they may furnifh themfelves with brandy, European or Cape wines, Batavia arrack, malt, beer, fugar, tea, coffee, china, and japan-ware, linen, calicoes, chintz, muflins, ribbands, woollen-cloth and ftuffs, and all manner of cloathing, for which they are allowed fix months credit. Among the very few native productions of this ifland muft be reckoned ebony, though the trees are now nearly extinf. Pieces of this wood are frequently found in the valleys of a fine black colour, and a hardnefs almoft equal to iron; thefe pieces, however, are fo fhort and crooked, that no ufe can be made of them. There are few insects here, but upon the tops of the higheft ridges a fpecies of fnail is found, which has probably been there fince the original creation of their kind. It is indeed very difficult to conceive how any thing not formed here, or brought hither by the diligence of man, could find its way to a place fo fevered from the reft of the world, by fea of immense extent.

The Portugefe, who difcovered this ifland in 1502,
ftored

stored it with hogs, goats, and poultry, and used to touch at it for water and fresh provisions in their return from India; but we do not find they ever planted a colony here; or, if they did, having deserted it afterwards, the English East-India Company took possession of the island A. D. 1600, and held it till 1673, without interruption, when the Dutch took it by surprize. However, the English, commanded by Capt. Munden, recovered it again within the space of a year, and took three Dutch East India ships that lay in the road at the same time. The Hollanders had fortified the landing place, and planted batteries of great guns to prevent a descent; but the English being acquainted with a small creek where only two men could go abreast, climbed up to the top of the rocks in the night time, and appearing next morning at the backs of the Dutch, they threw down their arms, and surrendered the island without striking a stroke: but, as we have before observed, this creek has been since fortified: so that there is now no place where an enemy can make a descent with any probability of success.

The affairs of the East-India Company are managed here by a governor, deputy-governor, and storehouse-keeper, who have certain settled salaries allowed, besides a public table, well furnished, to which all commanders, masters of ships, and eminent passengers are welcome. The natives sometimes call the result of their deliberations severe impositions; and though relief might perhaps be had from the company in England; yet the unavoidable delays in returning answers to addresses at that distance puts the aggrieved under great hardships; and on the other hand, was not the situation of this island very serviceable to our homeward-bound East-India ships, the constant trouble and expence would induce the company to abandon the island; for though it is furnished with the conveniencies of life, the merchants find no other profitable commodities there. The masters of the plantations keep a great many blacks, who, upon severe treatment, hide themselves

themselves for two or three months together, keeping among the rocks by day, and roving at night for provisions: but they are generally discovered and taken.

The children and descendants of white people have not the least red in their cheeks, in all other places near the tropics; but the natives of St. Helena are remarkable for their ruddy complexions and robust constitutions. Their healthfulness may, in general, be ascribed to the following causes. They live on the top of a mountain always open to the sea breezes that constantly blow here: they are usually employed in the most healthful exercises of gardening and husbandry; the island is frequently refreshed with moderate cooling showers; and no noxious fens, nor salt marshes annoy them. They are used also to climb the steep hill between the town in Chapel-valley and their plantation; which hill is so steep, that, having a ladder in the middle of it, they call it Ladder-hill; and this cannot be avoided without going three or four miles about; so that they seldom want air or exercise, the great preservers of health. As to the genius and temper of these people, they seemed to us the most honest, the most inoffensive, and the most hospitable people we ever met with of English extraction, having scarce any tincture of avarice or ambition. We asked some of them, if they had no curiosity to see the rest of the world, and how they could confine themselves to so small a spot of earth, separated at such a distance from the rest of mankind? They replied, that they enjoyed the necessaries of life in great plenty: they were neither parched with excessive heat, or pinched with cold; they lived in perfect security; in no danger of enemies, of robbers, wild beasts, or rigorous seasons; and were happy in the enjoyment of a continued state of health: that as there were no rich men among them (scarce any planter being worth more than a thousand dollars) so there were no poor in the island, no man being worth

less than four hundred dollars, and consequently not obliged to undergo more labour than was necessary to keep him in health.

Our thoughts were now employed on returning to our native shore; and having sufficiently recruited our stores, on Saturday the 4th of May, we weighed, and sailed out of the road in company with the Portland man-of-war, and his convoy, consisting of twelve sail of East Indiamen. With this fleet we continued our course for England until Friday the 10th, when perceiving they out-sailed us, and consequently might make their port before us, Capt. Cook, for this reason, made the signal to speak with the Portland, upon which Capt. Elliot came on board the Endeavour; to whom a letter for the admiralty was delivered, with a box, containing the common log books of the ship, and the journals of some of the officers. We did not lose sight of the fleet till Thursday the 23d, when they parted from us; and about one o'clock in the afternoon, we lost our first lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, an active, skilful, judicious, and useful officer. He died of a consumption, of which lingering disorder he discovered some symptoms when he left England; so that it may be truly said, that he was dying the whole voyage; and his decline was very gradual till we arrived at Batavia, from whence to the time of his dissolution, the slow consuming disease gained strength daily. The whole ship's company attended the funeral rites, and in the evening we committed his body to the sea with the usual ceremonies. The next day the captain appointed Mr. Charles Clerk, a young man, to act in the room of Mr. Hicks.

We now every day drew nearer our desired haven; but what must be the condition of our once good ship, the Endeavour, may easily be imagined, from a slight recollection of the hardships she had surmounted, and the dangers she had providentially escaped. At this time our rigging and sails were so weather-beaten, that

that every day something was giving way. However, we held on our course, without any material occurrence that might endanger our safety, till Monday the 10th of June, when, to our great joy, Nicholas Young, the boy who first discovered New Zealand, called out land from the mast head, which proved to be the Lizard. The next day, being Tuesday, the eleventh, we proceeded up the channel. On Wednesday the 12th, with the pleasing hopes of seeing our relatives and friends, exciting sensations not to be described by the pen of the most able writer, we passed Beachy Head. At noon, to our inexpressible joy we were a-breast of Dover; and about three o'clock, P. M. we came to an anchor in the Downs. When we landed at Deal, our ship's company indulged freely that mirth, and sociable jollity, common to all English sailors upon their return from a long voyage, who as readily forget hardships and dangers, as with alacrity and bravery they encounter them.

We cannot close this book without joining in that general censure, which has been justly bestowed on Dr. Hawkesworth, the late compiler of a former account of this voyage of the Endeavour. An infidel may imbibe what deistical chimeras may be best adapted to the gloomy temper of his mind; but we cannot but think him highly culpable in forcing them into a work of this kind; for though it may be said, that, with respect to efficient and final causes, the opinion of a general and particular Providence will form one and the same conclusion, yet we think it is of great comfort to all men, particularly to those who can trace the wonders of an almighty hand in the deep, to be sensible of a merciful interposition, concerned, and ever attentive to their support, preservation, and deliverance in times of danger. Besides, this sentiment of a divine agent superintending, and correcting the disorders introduced by natural and moral evil, is, undoubtedly a scripture-doctrine; and from the deductions of the mere light

of nature, it must appear unreasonable to suppose, that the first Great Cause who planned the whole grand scheme of creation, should not be allowed to interfere with respect to particular parts, or individuals, as occasion, circumstances, or times may require. And whoever has duly considered the wonderful protection of the Endeavour in cases of danger the most imminent, particularly when encircled, in the wide ocean, with rocks of coral, her sheathing beaten off, and her false-keel floating by her side, a hole in her bottom, and the men by turns fainting at the pumps, cannot but acknowledge the existence of a Particular Providence. The history of Joseph can only afford a more striking instance of the interposition of a divine invisible hand. This our countrymen experienced; and we have good authority to assert, that our company in the Endeavour do acknowledge, notwithstanding the private opinion of the above mentioned compiler, that the hand of superior power was particularly concerned in their protection and deliverance. This omniscient and omnipotent power it is the incumbent duty of every christian to believe, confide in, and adore.

e, that
grand
terfers
as oc-
And
tection
minent,
, with
r false-
nd the
out ac-
dence.
riking
hand.
e good
Endea-
private
at the
ned in
ificient
uty of

New

